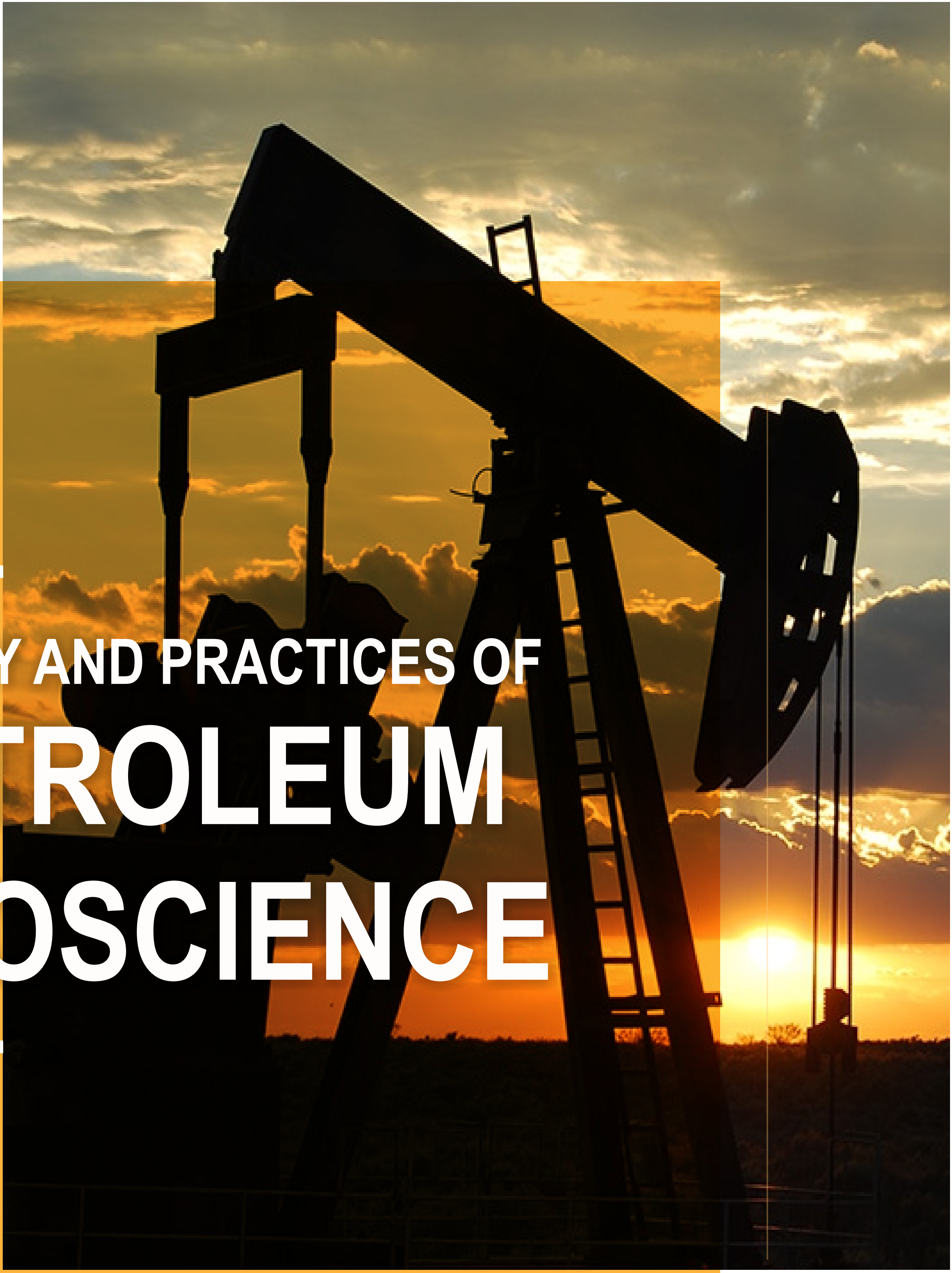


THEORY AND PRACTICES OF PETROLEUM GEOSCIENCE

DILEEP BALAGA
SHREYA BANERJEE

ALEXIS PRESS
JERSEY CITY, USA

THEORY AND PRACTICES OF PETROLEUM GEOSCIENCE

THEORY AND PRACTICES OF PETROLEUM GEOSCIENCE

Dileep Balaga
Shreya Banerjee

ALEXIS PRESS

ALEXIS PRESS

Published by: Alexis Press, LLC, Jersey City, USA
www.alexispress.us

First Published 2022

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

Includes bibliographical references and index.

Theory and Practices of Petroleum Geoscience by *Dileep Balaga, Shreya Banerjee*

ISBN 978-1-64532-903-9

CONTENTS

Chapter 1. Introduction to Petroleum Geology 1
—Mr. Dileep Balaga

Chapter 2. Introduction to Sedimentology 12
—Mr. Yarlagadda Kumar

Chapter 3. A Study on Sedimentary Geochemistry 23
—Mr. Bhairab Gogoi

Chapter 4. Sandstones and Sandstone Reservoirs 34
—Dr. Suman Paul

Chapter 5. A Breif Discussion on Carbonate Sediments 46
—Dr. Deepjyoti

Chapter 6. Shales, Silica Deposits and Evaporites 57
—Mr. Kalpajit Hazarika

Chapter 7. A Study on Stratigraphy 66
—Mr. Dileep Balaga

Chapter 8. Sequence Stratigraphy, Seismic Stratigraphy and Basin Analysis 77
—Mr. Yarlagadda Kumar

Chapter 9. Heat Transport in Sedimentary Basins 90
—Mr. Bhairab Gogoi

Chapter 10. Subsurface Water and Fluid Flow in Sedimentary Basins 97
—Dr. Suman Paul

Chapter 11. Introduction to Geomechanics: Stress and Strainin Sedimentary Basins 108
—Dr. Deepjyoti

Chapter 12. Structure and Hydrocarbon Traps of Sedimentary Basins 118
—Mr. Kalpajit Hazarika

Chapter 13. Compaction of Sedimentary Rocks Including Shales, Sandstones and Carbonates 126
—Mr. Bhairab Gogoi

Chapter 14. Source Rocks and Petroleum Geochemistry 134
—Dr. Suman Paul

Chapter 15. A Breif Discussion on Petroleum Migration 144
—Dr. Deepjyoti

Chapter 16. Well Logs: A Brief Introduction 154
—Shreya Banerjee

Chapter 17. A Study on Seismic Exploration 164
—Shreya Banerjee

Chapter 18. Explorational Rock Physics the Link between Geological Processes and Geophysical Observables 172
—Aditya Gupte

Chapter 19. A Discussion on 4D Seismic 180
— *Aditya Gupte*

Chapter 20. A Study on Production Geology 188
— *Harsh Mohanty*

Chapter 21. Unconventional Hydrocarbons: Oil Shales, Heavy Oil, Tar Sands, Shale Gas and Gas Hydrates 197
— *Harsh Mohanty*

Chapter 22. Geology of the Norwegian Continental Shelf 205
— *Sukanya Dikshit*

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION TO PETROLEUM GEOLOGY

Mr. Dileep Balaga, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - balagadileepkumar@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

A multidisciplinary science called petroleum geology is essential to the discovery, evaluation, and production of hydrocarbon resources. This summary gives a general overview of petroleum geology's underlying ideas, techniques, and importance in understanding the intricate processes that go into the creation, movement, and accumulation of oil and gas deposits.Understanding the Earth's geological history, including plate tectonics, sedimentary processes, and the formation of sedimentary basins, is the first step in studying petroleum geology. These basins are the main areas of focus for hydrocarbon exploration, and a variety of geological processes, including tectonic activity, sea level fluctuations, and climatic variations, have an impact on their development and evolution. Identification and characterisation of source rocks, which are organic-rich sedimentary deposits capable of producing hydrocarbons during thermal maturation, is a crucial component of petroleum geology. Geologists may ascertain these source rocks' hydrocarbon potential and predict the time and output of oil and gas by examining their organic composition, thermal history, and burial circumstances.

KEYWORDS:

Hydrocarbon, Exploration, Petroleum Geology, Source Rocks.

INTRODUCTION

Another crucial mechanism investigated in petroleum geology is petroleum migration. Predicting the distribution and accumulation of hydrocarbons requires a thorough understanding of the processes and mechanisms by which they travel from source rocks to reservoirs. Rock characteristics like porosity and permeability, as well as geological features like faults and fractures, play important roles in regulating the movement and trapping of hydrocarbons. A key component of petroleum geology is reservoir characterization, which entails examining the characteristics of rocks, fluid behaviour, and reservoir design. Seismic imaging, well logging, and core analysis are just a few of the tools that geologists use to evaluate the reservoir's potential, ascertain its producibility, and maximise hydrocarbon recovery.

Finally, petroleum geologists combine geological information with technical and economic variables to assess the economic feasibility of hydrocarbon resources. Making well-informed selections about drilling sites, well designs, and production techniques will ensure optimal recovery with the least amount of environmental effect. The study of sedimentary basins and the procedures involved in the development, accumulation, and exploration of hydrocarbons, notably oil and natural gas, is the main objective of petroleum geology, a subspecialty of geology. In order to comprehend the formation, movement, and trapping mechanisms of hydrocarbons inside the Earth's subsurface, many geological causes and processes must be investigated[1]–[3].

Here is a quick summary of the main features of petroleum geology:

Sedimentary Basins:

Sedimentary basins, which are depressions in the Earth's crust filled with layers of sedimentary rocks, are where petroleum accumulations are most often discovered. These basins may be the result of tectonic processes, such as plate tectonics, or the sedimentation of former oceans, lakes, or river systems.

Source Rock:

The organic-rich sediments and rocks known as "source rocks" are what are used to create new hydrocarbons. Over millions of years, a process known as burial and heat maturation transforms the organic material found in these rocks, which is generally made up of plankton and algae, into hydrocarbons.

Reservoir Rock:

The porous, permeable rocks known as reservoir rocks are capable of storing and transmitting hydrocarbons. Sandstones, limestone, and dolomite are typical reservoir rock types. The hydrocarbons may gather and move through the rock because of the linked pore spaces.

Traps:

Geological formations called traps stop hydrocarbons from migrating upward, which causes them to gather there instead. Anticlines (folded rock layers), fault traps (displaced rock layers), and stratigraphic traps (changes in rock characteristics) are a few examples of traps. For effective exploration and production, it is essential to comprehend the geometry and properties of traps.

Migration:

In order to reach possible traps, hydrocarbons produced in source rocks travel via porous rock layers or cracks. Pressure differences and the buoyancy of the hydrocarbons drive the migration process. Geologists may identify locations with significant hydrocarbon potential by looking at migratory routes.

Production and Exploration:

Petroleum geologists use a range of instruments and methods to investigate and assess possible oil and gas resources. These include drilling exploratory wells, reservoir modelling, and seismic surveys, which employ sound waves to produce pictures of underground structures. Once a find is discovered that is financially feasible, the hydrocarbons are extracted using production methods including drilling and well completion.

Environmental Considerations:

Petroleum geologists are essential in determining how oil and gas exploration and production operations affect the environment. They use proper mitigation strategies and carry out rigorous environmental impact assessments to reduce hazards like oil spills and groundwater pollution.

Exploring and using hydrocarbon resources requires the multidisciplinary study of petroleum geology, which combines components of geology, geophysics, geochemistry, and engineering. It is essential to the energy sector because it offers information on the location, nature, and long-term viability of oil and gas deposits[4]–[6].

DISCUSSION

The geological fields that are most important for the discovery and recovery of oil and gas are grouped together under the heading of petroleum geology. The majority of the readily apparent and "easy to find" petroleum has already been found, hence the exploration of sedimentary basins requires advanced techniques. Advanced geophysical methods and basin modelling are a few of them. Enhancing recovery from the producing fields has also received a lot of attention lately. Petroleum technology has advanced significantly, and both in exploration and production, several new tools and modelling programmes have been created.

However, it is crucial to comprehend the geological processes that control the distribution of various sedimentary rocks and their physical characteristics. For the approaches that are now available to be effectively used, this understanding is essential.Since almost all of the several disciplines in petroleum geology build upon one another, it may be challenging to determine where to begin a lesson.To explain the topic and the issues, this introductory chapter will provide a succinct and rather straightforward summary of basic areas of petroleum geology.The majority of the next chapters will then build on what has been offered here to give a stronger grounding in pertinent topics.

Sedimentary geology is one of the primary pillars of petroleum geology since almost all petroleum is found in sedimentary rocks. The placement of various facies in sedimentary basins and, therefore, the likelihood of the occurrence of source rocks with a high organic matter content, reservoir rocks, and cap rocks are predicted by sedimentological models. The detailed sedimentological models are needed to determine the distribution and geometry of possible sandstone or carbonate reservoirs, and sequence stratigraphy has been a popular method[7]–[9].

Micropalaeontology (including palynology), a field heavily influenced by the oil business, is used to determine the biostratigraphic correlation of strata found in exploratory wells. Macrofossils cannot be relied upon due to their tiny size; even in core samples, the likelihood of discovering high-quality macrofossils is low. On the other hand, a few grammes of rock from drill cuttings may contain a large number of palynomorphs or microfossils. In comparison to macrofossils, they often provide superior stratigraphic resolution.

Sandstones and carbonates make up the majority of reservoir rocks, and they are sufficiently permeable to contain large quantities of petroleum. Other rock types like salt and shales also have significant compositions and characteristics.The distribution of reservoir rocks and their fundamental composition are determined by the sedimentary settings (sedimentary facies). Sediments do, however, undergo diagenesis during burial, which modifies their characteristics as overburden levels rise.In both sandstone and limestone reservoirs, diagenesis controls the porosity, permeability, and other physical characteristics including velocity. Mineral reactions are controlled by chemical processes, which are significant. Another essential component of petroleum geology is the study of organic materials in sediments and how it transforms into hydrocarbons.Understanding the subsidence, folding, and uplift responsible for the formation and dynamic history of a basin is made possible by structural geology and tectonics. Regarding the migration of hydrocarbons, the timing of the folding and faulting that create structural traps is crucial.

The primary approach for mapping sedimentary facies, stratigraphy, sequence stratigraphy, and tectonic evolution is seismic methodology. The efficiency of marine seismics captured from ships has greatly improved, and seismic lines are now only fired at a few hundred metres or less apart. Geological interpretation of seismic data has developed into a completely new and increasing area as a result of the quick development in the quality of seismic data processing methods. In many cases, the only information we have comes from seismic and other geophysical data, especially for offshore exploration where drilling is exceedingly expensive. High resolution 3D seismic imaging may be obtained for key areas of sedimentary basins by shooting seismic lines at close intervals. A 3D reservoir seismic survey may be repeated during production to track the movement of the gas/oil and oil/water contacts as the reservoir is drained. Time gives the fourth dimension, thus the name "4D seismic" (four dimensions).

Gravimetry and magnetometry are two examples of geophysical measures; electromagnetic techniques, which were mostly utilised in mineral discovery, have also been used in oil exploration. Due to the presence of oil rather than salty water, sediments with low resistivity have been found using electromagnetic techniques. A few hundred metres of water and a reasonably shallow accumulation are needed for this technique.Because geophones must be set in a grid, often on uneven and challenging land surfaces, seismic surveys conducted on land are costlier than those conducted by ship at sea.However, drilling on land is far less expensive than using offshore rigs, and both exploration and production may make use of considerably closer-spaced wells.Petroleum geology is increasingly relying on indirect ways of mapping rock types that use geophysical assistance, but it is still required to collect samples and inspect the rocks themselves. A petroleum geologist should have extensive geological training, ideally including field experience.

Accumulations of Organic Matter

It is generally known that oil accumulations are created from organic material in sediments and have an organic origin. Methane may be created inorganically and is present in the atmospheres of numerous other planets, but inorganic methane produced in the earth's interior is most likely to be widely spread and not build up significantly in the crust as massive gas accumulations.Photosynthesis, or the storage of solar energy, produced the organic material from which petroleum is formed (Figure 1).

On Earth, sunlight is continually converted into this kind of energy, but only a very tiny amount of it is stored as biological matter and petroleum. Thus, the annual formation of oil and gas in sedimentary basins pales in contrast to the pace of extraction (production) and consumption. Even though some petroleum is always being created, in reality it must be seen as a non-renewable resource.The majority of the organic elements found in petroleum source rocks are algae, which are created by photosynthesis. The larger creatures and zooplankton that are also seen grazed the algae, making them indirectly reliant on photosynthesis. Thus, when we burn petroleum, we unleash energy that has been accumulated from the sun. Since petroleum is produced by the pyrolysis of organic matter.

In Colorado, Utah, and Wyoming, the Tertiary Green River Shale is one of the greatest petroleum reservoirs over the globe. The majority of the organic material in this lake deposit was algae.Oil shale may generate extremely huge amounts of petroleum, however production costs are currently too expensive when compared to conventional oil. Production from oil shale has major environmental issues as well, and the process uses a lot of water, a resource that is not always available.Although the oil reserves in these deposits are greater than those in traditional oil deposits, their utilisation is undoubtedly constrained by the cost and environmental risks associated with producing from these kinds of reservoirs. This is especially true for oil shale production.

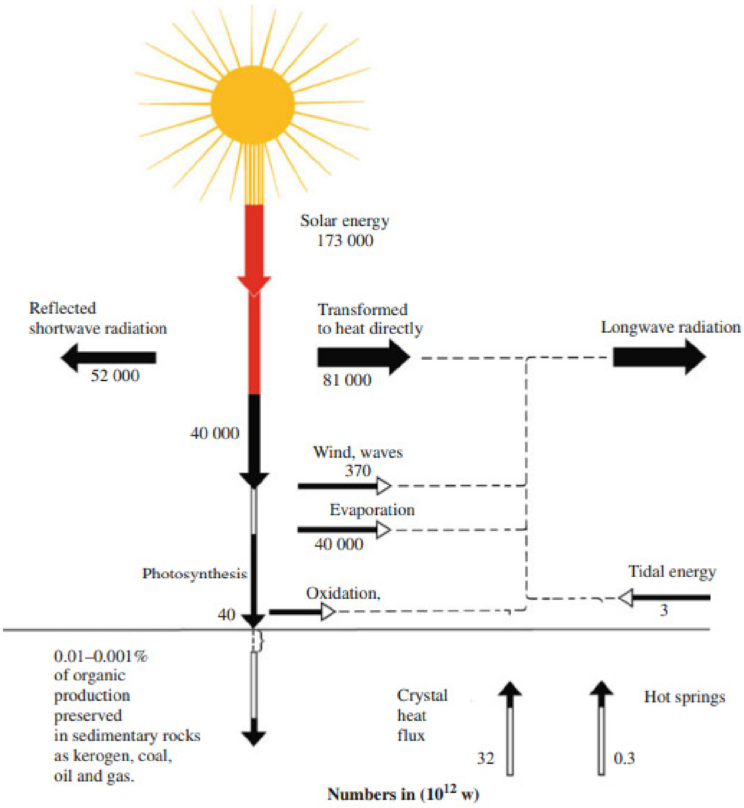


Figure 1: Transformation of solar energy to fossil fuels by photosynthesis

Accumulations of Organic Matter

It is generally known that oil accumulations are created from organic material in sediments and have an organic origin. Methane may be created inorganically and is present in the atmospheres of numerous other planets, but inorganic methane produced in the earth's interior is most likely to be widely spread and not build up significantly as a gas in the crust.

Photosynthesis, or the storage of solar energy, produced the organic material from which petroleum is formed (Figure 1).On Earth, sunlight is continually converted into this kind of energy, but only a very tiny amount of it is stored as biological matter and petroleum. Thus, the annual formation of oil and gas in sedimentary basins pales in contrast to the pace of extraction (production) and consumption.Even though some petroleum is always being created, in reality it must be seen as a non-renewable resource.The majority of the organic elements found in petroleum source rocks are algae, which are created by photosynthesis. The higher creatures and zooplankton that are also seen grazed the algae and were thus also indirectly reliant on photosynthesis. Thus, when we burn petroleum, we unleash energy that has been accumulated from the sun. It is crucial to comprehend how and where sediments with a high proportion of organic matter are deposited since petroleum is generated from organic matter.

Currently, 5 1010 tonnes of organic material are produced annually in the seas. The weathering of rocks on land and the movement of those nutrients into the water provide the nutrients for this organic creation. Therefore, coastal locations, especially where sediment-filled rivers empty into the sea, have the highest nutrient supplies. In coastal places, plant detritus is frequently delivered straight from the ground.

Most phytoplankton development occurs in the topmost 20–30 m of the ocean, where biological output is at its highest. Although sunlight may reach deeper into clear water than it does in turbid water, clear water often has a low nutrition supply.Even in relatively clear water, sunlight is insufficient for photosynthesis at a depth of roughly 100-150 m.All other marine life in the seas relies on phytoplankton for sustenance. Zooplankton only flourish in areas with abundant phytoplankton production because they feed on it. After they pass away, organisms sink and may decompose, releasing nutrients that may be regenerated at higher depths.

Breakdown of Organic Matter

The majority (>99%) of the organic matter that is created on land and in the water is decomposed either directly via oxidation or through microbial activities. Organic materials will decompose in the following ways if oxygen is present:

$$\mathrm{CO2 + H2O\ CH2O + O2}$$

On land and in the water, organic matter gets oxidised quite quickly when oxygen is present. Organic matter floating in saltwater sinks down the water column and consumes oxygen as organisms perish.The oxygen supply will run out if water circulation is impeded by the density stratification of the water column. Instead, sulphate-reducing and denitrifying bacteria utilise the bound oxygen in sulphates or nitrates to break down organic matter in an anoxic environment. The seafloor is typically oxidised for the first few centimetres, with reducing conditions prevailing 5–30 cm below the surface. There is no free oxygen below this redox limit.

The redox border in the water column will separate the oxidising surface water from the reducing bottom water when the rate of organic matter buildup exceeds the rate of oxygen delivery.This is characteristic of basins like the Black Sea and parts of the deep Norwegian fjords, which are separated from the deep ocean by a shallow sill. A stable water stratification with little vertical mixing may also be maintained by fresh or brackish surface water floating atop more salty water. Because warm surface water is less thick than chilly bottom water, lakes may have strong water stratification. Good source rocks may be produced by the black muck that accumulates at lake bottoms. However, in cold regions, the maximum water density at 4C causes the lakes to overturn in the winter, preventing the stable stratification needed to create source rocks.

Formation of Source Rocks

Through photosynthesis, all marine organic matter is created in the photic zone, close to the ocean's surface. The majority of this is algae. Some phytoplankton is chemically decomposed, some is oxidised, and some is consumed by zooplankton. Higher species consume both forms of plankton, concentrating the portion of the organic stuff that cannot be digested into faecal pellets that might end up in sediments. The extremely minute creatures that make up plankton descend so slowly that, in most circumstances, they are virtually completely oxidised (degraded) before they reach the bottom. On the other hand, since pellets are smaller than sand grains and sink more quickly, it is more probable that this organic material will be maintained in the sediments.

Organic material will be broken down at the bottom by bacteria-like microorganisms. Additionally, it will be consumed by creatures that dwell underground and are found towards the top of the sediments. Because the majority of the organic material is digested when the sediment is consumed, the activity of these organisms helps to lower the organic content of the sediments. Additionally, bioturbation stirs up the sediments, increasing their exposure to the bottom water that contains oxygen. The absence of oxygen and the toxicity of H2S, however, will drive out the majority of living forms if the bottom water remains still. More organic material will be preserved in the sediment together with excellent, undisturbed lamination as a consequence of the absence of bioturbation that results. An oxygen concentration of less than 0.5 ml/l of water indicates stagnant or anoxic conditions. However, sulphate-reducing bacteria may use a lot of organic materials and precipitate sulphides, such FeS2.

More sulphur will be integrated in the organic matter and ultimately enriched in the oil obtained from such source beds if the sediments lack adequate amounts of soluble iron or other metals that may precipitate sulphides.Slow sedimentation rates will cause each sediment layer to spend more time in the bioturbation and microbiological breakdown zones, except when the water is fully stagnant, and as a consequence, less organic matter will be kept in the sediment. More of the deposited organic material is maintained as a result of rapid sedimentation, although it will initially be greatly diluted by mineral grains. Therefore, the best source rocks are produced at an intermediate sedimentation rate relative to biological synthesis (10–100 mm/1,000 years).

As we've shown, the link between productivity and biogenic breakdown and oxidation rather than the overall productivity largely determines the net accumulation of organic matter in sediments. Most organic stuff in regions with strong traction currents will oxidise. Cold surface water that sinks to the ocean floor in polar areas and travels down the ocean floor towards equatorial regions is a significant source of oxygen-rich water in the deep ocean. The Gulf Stream in the Atlantic and other surface flows to higher latitudes are balanced by this movement.

During glacial eras, when enormous volumes of cold water are plunging along the edges of ice sheets, these bottom flows are of significant scale. The poles were likely free of ice during warm eras, such as the Cretaceous, and there was far less cold surface water available to sink and power the ocean conveyor belt. During these times, the bottom of the deeper Atlantic endured stagnation.

Early Diagenesis of Organic Matter

Bacteria, fungus, protozoa, and other microorganisms are active in sediments and are very efficient under oxidising circumstances in breaking down organic material. However, if the oxygen is not replaced, the porewater rapidly becomes decreasing. As opposed to clay and fine-grained carbonate mud, where the redox border between oxidising and reducing water may be just a few millimetres below the seafloor, comparatively coarse-grained sediments (sand) may allow oxygen to penetrate to depths of 5 to 20 cm below the seabed. The oxygen in the porewater is used up by the oxidation of organic matter because the pores in the sediments are so tiny that water circulation and diffusion cannot replenish it. Clay-rich sediments quickly close in on themselves, while fine-grained strata have extremely sluggish downward diffusion of oxygen from the seafloor.

Therefore, compared to fine-grained sediments, aerobic decomposition is substantially more successful in coarse-grained sediments. Bacteria utilise organic materials, such as short glucose chains, during anaerobic transformation. Fungi first break down cellulose, followed by bacteria. Methane (CH4) and carbon dioxide (CO2) are the byproducts. But the only hydrocarbon that microorganisms near to the sediment's surface can make in any amount at low temperatures is methane. Therefore, dry gas that occurs at shallow depths (shallow gas) mostly consists of methane unless there has been addition from far deeper layers. Commercial accumulations of biogenic gas may develop in places like Western Siberia and the shallow North Sea basin. When drilling, the abundance of shallow gas might pose a risk in the form of blowouts and fire.Although gas from deeper sources, such as oil cracking or gas-prone source rocks (coaly sediments), may also exist at shallow depths, their isotopic signatures are quite different from those of biogenic gas.

Kerogen

A complex combination of organic material called kerogen is present in sedimentary rocks, especially in source rocks that are rich in organic material. It is made from the remnants of ancient plants and microbes that collected over millions of years and experienced chemical and physical changes. As the first step in the production of hydrocarbons and a sign of a sedimentary basin's potential for oil and gas, kerogen is important in petroleum geology.

Depending on the kind of organic matter and the degree of thermal maturation it has experienced, kerogen has different chemical compositions and physical characteristics. Kerogen has a structure that may be either amorphous or highly organised, and it is composed of a mixture of carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, sulphur, and trace elements. Based on its elemental makeup and level of biological richness, it is divided into many categories, such as Type I, II, III, and IV.

Kerogen passes through a process known as pyrolysis during thermal maturation, which happens with rising temperature and burial depth. Hydrocarbons, such as oil and gas, as well as other byproducts like carbon dioxide and water are produced as a result of this process. The kind of kerogen and the maturational circumstances determine the sort of hydrocarbons that are generated.

Exploration and production of petroleum depend heavily on the research of kerogen. Geologists may evaluate a basin's capacity for producing hydrocarbons by looking at the type, amount, and thermal maturity of kerogen in the source rocks. Finding places with a high potential for oil and gas accumulations is made easier with the use of this knowledge. Furthermore, kerogen analysis offers perceptions into the organic richness, depositional setting, and thermal history of the source rock, assisting in the assessment of reservoir quality and foretelling the spread of hydrocarbons.

The kerogen concentration and its characteristics are characterised and quantified using a variety of analytical methods, including Rock-Eval pyrolysis, gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS), and nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy. When determining the feasibility and economic potential of hydrocarbon resources, these methodologies provide useful information.

Migration of Petroleum

From low permeability source rocks into high permeability reservoir rocks, where the petroleum may be generated, petroleum migrates.Since petroleum is less thick than water, its buoyancy acts as the primary pushing factor for its movement. Capillary forces and the resistance to flow through rocks with limited permeabilities are the factors preventing migration.Oil and gas migration will consequently almost always have an upward component.We differentiate between primary migration the flow of oil out of the source rock and secondary migration the continuous flow of oil from the source rock to the reservoir rock or upward to the surface (Figure 2).

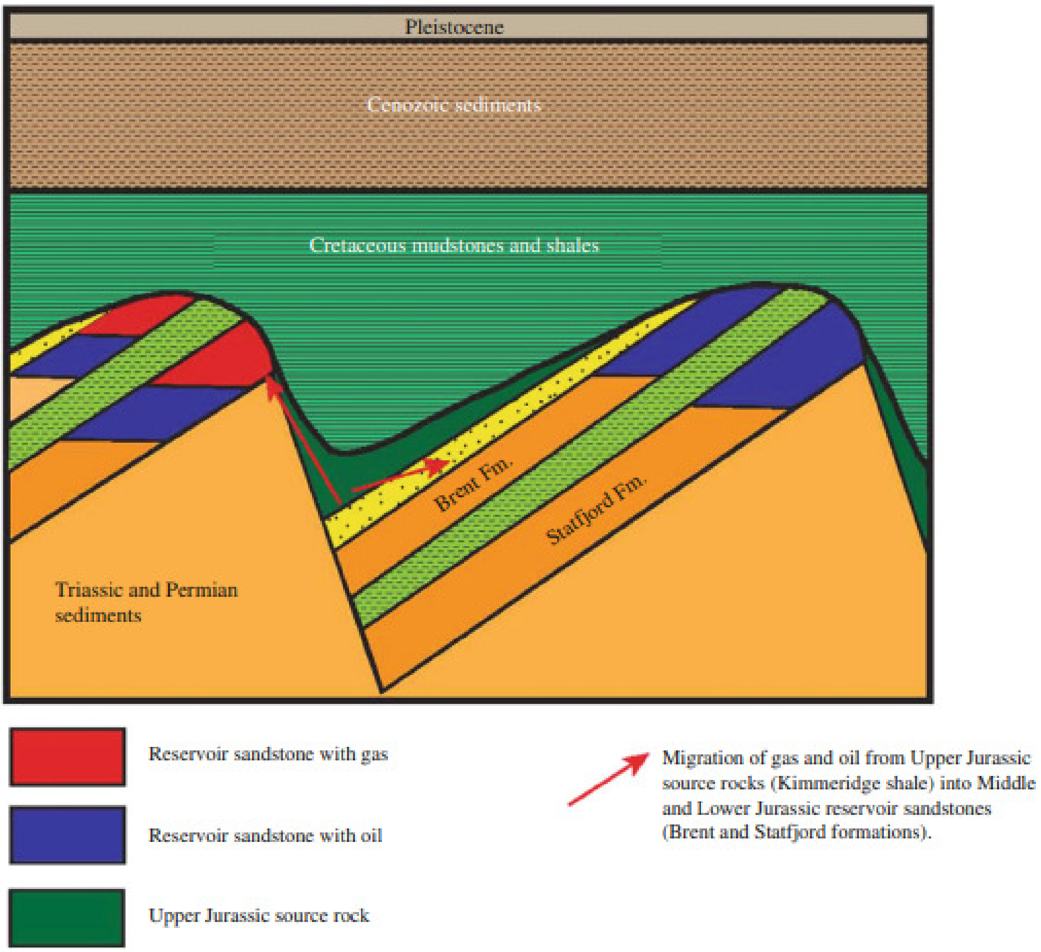


Figure 2: Schematic illustration of primary migration (expulsion) of petroleum from a source rock and secondary migration into a reservoir (trap).

Additionally, oil and gas from the reservoir may migrate (leak) to a higher trap or to the surface. Since hydrocarbons are mostly insoluble in water, they will move as a different phase. Methane is soluble in as low as 24 ppm whereas benzene is soluble in 1,800 ppm. Even less soluble substances exist, such as pentane (2–3 ppm). But when pressure rises, solubility increases significantly. Numerous hydrocarbons exhibit solubilities in water of less than 1 ppm.Due to the solubility and the low flow rates, it is impossible to imagine oil being dissolved in water and conveyed in an aqueous solution. It would also be challenging to explain how the oil would emerge from the reservoirs (traps)' solution.Methane in particular, when under high pressure, has a relatively high solubility in water. Large amounts of methane may bubble out of a solution if water that has been saturated with methane rises to lower pressures.Therefore, it is important to presumptively assume that oil is mostly carried in discrete phases. Oil is lighter than water, therefore oil droplets might pass through rock pores, however the risk of explosion is great. Figure 3 shows distinct oil drips on a damp rock.

The oil droplets must defeat the capillary forces in the pores (pore throat). These pressures will serve as a barrier to additional oil migration when the pores in a fine-grained sediment are sufficiently tiny. Although shales provide tight seals for oil, the tiny gas molecules may diffuse via very small holes and therefore escape [10]–[12].

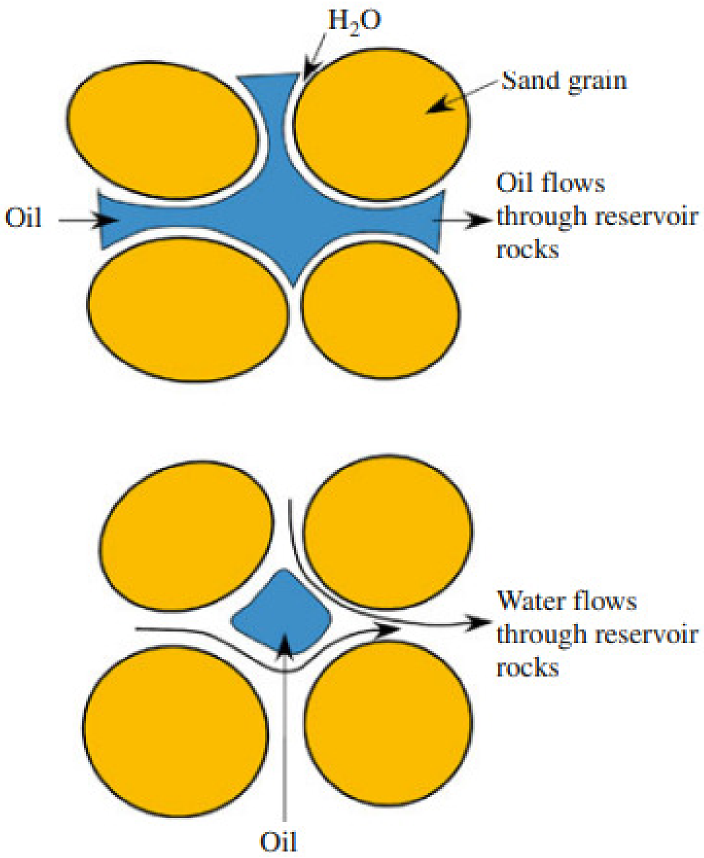


Figure 3: Most sandstones are oil-wet and have a thin layer of water around the grains. A continuous oil phase will flow easily if the permeability is relatively high and the pore throats between the pores are relatively wide. Isolated droplets of oil will, however, be prevented from moving by capillary forces

CONCLUSION

The exploration and use of the Earth's hydrocarbon resources need a variety of disciplines and methods, which make petroleum geology a vital and dynamic science. Petroleum geologists are key players in the discovery and extraction of rich oil and gas reserves via the investigation of geological processes, sedimentary basins, source rock analyses, migration mechanisms, reservoir characterization, and economic assessment.The discoveries and developments in petroleum geology have a substantial impact on energy security, economic development, and environmental concerns in addition to adding to our knowledge of Earth's geological past. Petroleum geologists work to maximise hydrocarbon recovery while reducing negative environmental effects and encouraging sustainable practises by using cutting-edge technology and procedures.

Petroleum geology's future depends on ongoing research and development, with a focus on incorporating cutting-edge technologies like remote sensing, machine learning, and data analytics. These developments will lessen the hazards associated with exploration and production while improving our capacity to find and characterise hydrocarbon reserves.Petroleum geologists will also be essential in the exploration and production of alternative energy resources, such as geothermal energy and carbon capture and storage technologies, as the world moves towards a more diversified energy mix and a greater emphasis on renewable sources.

REFERENCES

[1] M. F. Ridd and A. Racey, "Introduction to the Petroleum Geology of Myanmar," *Geol. Soc. Mem.*, 2015, doi: 10.1144/M45.01.

[2] K. Bjørlykke, "Introduction to petroleum geology," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_1.

[3] D. Tiab and E. C. Donaldson, "Introduction to Petroleum Geology," in *Petrophysics*, 2016. doi: 10.1016/b978-0-12-803188-9.00002-4.

[4] D. G. Murchison, "Introduction to petroleum geology," *Fuel*, 1976, doi: 10.1016/0016-2361(76)90055-7.

[5] K. Bjorlykke, "Introduction to petroleum geology," *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics*. 2010. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-02332-3_1.

[6] M. D. Simmons, G. C. Tari and A. I. Okay, "Petroleum geology of the Black Sea: Introduction," *Geol. Soc. Spec. Publ.*, 2018, doi: 10.1144/SP464.15.

[7] D. Tiab and E. C. Donaldson, "Introduction to Petroleum Geology," in *Petrophysics*, 2012. doi: 10.1016/b978-0-12-383848-3.00002-5.

[8] N. L. Falcon, G. D. Hobson, and E. N. Tiratsoo, "Introduction to Petroleum Geology," *Geogr. J.*, 1975, doi: 10.2307/1796492.

[9] J. E. Underhill and R. Stoneley, "Introduction to the development, evolution and petroleum geology of the Wessex Basin," *Geol. Soc. Spec. Publ.*, 1998, doi: 10.1144/GSL.SP.1998.133.01.01.

[10] K. W. Glennie, "Introduction to the petroleum geology of the North Sea. Third edition," *Introd. to Pet. Geol. North Sea. Third Ed.*, 1990.

[11] C. Zou, *Unconventional petroleum geology*. 2017. doi: 10.1016/b978-0-12-812234-1.09001-4.

[12] P. Weimer *et al.*, *Introduction to the Petroleum Geology of Deepwater Setting*. 2006. doi: 10.1306/st571314.

CHAPTER 2

INTRODUCTION TO SEDIMENTOLOGY

Mr. Yarlagadda Kumar, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - Dheerajkumar@Presidencyuniversity.In

ABSTRACT:

In order to understand the dynamic surface history of the Earth, the geological field of sedimentology looks at the formation, properties, and interpretations of sedimentary deposits. This summary gives a general review of sedimentology's core ideas, methods, and importance for understanding the origin, movement, and deposition of sediments as well as their later transformation into sedimentary rocks.Sediment sources, such as those produced by volcanic activity, biological activities, weathering and erosion of rocks, and atmospheric deposition, are examined in the first step in the study of sedimentology. Sedimentologists identify and categorise several kinds of sediments based on their mineral content, particle size, form, and sorting using field observations, laboratory investigations, and remote sensing methods.Since they control how sediments are distributed and dispersed throughout the Earth's surface, transportation mechanisms are crucial to sedimentology. Different forces, such as wind, water, ice, and gravity, may carry sediment. Sedimentologists are able to evaluate the depositional history of sedimentary basins, recreate ancient habitats, and understand previous climatic conditions through researching sediment transport processes.

KEYWORDS:

Grain Size, Movement Deposition, Sediment Transport, Weathering Erosion.

INTRODUCTION

Sedimentary rocks and the mechanisms that control their production, movement, and deposition are the main subjects of sedimentology, a subfield of geology. It offers a thorough comprehension of the dynamics of the Earth's surface and the development of sedimentary basins throughout time. A major amount of the Earth's surface is made up of sedimentary rocks, which provide a wealth of knowledge about previous habitats, climate change, and the evolution of life on Earth [1]–[3]. Sedimentary habitats, which reflect particular locations where sediments collect and create distinctive sedimentary deposits, are essential elements of sedimentology. These ecosystems include deep-sea basins, rivers, deltas, lakes, deserts, and coastal regions. Sedimentologists may learn more about the environmental circumstances of the past and the mechanisms behind sediment deposition by examining the sedimentary structures, sedimentary facies, and fossil assemblages within these habitats.

Recognising that sediments, which contain particles ranging in size from clay to boulders, are continually created by numerous geological processes is the first step in the study of sedimentology. The primary processes that shape the Earth's surface and result in the development of sedimentary deposits are weathering, erosion, transportation, and deposition. Ultimately, compaction and cementation turn these sediments into sedimentary rocks.Sedimentary rocks, which include a wide variety of fossils, mineral assemblages, and sedimentary structures, provide a rich record of Earth's past. By examining these rocks and their characteristics, sedimentologists can decipher the depositional environments in which they formed. These settings may include freshwater and marine habitats as well as deserts, glacial areas, and even deep-sea abyssal plains.Sedimentologists can assess the dynamics of ancient ecosystems, such as the flow of water, wind, and sediment particle behaviour, by carefully analysing sedimentary formations including cross-bedding, ripple marks, and sedimentary layering. Sedimentologists can provide light on historical tectonic activity, sea-level variations, and climatic trends by recreating the depositional history.

Sedimentology is essential to many different scientific fields and everyday applications. Sedimentary rocks are used in the study of palaeontology because they store fossilised remnants and may be used to reconstruct the history of life on Earth. In the study of Earth's climate history, sedimentological records offer critical insights into past climate variability and long-term climate change. Since sedimentary basins often include substantial mineral deposits and hydrocarbon reserves, sedimentology also has significant implications for the discovery of natural resources.The study of sedimentology has undergone a revolution as a result of technological developments including remote sensing, high-resolution imaging, and analytical methods, which enable more thorough and accurate research. Modern sedimentologists can identify sedimentary processes, analyse sedimentary compositions, and interpret sedimentary settings with the use of advanced technologies.

In the end, sedimentology is a dynamic subject that explains the secrets of Earth's past and offers vital information about the forces that shaped the surface of our planet. Sedimentologists contribute to our knowledge of ancient habitats, climatic change, and the production of rich natural resources by researching sedimentary rocks and their properties. The field is still developing along with technology, promoting fresh insights and advancing our understanding of Earth's turbulent history [4]–[6].

DISCUSSION

The area of geology known as sedimentology is dedicated to the study of sediments and sedimentary rocks. In order to interpret Earth's geological history and recreate previous habitats, it is necessary to comprehend the processes of sediment movement, deposition, and diagenesis the physical and chemical changes that occur to sediments after deposition.The accumulation and lithification of sediments, which come from several causes such the weathering of rocks, erosion, and biological activity, results in sedimentary rocks. In order to understand the depositional conditions in which these sediments were generated, sedimentology examines the features of these sediments, such as their grain size, composition, sorting, and sedimentary structures.

Sedimentologists can understand the geological history of a region by examining sedimentary rocks and their characteristics. They have the ability to recognise prehistoric depositional ecosystems such rivers, lakes, deserts, deltas, beaches, and deep-sea environments as well as to recreate the historical processes that produced these environments. Sedimentology offers crucial insights into Earth's historical tectonic activity, temperature, sea level variations, and landscape history[7]–[9].

Sedimentologists investigate sediments and sedimentary rocks using a variety of field and laboratory approaches. Sedimentary sequences are mapped in the field, sedimentary formations are seen, and samples are collected during fieldwork. Grain size analysis, petrographic investigations, geochemical analysis, and interpretation of sedimentary facies are a few examples of laboratory analyses.Petroleum geology, groundwater research, environmental monitoring, and paleoclimatology are just a few of the domains where sedimentology is used in real-world settings. Sedimentology, for instance, is essential to the identification and characterization of reservoir rocks, hydrocarbon distribution prediction, and optimisation of exploration and production tactics in petroleum geology.

Sedimentology is a vital area of geology that focuses on understanding the origin, makeup, and significance of sediments and sedimentary rocks. It offers priceless insights about the geological processes, previous ecosystems, and distribution of significant resources on Earth. Sedimentologists work to solve problems in energy exploration, environmental management, and Earth system dynamics while also advancing our knowledge of Earth's past.The study of sedimentary rocks and how they originate is known as sedimentology. The topic includes processes like weathering and erosion that result in the formation of sediments.

Transport and deposition by water or air, as well as diagenesis, the alteration of sediments following deposition. Metamorphic processes, which alter sedimentary rocks at temperatures over 200–250°C, are not covered in this article. This chapter will mainly cover clastic sediment movement and deposition as well as sedimentary habitats. These mechanisms control changes in rock characteristics during burial as well as the distribution and geometry of reservoir rocks in a sedimentary basin. Sedimentological models also include the accumulation of organic-rich sediments that might eventually turn into source rocks.

The descriptive aspect of sedimentology is crucial, just as in other natural disciplines. Sedimentary rocks have a somewhat complex nomenclature, which one must get acquainted with in order to describe them or comprehend them. Types of sedimentary formations, grain-size distributions, and the mineralogical makeup of sediments all have specific names. Additionally, we have a genetic nomenclature that assigns names to different rock types based on how we believe they were produced. These include aeolian (air-borne) sediments and fluvial sediments, which are deposited by rivers. An explanation of how the rock was generated is based on the descriptive name. When we have a good idea of where they came from, we may apply genetic nomenclature.

Recent (contemporary) sediments and older sedimentary rocks are both studied in sedimentology. We can comprehend the circumstances under which diverse sedimentological processes occur by researching how sediments originate now. We may be able to identify earlier sediments that were generated in the same manner based on these data. This is known as using the uniformitarianism concept, which has been crucial to all geological disciplines ever since James Hutton (1726–1797) proposed it.

The Earth's surface has seen significant changes during geological time, making it impossible to apply the uniformitarianism concept without certain caveats. Reconstructing changes in conditions on the Earth's surface over the course of geological time is an essential component of sedimentological study. Climate, vegetation, and the make-up of the atmosphere and seas all fall under this category.

In addition to helping with bed dating, palaeontology is crucial to sedimentology because many sedimentary rocks, especially limestones, contain significant amounts of organisms, and because biological activities help with weathering and the precipitation of dissolved ions in saltwater. Fossils are also highly helpful in recreating the habitat in which the sediments were formed since many creatures have very particular requirements of their environment.The study of palaeoecology involves reconstructing ecological conditions from the remnants or evidence of plants and animals found in rocks. Sedimentary animal traces have shown to be particularly effective environmental indicators.

Sedimentology studies of both current and ancient sedimentary rocks allow for a beneficial two-way information exchange. We may learn about the settings that specific processes need through studies of recent environments. To get a totally different picture of how sedimentological processes might change over the course of geologic time, we can investigate sedimentary sections in older rocks that span millions of years of sedimentation. Studies of earlier rocks thus provide non-uniformitarian answers and help us comprehend the recent environment.

When studying rocks, we should make an effort to provide objective descriptions of the composition, structure, etc., of the rocks and then attempt to infer their formation process from these. However, it is hard to provide an unbiased, all-inclusive description of a rock. Nevertheless, having a theory or hypothesis to compare our data to is often the most productive approach. The gathering of data may then be concentrated on making observations and taking measurements that can confirm or refute the hypothesis.Experience has taught us that we tend to notice what we are searching for or what we expect to discover.Few observations regarding sedimentary structures that we would now consider to be pretty obvious and significant are found in early descriptions of sedimentary sequences. We are able to distinguish sedimentary formations and comprehend their genetic importance, which allows us to observe them.

To make their field observations as similar as feasible, many sedimentologists follow a predetermined checklist.But it's crucial that field observations don't become too commonplace. Facies analysis should be a creative process, and while making the observations, it's important to keep in mind the different depositional models. Additionally, it is preferable to quantify field observations as much as possible, for instance by field surveys and a variety of laboratory tests.These might be chemical studies, microscopy investigations (perhaps utilising a scanning electron microscope), or texture analysis (for example, grain-size distribution). The data foundation on which we may base our inferences grows thanks to pure descriptions of sedimentary rocks.

To establish links between the environment and the accumulating sediments, systematic investigations of recent contexts of sedimentation are crucial.What types of sediments are generated and deposited are governed by environmental factors that control sedimentological processes. Environment, process, and sediment make up the relationship in contemporary contexts that we are seeking to comprehend.

Many contemporary conditions for sedimentation have now undergone extensive study. Aeolian and fluvial ecosystems, deltas, beach areas, tidal flats, and carbonate banks are some of these. Deep sea ecosystems have traditionally been difficult to investigate, but contemporary sampling, remote sensing, and underwater TV cameras have made it simpler to collect data from this area as well. Deep Sea Drilling Programme (DSDP) and Ocean Drilling Programme (ODP) systematic drilling into sedimentary layers on the ocean bottom in recent years has revealed a completely new picture of the geology of the ocean depths. Geologists may gather samples of the surface sediments and examine the ocean bottom directly at depths of up to 3,500 m thanks to specially built diving ships (like ALVIN). Additionally, one of the most crucial bases for comprehending the stratigraphy and geometry of sedimentary basins is provided by geophysical investigations, notably seismic ones.

When examining ancient rocks, we base our analysis on certain traits that are measurable or observable, and we make an effort to deduce the processes that formed them. It is possible to interpret certain variations in grain size and sedimentary structures in profiles as having been generated by specific processes, such as aeolian, tidal, or deltaic processes. Understanding these sedimentary processes enables us to recreate the habitats. Accordingly, description of the sedimentary rock is followed by processes and then environment in studies of older sedimentary rocks.

Even for strictly scientific study, applied geology has always been significant. Sedimentologists and their work are in demand due to the economic benefits of recovering raw materials from sedimentary rocks. Important scientific information is also provided by the search for and recovery of raw materials. Raw materials found in sedimentary rocks are far more valuable than those found in metamorphic and eruptive rocks. Oil, gas, and coal reserves are the most significant, but sedimentary rocks also contain a significant portion of the world's ore resources, and many different forms of ore have developed as a result of sedimentary processes. Sand, gravel, clay, and limestone are additional crucial raw resources that call for knowledge of sedimentology.

The majority of geologists working professionally across the globe are employed by the petroleum sector. This sector has a specific demand for research and the financial resources to fund it. Sedimentology plays a significant role in both hydrocarbon exploration and recovery since oil and gas are mostly found in sedimentary rocks. Seismic profiles that have been taken in conjunction with oil exploration and gas drilling have contributed significantly to our current understanding of the world's sedimentary basins and their regional geology. Pure sedimentological research has been aided by the oil business, and the research labs of the oil corporations have made substantial contributions to this field of study. Economically motivated research is beneficial from a merely scientific standpoint as well since it often focuses on specific issues that may be fairly basic.

In order to establish in great detail the geometry and distribution of porosity and permeability in reservoir rocks, reservoir engineers and geologists must work closely as a team. We also have a great need to learn more about the physical and chemical characteristics of reservoir rocks for reasons that are covered in the book's conclusion.

The majority of the data utilised in petroleum exploration and production is obtained via geophysical techniques, and many petroleum geologists seldom ever study actual rocks in cores and cuts. However, it is crucial to understand the textural and mineralogical makeup of the sedimentary sequences. When seismic and log data are inverted to rock characteristics, geophysical data seldom provide novel answers.

Description of Sedimentary Rocks

1. **Textures:** Sedimentary rocks have a vast variety of textures that provide crucial details about their depositional settings, formation processes, and post-formational alterations. Here are a few typical sedimentary rock textures:

Sandstone, shale, and conglomerate are examples of clastic sedimentary rocks, which are made up of clasts (fragments) of different sizes and forms. The degree of sorting, rounding, and grain size distribution of the clasts determines how these rocks are textured. Longer transit lengths are suggested by well-sorted, rounded grains, whereas shorter transport distances are suggested by poorly-sorted, angular grains.

This texture alludes to the stratification or bedding planes that are seen in sedimentary rocks. It develops as a result of differences in sedimentation rates, modifications to the makeup of the sediment, or environmental changes throughout time. Bedding planes may vary in thickness from thin, fine layers to large, coarse layers, and they can provide details about the environment and processes that led to the deposition of the sediment.

Within a broader sedimentary unit, cross-bedding is a distinctive sedimentary structure characterised by inclined strata. These slanting strata, known as cross-beds, are often seen in sandstone and are created by the movement of sedimentary particles like sand dunes or ripples. Cross-bedding reveals the existence of old dune systems, ripple patterns, or present flow directions.

Small-scale wave-like patterns called ripple marks may be seen on the surface of sedimentary rocks. They may be maintained as ripple markings, which are ridges, or ripple troughs, which are troughs. Wind or water currents may produce ripple markings, which might provide information about the direction and strength of earlier currents.

When sedimentary strata exhibit a steady variation in grain size from bottom to top, this is known as graded bedding. A vertical sorting occurs when finer particles settle first and are followed by progressively coarser particles. Graded bedding often indicates fast sedimentation, such as in debris flows or undersea turbidity currents, during deposition.

When fine-grained silt dries up and shrinks, polygonal fractures known as mud cracks or desiccation cracks are created. These alternating wet and dry episodes in the depositional environment are typically seen in mudstones or siltstones.

The remnants or evidence of extinct plants and animals preserved in sedimentary rocks are known as fossils. Shells, bones, tracks, and impressions are a few examples. The age of the rock, previous living forms, and environmental circumstances may all be learned from fossils.

These are but a few examples of the many textures found in sedimentary rocks. Sedimentologists can recreate the depositional history, environmental factors, and processes that sculpted the Earth's surface throughout time by looking at and analysing these textures.

2. **Grain-Size Distribution in Solid Rocks**: The range of particle sizes found in a sample of solid rock or silt is referred to as the grain-size distribution. It offers insightful details on the rock's composition, texture, and processes of formation. The size of the individual mineral grains or particles that make up a rock determines its grain size.

   Rocks may have a broad range of grain sizes, from coarse-grained rocks with bigger particles to fine-grained rocks with smaller particles. Geologists analyse and characterise the grain-size distribution of solid rocks using a variety of methods. Using a microscope or a hand lens to visually inspect and measure the sizes of the individual grains is a typical technique.

   As an alternative, sieves with various mesh sizes may be used to analyse sedimentary rocks. A succession of screens with increasingly smaller apertures is used to sift the crushed rock sample. A grain-size distribution curve, which displays the proportion of material in each size fraction, is made using the weight of the material retained on each sieve.

A rock's characteristics and behaviour may be significantly impacted by its grain-size distribution. For instance, finer-grained rocks are more suited for groundwater flow and storage because they often have greater porosity and permeability. On the other side, rocks with a coarser grain may be stronger and better able to support loads, making them excellent as building materials.

The distribution of the rock's grains might provide information about the rock's origin and past. For instance, sorting often occurs in sedimentary rocks, when grains of a similar size are gathered together. Rocks that are well-sorted suggest that the grains were moved by a reliable energy source, such wind or water, which sorted them according to size. Rocks that are not properly sorted imply a complex or chaotic transit history.

3. **Presentation of Grain-Size Distribution Data:** There are various standard techniques and graphical representations that may be used to portray grain-size distribution data for solid rocks. Here are several possibilities:

a. **Histogram:**

In a graphical representation known as a histogram, the frequency distribution of various grain sizes in a rock sample is shown. The y-axis shows the frequency or proportion of grains that fall into each size class, while the x-axis shows the different sizes of grains. The histogram may be shown as a line graph or a bar graph.

b. **Cumulative Distribution Curve:**

The cumulative proportion of grains that are less than a certain size is shown by this graph. The grain % is shown by the y-axis, while the grain size classes are represented by the x-axis in increasing order of grain size. The curve, which spans the whole range of grain sizes contained in the sample and begins at zero and ends at 100%, is shown.

c. **Phi Scale Plot:**

A typical logarithmic scale for representing particle sizes in sedimentology is the phi scale. Its foundation is the negative logarithm of the millimeter-scale particle size to base 2. On the phi scale, lesser phi values correspond to bigger grain sizes, and vice versa. The phi scale plot is a scatter plot with the percentage or frequency of grains falling into each phi class on the y-axis and the phi values on the x-axis.

d. **Pie Chart:**

The relative proportions of various grain size fractions in a rock sample may be shown using a pie chart. The size of each pie slice corresponds to the proportion or frequency of grains that fall within that slice's size fraction.The data must be presented with a clear title, labels for the axes or sections, and, if necessary, a legend.

The relevance of the grain-size distribution and any pertinent findings or inferences should also be explained in a succinct description or caption.It might be helpful to include statistical metrics such as the mean grain size, sorting coefficient, skewness, and kurtosis in addition to the graphical representations. These factors may be provided as a table or as part of the data presentation and offer further quantitative details regarding the grain-size distribution.Remember to choose a presentation style that supports the planned analysis or interpretation of the data and effectively conveys the key aspects of the grain-size distribution.

Parameters for Grain-Size Distribution

Phi () is equal to log2 d (following Folk and Ward 1957), where d is the grain diameter in millimetres. The percentile is the proportion of grains that are greater than a certain grain size. 30 denotes that 30% of the weight of the grain population is bigger than the grain size. With a particle size of 0.0625 mm for = 4, 30% of the sample will be made up of sand or bigger grains.

Significance of Grain-Size Parameters

The average grain size may be estimated mathematically using the mean diameter. The grain size where 50% of the sample grains by weight are smaller and 50% are bigger defines the median diameter. The mean diameter (M) and the median diameter (Md) will only match in totally symmetrical distribution curves. Otherwise, the mean will move away from the median and towards the "tail" of the distribution. We say that a sample has positive skewness if it has a broad dispersion (tail) towards the fine grain sizes (higher phi values) and a reasonably sharp delimitation at the big grain size end. Fluvial sediments often look like this.While there won't be any sifting of the fine fractions that are delivered in suspension, there will be a reasonably clear upper limit to the grain sizes that rivers may convey as bedload. Poorer sorting will result from significant flow velocity changes, such as those that occur during floods.

Deposits produced by eolian (wind) activity are particularly highly organised (Figure 1). Due to the maximum grain size that may be transferred, they also exhibit positive skewness. Even if the smallest particles are deliberately eliminated, a "tail" of tiny material will remain. A layer of bigger particles (lag) may also shield the fine material in dunes from further erosion and transit. deposits of beach sand, while there is often a "tail" of bigger particles, such as granules and flakes, the distribution curve for these particles is clearly negatively skewed, indicating a definite lower limit.

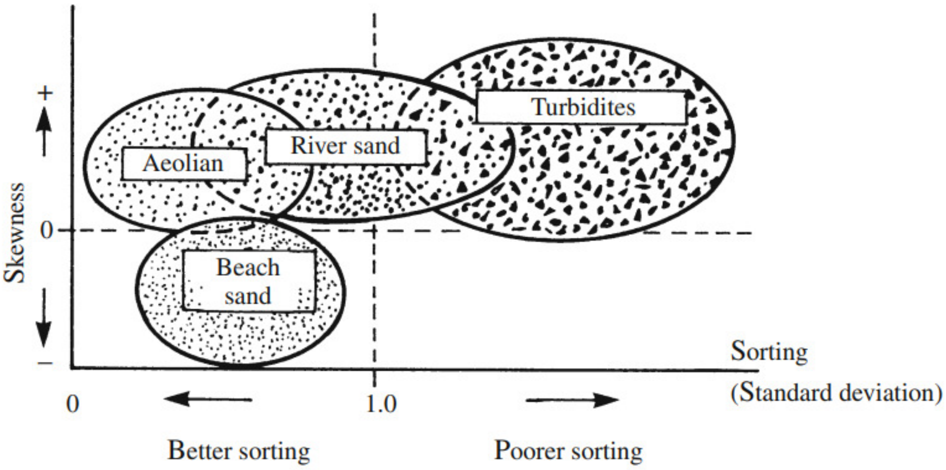


Figure 1: Sorting and skewness are grain-size distribution metrics that may be used to identify distinct sediments that have been formed using diverse procedures and in varied conditions.

On a beach, the hydrodynamic circumstances are such that each wave carries some suspended silt. Fine sand, silt, and clay will stay suspended for a longer period of time than sand grains, especially medium to coarse sand, which will quickly settle from suspension and be deposited on the beach once again. Depending on how powerful the waves are, this finer debris will be moved further out and at a depth of a few metres (1–50 m). A layer of bigger particles (lag) may also shield the fine material in dunes from further erosion and transit. On the other hand, beach sand deposits are obviously negatively skewed, meaning that the distribution curve clearly reveals a lower limit and that there is often a "tail" of bigger particles, such as granules and pebbles. On a beach, the hydrodynamic circumstances are such that each wave carries some suspended silt. Fine sand, silt, and clay will stay suspended for a longer period of time than sand grains, especially medium to coarse sand, which will quickly settle from suspension and be deposited on the beach once again.

Because the fine fractions will be deposited and mixed with coarser-grained sediments that are carried out during storms, this finer material will be transported further out and at a depth of some metres (1–50 m), depending on how strong the waves are and, consequently, the depth of the wave base.The sorting and positive skewness of suspended sediments are low. This is a turbidite in everything except name. Because they often include big clasts, clay suspensions that are deposited on land as high-density suspensions (mud flows) exhibit negative skewness.Kurtosis is a term for the dispersion of a grain-size distribution curve's extreme ends relative to its middle. While silt and clay only make up modest proportions compared to the other distribution parameters, they may significantly alter the characteristics of coarse-grained sand. In otherwise fine-grained silt, pebbles and stones may be significant.

The supply of grain sizes to the region where the activity is occurring is one of the most crucial considerations to keep in mind when analysing grain-size distributions. Only if there is coarse-grained sediment in the vicinity will strong currents or wave energy be able to deposit coarse-grained sediment. Frequently, a source location where sediments are produced by weathering and erosion will provide a particular range of particle sizes. For instance, chemical weathering of acidic rocks (granites) would result in the production of sediments made up of clay minerals (kaolinite, smectite, and illite) and quartz grains with sizes that match the quartz crystals in the granite. Basic rocks (basalts and gabbros) will weather virtually completely into clay minerals and hardly any sand particles [10]–[12].

Sediment Transport

Sediment transport describes how different natural forces like water, wind, ice, and gravity move solid particles like sand, silt, and clay. It is a basic process in the dynamics of the Earth's surface and has a significant impact on ecosystems, sedimentary deposits, and landscape formation.

The following crucial elements are part of the sediment transport process:

a) Driving Forces:

Forces that are greater than the resistance of the sediment particles to motion are what propel sediment movement.

The driving force in the case of water might be the shear stress that the flowing water exerts, which is controlled by variables including flow velocity, channel slope, and water density. The drag force created by flowing air controls the movement of sediment by wind.

b) Particle Characteristics:

The transportability of sediment particles is influenced by their size, shape, and density. In general, it is simpler to carry larger, more spherical particles than smaller, more irregularly shaped ones. Their transportability is further impacted by the disparity in densities between sediment particles and the fluid.

c) Fluid Dynamics:

Sediment movement is greatly influenced by the fluid's properties, such as velocity, turbulence, and viscosity. For instance, turbulent flow improves mixing and particle suspension whereas greater flow rates increase a fluid's capacity to entrain and convey sediment particles.

d) Sediment Availability:

The possibility for movement is determined by the sediment availability in the environment. Sediment may be produced by human activities like mining or building, carried from upstream sources, or formed from the weathering and erosion of rocks.

e) Transport Modes:

Depending on the dominating agent, multiple routes of transport for sediment are possible. The three main modes are saltation (particles occasionally raised and moved in a hopping motion), suspended load transport (particles suspended inside the fluid), and bedload transport (particles rolling, sliding, or bouncing along the bed).In a variety of disciplines, including geology, geomorphology, engineering, and environmental sciences, it is essential to comprehend how sediment is transported. It supports the planning of infrastructure and coastal protection measures, the assessment of water quality, and the management of river systems. It also aids in the prediction of erosion and sedimentation patterns.

Sediment samplers, sediment traps, sediment rating curves, and numerical modelling are just a few of the methods used by scientists and engineers to examine and assess the movement of sediment. These techniques aid in estimating sediment fluxes and transport rates as well as understanding the dynamics of sediment movement in various contexts.Overall, the movement of solid particles by natural forces is a complicated phenomena known as sediment transport. Understanding landscape development, sedimentary processes, and environmental changes driven by sediment transport need a thorough understanding of this subject [13]–[15].

CONCLUSION

In summary, the study of sediments and sedimentary rocks is the main emphasis of sedimentology, a subfield of geology. It covers the creation, movement, deposition, and diagenesis of sediment as well as the analysis of sedimentary records to learn about Earth's past and present environmental changes. Numerous applied domains, such as petroleum geology, engineering geology, environmental studies, and geomorphology, make use of sedimentological concepts and methods. For the management of natural hazards, coastal erosion, and water resources, comprehension of sediment movement, erosion, and deposition processes is crucial. Sedimentology, as a whole, is an interdisciplinary study that sheds light on Earth's historical habitats and tectonic processes. Sedimentologists contribute to our knowledge of geological processes, environmental changes, and the sustainable use of Earth's resources by researching sediments and sedimentary rocks.

REFERENCES

[1] S. Sengupta, *Introduction to sedimentology*. 2017. doi: 10.1201/9780203749883.

[2] R. J. Cheel, "Introduction to Clastic Sedimentology," *1*, 2005.

[3] G. J. Hampson, A. D. Reynolds, B. Kostic, and M. R. Wells, "Introduction to the sedimentology of paralic reservoirs: recent advances," *Geological Society Special Publication*. 2017. doi: 10.1144/SP444.14.

[4] G. Nichols, "Introduction: Sedimentology and stratigraphy," in *Sedimentology and Stratigraphy*, 2009.

[5] R. N. Ginsburg, "Introduction To Comparative Sedimentology Of Carbonates.," *Am. Assoc. Pet. Geol. Bull.*, 1974, doi: 10.1306/83d9148e-16c7-11d7-8645000102c1865d.

[6] "Chapter 1 Introduction and process sedimentology," *Handb. Pet. Explor. Prod.*, 2006, doi: 10.1016/S1567-8032(06)80020-0.

[7] P. Joseph, V. Teles, and P. Weill, "Modelling approaches in sedimentology: Introduction to the thematic issue," 2016. doi: 10.1016/j.crte.2016.04.001.

[8] L. Jansa, "Modern carbonates — Tropical, temperate, polar: Introduction to sedimentology and geochemistry," *Sediment. Geol.*, 1997, doi: 10.1016/s0037-0738(97)00028-6.

[9] G. M. E. Perillo, "Chapter 1: Geomorphology and sedimentology of estuaries: An introduction," *Dev. Sedimentol.*, 1995, doi: 10.1016/S0070-4571(05)80021-4.

[10] A. M. Harvey, A. E. Mather, and M. Stokes, "Alluvial fans: Geomorphology, sedimentology, dynamics - Introduction. A review of alluvial-fan research," *Geol. Soc. Spec. Publ.*, 2005, doi: 10.1144/GSL.SP.2005.251.01.01.

[11] C. Poleto and S. Charlesworth, "Introduction: The sedimentology of aqueous systems," *Sedimentology of Aqueous Systems*. 2010. doi: 10.1002/9781444317114.ch.

[12] P. A. Carling, A. D. Kirkbride, S. Parnachov, P. S. Borodavko, and G. W. Berger, "Late Quaternary catastrophic flooding in the Altai Mountains of south-central Siberia: A synoptic overview and an introduction to flood deposit sedimentology," *Int. Assoc. Sedimentol. Spec. Publ.*, 2002, doi: 10.1002/9781444304299.ch2.

[13] G. Zhong, X. Zhu, M. C. de Matos, D. B. Dunlap, and H. Liu, "Introduction to special section: Seismic sedimentology," *Interpretation*. 2018. doi: 10.1190/INT-2018-0314-SPSEINTRO.1.

[14] S. M. Sengupta, "Introduction to sedimentology," *Introd. to Sedimentol.*, 1994, doi: 10.1016/0037-0738(95)90041-1.

[15] U. Förstner, "Environmental sedimentology," *J. Soils Sediments*, 2007, doi: 10.1065/jss2007.11.263.

CHAPTER 3

A STUDY ON SEDIMENTARY GEOCHEMISTRY

Mr. Bhairab Gogoi, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - bhairabjyoti@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

The study of the chemical makeup and processes that take place inside sediments and sedimentary rocks is the focus of the geology field known as sedimentary geochemistry. It covers the investigation of how elements and compounds are distributed, cycled, and transformed in sedimentary systems. An overview of the main features and uses of sedimentary geochemistry is given in this abstract. The origins, weathering processes, and environmental factors that prevailed during their creation are all reflected in the chemical composition of sediments and sedimentary rocks. To understand the geological past and paleoenvironmental conditions, sedimentary geochemists examine the main and trace element concentrations, isotopic compositions, and mineralogical features of sediments. Geochemical data may be used to recreate previous temperature changes, identify sedimentary facies, and comprehend the development of sedimentary basins when combined with other sedimentological and stratigraphic data.

KEYWORDS:

Distribution Coefficients, Ionic Potential, Redox Potential, Sedimentary Geochemistry.

INTRODUCTION

To evaluate the elemental and isotopic compositions of sediments, geochemical techniques including X-ray fluorescence (XRF), inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS), and stable isotope analysis are often used. With the use of these methods, researchers may identify the origins of sediments, evaluate the effects of diagenetic processes, and examine biogeochemical cycles in marine, lacustrine, and terrestrial ecosystems. Sedimentary geochemistry is useful in many different contexts. The exploration and characterisation of mineral resources, such as metal ores and hydrocarbon reservoirs, depend heavily on it. Sedimentary rocks' geochemical fingerprints may provide important details regarding the existence of organic-rich source rocks, migratory routes, and possible gas and oil traps.

Sedimentary geochemistry also supports analyses and evaluations of the environment. Geochemists may analyse past pollution patterns, pinpoint the origins of contaminants, and determine the long-term effects of human activity on aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems by examining sediment cores. To better understand the inherent variability of Earth's systems and separate it from human effects, sedimentary records also serve as archives of paleoclimate and paleoenvironmental changes.

Sedimentary geochemistry is a subfield of geology that examines how elements and compounds are distributed and changed chemically within sediments and sedimentary rocks. It entails the investigation of the mechanisms in charge of the integration, maintenance, and modification of chemical components in sedimentary systems. Sedimentary geochemistry offers important insights into the development of economic resources, environmental circumstances, and Earth's history. The examination of major and trace elements in sediments and sedimentary rocks is a crucial component of sedimentary geochemistry. This aids in identifying the origin of sediments, the weathering processes that have impacted their composition, and the environmental factors that led to their deposition. While trace elements may identify distinct source locations or environmental circumstances during deposition, major elements like silicon, aluminium, calcium, and iron give information about the mineralogy and lithology of sediments [1]–[3].

Sedimentary geochemistry also includes isotopic geochemistry, which is crucial. Carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulphur isotopic ratios may provide light on paleoenvironmental conditions, such as previous climatic changes, ocean circulation patterns, and biological activity. In order to recreate previous temperature, salinity, and nutrient availability in ancient seas or lakes, stable isotopes are often utilised. Sedimentary rocks may be dated and their depositional history can be deduced using radiogenic isotopes like rubidium-strontium and uranium-lead.

Sedimentary geochemistry is important for identifying and assessing economic resources. For instance, the identification of probable hydrocarbon source rocks and the evaluation of their thermal maturity may be assisted by the study of organic-rich sediments and the detection of biomarkers. The identification and characterisation of mineral deposits, particularly those containing industrial minerals, basic metals, and precious metals, may also be aided by geochemical investigations of sedimentary rocks.

Sedimentary geochemistry also has uses for the environment. Geochemists can measure pollution levels, identify the origins of pollutants, and analyse the long-term effects of human activity on ecosystems by examining the chemical makeup of sediments. Sedimentary records operate as archives of previous environmental changes, offering insightful information on both manmade influences and natural variability on Earth's systems.

Sedimentary geochemistry is essential for understanding the makeup, origin, and environmental relevance of sediments and sedimentary rocks. Researchers can recreate Earth's past, investigate economic resources, and evaluate environmental changes by examining the chemical properties, isotopic fingerprints, and mineralogical features of sediments. Sedimentary geochemistry is a multidisciplinary discipline that aids in the management of resources and environmental preservation by advancing our knowledge of Earth's processes.

Chemical processes during weathering, transit, and burial (diagenesis) affect the chemical makeup and physical characteristics of sedimentary rocks to a great degree. If we wish to comprehend the physical characteristics of sedimentary rocks, we cannot ignore examining chemical processes. The sediment composition, such as the concentration of sand/clay ratio and the clay mineralogy, has a significant impact on sediment movement and dispersion of sedimentary facies. The diagenetic processes during burial begin with the fundamental composition.

Now that we have a basic understanding of several chemical and mineralogical ideas that are pertinent to sedimentological processes, we will move on.

DISCUSSION

Clastic sediments are made up of source rocks that have been broken down by weathering and erosion. The source rock might be sedimentary, metamorphic, or igneous. Clastic sediment compositions consequently result from the provenance (types of rocks present in the drainage basin), climate, and relief. The dissolved component is discharged into lakes or the ocean, where it settles as chemical or biological sediments. Before being eventually stored in a sedimentary basin, the grains continue to weather and abrade throughout travel, and sediments may be deposited and eroded several times. As part of the diagenetic processes, sediments are also exposed to mineral dissolution and the precipitation of new minerals after deposition. We are mostly interested in how minerals react with water at relatively low temperatures. These processes, which are known as metamorphism at temperatures over 200–250°C, are fundamentally identical in that unstable minerals dissolve and minerals that are thermodynamically more stable at certain temperatures and pressures precipitate [4], [5].

However, unstable minerals and amorphous phases may be retained for a very long period at low temperatures, and there may be a large number of metastable phases. Many of the chemical processes involved in the dissolution and precipitation of minerals go along so slowly that some degree of equilibrium can only be reached after an incredibly long time. Thermodynamics will always govern reactions and direct them towards more stable phases. Temperature regulates the kinetic reaction rate. Silicate reactions are very sluggish at low temperatures, making it exceedingly challenging to investigate them in a scientific setting. The complexity is increased by the frequent presence of biological processes alongside purely chemical ones. It has been discovered that bacteria are crucial to the weathering and precipitation of minerals. Their main role is to speed up reactions, especially when it comes to weathering.

One oxygen atom is joined to two hydrogen atoms to make water (H2O), with the H-O-H bonds making an angle of 105 degrees (Figure 1). The spacing between the hydrogen atoms is 1.51, while the gap between the oxygen and hydrogen atoms is 0.96. Consequently, water molecules exhibit a strong dipole with a negative charge on the side opposite the hydrogen atoms (Figure 1). Because of its high viscosity and relatively high boiling point, water is an excellent solvent for polar compounds. This molecular structure also causes water to have a high surface tension, which is necessary for the movement of particles and organisms across its surface.

This high surface tension also contributes to the capillary forces that suck water through soils with fine grains.

For describing and clarifying geochemical processes, the following ideas are extremely helpful:

1. Ionic potential
2. Redox potential Eh
3. pH
4. Hydration of ions in water
5. Distribution coefficients
6. Isotopes

Ionic potential

V.M. Goldschmidt used the phrase "ionic potential" to describe how elements are distributed in sediments and aquatic systems. Contrast it with ionisation potential to avoid confusion. To prevent misunderstanding, recent writers have suggested the word "hydropotential" for the idea. The ratio of the charge (valency) Z to the ionic radius R is known as the ionic potential (I.P.): IP = Z R. The charge on an ion's surface, or its ability to absorb ions, is expressed by the ionic potential. big ions with a small charge have a low ionic potential, whereas small-charged big ions have a high ionic potential (see Figure 2). Low ionic potential ions, such as Na+ and K+, stay in solution as hydrated cations because they are unable to break the bonds in the water molecule. This indicates that water molecules with a negative polarity towards the cation are around the ion (Figure 1).

This is because, for most alkaline earth elements (Group II, I.P. 3) and alkali metal ions (Group I), the O-H link is stronger than the bond that the cation forms with oxygen (M-O bonding, where M = metal). The strongest hydration will be found in metals like Mg2+, Fe2+, Mn2+, Li+, and Na+, whose ionic potential is just somewhat below that needed to form M-O bonds. The hydration has a significant impact on the ion's chemical composition and ability to adsorb or penetrate a mineral's crystal structure. We may refer to the area that an ion and its surrounding water molecules occupy inside a crystal structure as its "hydrated radius" since the ions are surrounded by water molecules (Figure 3). The metal ion substitutes one of the hydrogen atoms to generate extremely low solubility compounds of the type M(OH)n when the M-O bond is almost similar in strength to the O-H bond (I.P. 3-12; see Figure 2).

Fe(OH), Al(OH), and Mn(OH) are a few examples of these so-called hydroxides that we often find in sedimentary rocks as a consequence of weathering. High ionic potential ions (>12) give rise to soluble anion complexes like SO4, CO3, and PO4 3 and release both H+ ions into solution by forming an M-O link that is stronger than the H-O bond. This method may be used to describe the behaviour of elements that form ionic connections on both the electropositive and electronegative sides of the Periodic Table. The strength of the M-O bond is not only determined by the valency and radius for the intermediate components, however, and the picture gets significantly more complex as a result. However, the idea of ionic potential is still relevant since we can see that during weathering, components with low ionic potential stay in solution together with the highly ionic potential anionic complexes of metals and nonmetals. This may be seen in the way saltwater is made.

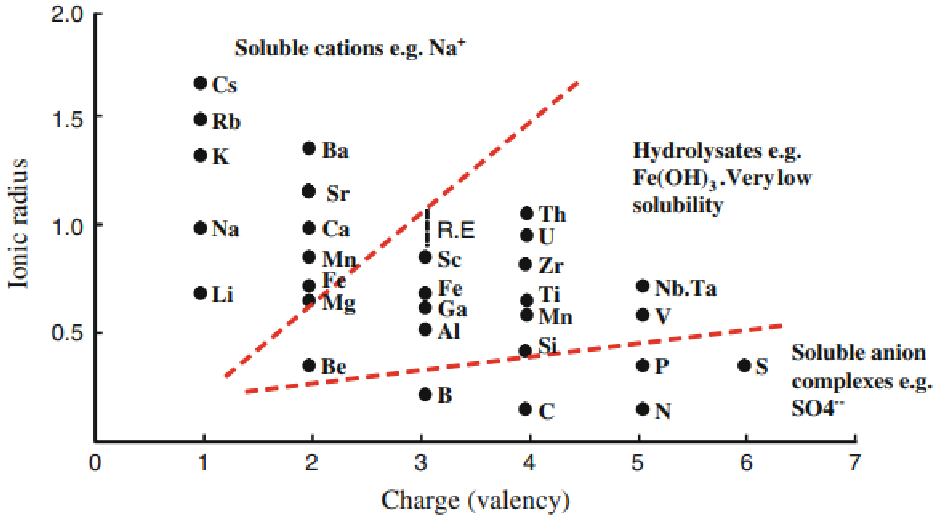


Figure 2: Ionic radius and charge (valence) for some geochemically important elements.

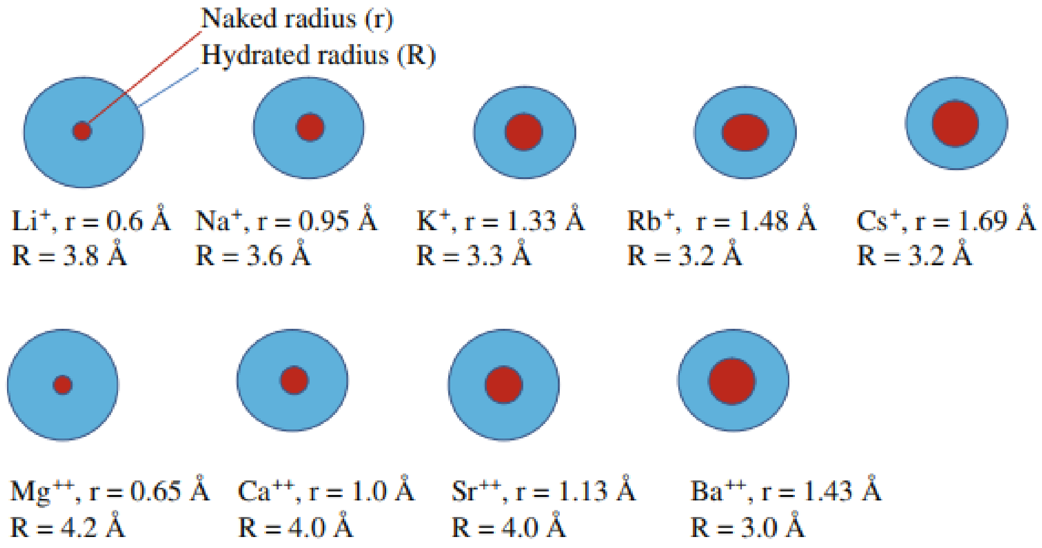


Figure 3: Ionic radius (in Ångstrom units) of hydrated and non-hydrated ("naked") ions of alkali metals and alkaline-earth metals.

Redox Potentials (Eh)

Redox potentials, sometimes written as Eh, are indicators of a system's oxidation-reduction potential or electron activity. They are used to evaluate the redox state or the availability of electrons in a certain environment. They indicate the propensity of a chemical species to acquire or lose electrons.

The redox potential is commonly measured in relation to a reference electrode and is represented in volts (V) or millivolts (mV). The standard hydrogen electrode (SHE), which has an arbitrary redox potential of 0 volts, is the reference electrode often employed in aquatic systems. Depending on the particular needs of the system, other reference electrodes may also be employed, such as the silver/silver chloride electrode.

The concentration and activity of chemical species participating in redox processes affect the redox potential. A positive redox potential ($Eh > 0$) often denotes an oxidising environment with easy access to electron acceptors, while a negative redox potential (Eh 0) denotes a reducing environment with an abundance of electron donors.

Different naturally occurring and artificially created systems depend heavily on redox potentials. Here are a few illustrations:

1. Environmental Systems:

Understanding biogeochemical processes in soil and aquatic settings requires knowledge of redox potentials. For instance, the redox potential is positive in oxygen-rich settings, suggesting the existence of oxidised species such as dissolved oxygen (O2). The reduction of substances like nitrate (NO3-), sulphate (SO42-), and iron (Fe3+) is more favoured in anoxic settings, which have negative redox potentials. Redox potentials are used to evaluate a metal or alloy's susceptibility to corrosion. Engineers can determine the possibility of corrosion by comparing the metal's redox potential to that of its surroundings. A stable passivation layer is suggested by a metal's positive redox potential, while a more corrosive environment is suggested by a metal's negative redox potential.

2. **Microbial Activity:**

Numerous biological and artificial systems rely heavily on microorganisms. The sorts of metabolic activities taking place and microbial activity may both be impacted by the redox potential. Depending on the prevailing redox conditions, certain bacteria may use various electron acceptors, such as oxygen, nitrate, or iron.

3. **Water Treatment:**

Processes employed in the disinfection and oxidation of pollutants in water involve redox potentials. Operators of water treatment systems may regulate the redox potential to regulate the efficiency of chemical reactions and the elimination of impurities. Redox potentials (Eh) are a measurement of a system's oxidation-reduction potential or electron activity. They impact biogeochemical processes, corrosion susceptibility, microbial activity, and water treatment procedures and provide insights into the redox status of an ecosystem. Understanding and controlling diverse natural and artificial systems depend on redox potentials.

pH

Due to its effect on a variety of chemical processes and reactions that take place in sedimentary settings, pH is a crucial parameter in sedimentary geochemistry. The concentration of hydrogen ions (H+) in a solution determines pH, a measurement of a solution's acidity or alkalinity. Mineral dissolution, precipitation, redox reactions, and element mobility all depend on pH in sedimentary systems.

Here are some significant pH-related features of sedimentary geochemistry:

a) **Mineral Dissolution and Precipitation:**

Mineral solubility in sedimentary environments is influenced by pH. Low pH levels may speed up the breakdown of minerals and cause the release of ions into solution. The creation of new minerals may, however, be facilitated by alkaline circumstances (high pH). The composition and durability of sedimentary rocks may be affected by pH, which also affects the saturation state of minerals.

b) **Redox Reactions:**

Redox processes in sedimentary settings are influenced by pH. Transferring protons (H+) and electrons (e-) between various species is a common component of redox processes. The redox potential (Eh) of the system is influenced by pH, which also impacts the availability of protons. pH may be a factor in redox processes like iron reduction or the oxidation of organic materials.

c) **Element Mobility and Speciation:**

In sedimentary systems, pH has an impact on the speciation and mobility of elements. Element solubility, complexation, and precipitation may alter under various pH conditions. For instance, by affecting the speciation of trace metals and their capacity to form solid phases or soluble complexes, pH may impact the mobility of metals like iron, manganese, and arsenic.

d) Biological Activity:

The viability and activity of organisms in sedimentary settings are significantly influenced by pH. For optimum development and metabolic activity, many species have particular pH needs. The microbial community and biogeochemical processes like nutrient cycling and organic matter breakdown may be affected by pH changes.

e) Paleoenvironmental Reconstructions:

In sedimentary records, pH may be used as a stand-in for reconstructing historical environmental conditions. Past pH fluctuations may be found in some sedimentary archives, such as lake sediments or coral skeletons. The isotopic composition or elemental ratios of these data may be used to infer pH changes through time and provide information about the paleoenvironment. It is important to highlight that a variety of processes, including the breakdown of organic matter, mineral weathering, biotic activity, and human inputs, may affect the pH of sedimentary systems. Therefore, thorough evaluation of the particular sedimentary environment and the probable causes of pH variations is necessary for reliable pH measurements and interpretations. pH is an important parameter in sedimentary geochemistry, impacting biological activity, redox reactions, element speciation, and reconstructions of paleoenvironments. For understanding sedimentary records, researching biogeochemical cycles, and evaluating environmental conditions in sedimentary systems, it is essential to comprehend pH fluctuations and how they affect sedimentary processes.

Isotopes

Sediment provenance, paleoclimate reconstruction, diagenetic changes, and other geological processes may all be understood better thanks to the isotopes found in sedimentary rocks. Isotopes are distinct mass number versions of the same element's atoms that contain varying quantities of neutrons. The following are some crucial ideas on the usage of isotopes in sedimentary rocks:

Stable Isotopes:

Sedimentary geochemistry often makes use of stable isotopes. In sedimentary rocks, stable isotopes of carbon (13C), oxygen (18O), nitrogen (15N), and sulphur (34S) are most often analysed. These isotopes may provide important details regarding the origin of sedimentary material, biogeochemical cycles, and historical environmental conditions [6]–[8]. The carbon cycle is studied using carbon isotopes (13C), which also provide light on primary productivity, carbon sources, and paleoenvironmental conditions. Changes in the carbon source (for example, organic matter vs carbonate minerals) or various metabolic processes may be indicated by variations in 13C readings.

It is common practise to use oxygen isotopes (18O) to look into paleoclimate and paleotemperature variations. The isotopic composition of precipitation, which in turn may be connected to temperature and the isotopic composition of the water source, can vary, as can the 18O composition of sedimentary minerals like carbonates and silicates. In order to investigate nitrogen cycling and learn more about nutrient availability, nitrogen fixation, denitrification, and other biogeochemical processes, nitrogen isotopes (15N) are used. Indicating changes in the dynamics of nutrient cycle, 15N levels may reflect the sources of nitrogen, such as marine or terrestrial sources. Sulphur isotopes (34S) are used to study sulphur cycle and may provide light on the creation of sulphur compounds like sulphate or sulphide as well as how they change over time. Microbial activities, hydrothermal activity, and the sulfur's oxidation state all have an impact on 34S levels.

Radiogenic Isotopes:

The age and origin of sedimentary rocks are ascertained using radiogenic isotopes like lead (Pb), strontium (Sr), and neodymium (Nd). Utilising the U-Pb decay mechanism, lead isotopes like Pb-206, Pb-207, and Pb-208 are used to radiometrically date sedimentary rocks. This method is especially helpful for dating detrital zircons that provide information about the origin of the sediment and the age of deposit in sandstones and conglomerates.

Sediment may be traced back to its source using strontium isotopes, such as Sr-87 and Sr-86. To determine the origin of the sediment, strontium isotopes in sedimentary rocks may be compared to the isotopic composition of putative source locations, such as rocks or water bodies. In provenance studies, neodymium isotopes, such as neodymium-143 and neodymium-144, are used to track the origin of sediment and look into the tectonic history of the source region. Depending on the geological age and make-up of the rocks in the source location, neodymium isotopes may change.

Diagenetic Isotopes:

During the diagenesis process, which turns sediments into sedimentary rocks, isotopic compositions may also alter. The isotopic fingerprints of sedimentary minerals like carbonates and clay minerals may be impacted by diagenetic changes. It is essential to comprehend these alterations in order to analyse isotopic data and discern between main signals and secondary modifications.

Distribution coefficients

Distribution coefficients, sometimes abbreviated as Kd, are factors used to characterise how a chemical component is distributed across two phases in a system. They are often employed to estimate the equilibrium distribution of pollutants between solid phases (like soils, sediments, or minerals) and aqueous phases (like groundwater or surface water) in environmental and geochemical research.

The ratio of a substance's equilibrium concentration in the solid phase to its equilibrium concentration in the aqueous phase is known as the distribution coefficient:

Kd = [C_solid] / [C_aqueous]

Where:

1. Kd = Distribution coefficient
2. [C_solid] = Concentration of the substance in the solid phase
3. [C_aqueous] = Concentration of the substance in the aqueous phase

The features of the contaminant as well as those of the solid and aqueous phases have an impact on distribution coefficients. In relation to distribution coefficients, it is important to keep in mind:

Type of Contaminant:

The contaminant's molecular size, charge, hydrophobicity, and solubility are some examples of the chemical and physical characteristics that might affect the contaminant's affinity for the solid or liquid phase. In comparison to more polar contaminants, contaminants with greater hydrophobicity often have larger distribution coefficients in materials rich in organic compounds.

Solid Phase Characteristics:

The distribution coefficient may be influenced by the mineralogy, organic carbon content, surface area, and composition of the solid phase. The distribution of pollutants may be considerably influenced by the processes of sorption or adsorption onto solid surfaces, including mineral surfaces or organic materials.

Aqueous Phase Conditions:

The distribution coefficient may be affected by the aqueous phase's chemistry and characteristics, including pH, ionic strength, and the presence of competing ions or complexing agents. Changes in these variables may affect how pollutants bind and, as a result, how they are distributed across the solid and aqueous phases.

Time and Temperature:

Temperature may have an impact on distribution coefficients, with higher temperatures often favouring more desorption or release of pollutants from solid phases. Additionally, depending on the system and the particular contaminant, the equilibrium period needed for the creation of distribution coefficients might change.

Importance in Environmental Studies:

In environmental risk assessments, fate and transport modelling, and remediation techniques, distribution coefficients are essential inputs. They help forecast the potential for migration, bioavailability, and persistence of pollutants by offering insights on how they behave in various environmental compartments. It is important to remember that because distribution coefficients are often calculated in carefully monitored lab settings, they could not accurately reflect the complexity of actual environmental systems. The actual distribution and behaviour of pollutants may be affected by variations in site-specific variables, such as heterogeneous soils or sediments, non-equilibrium conditions, and interactions with biota. Distribution coefficients are numerical measurements that express how pollutants are distributed in equilibrium between the solid and aqueous phases. The qualities of the contaminant, the features of the solid phase, the conditions of the aqueous phase, temperature, and time all have an impact on them. The knowledge of pollutant fate and transit, risk assessments, and environmental management may all benefit from distribution coefficients[9]–[11].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the study of sedimentary environments' chemical composition, processes, and interactions is known as sedimentary geochemistry. Sedimentary geochemistry offers crucial insights into the origin, transformation, and diagenesis of sedimentary rocks by the investigation of different chemical parameters, including major and trace elements, isotopes, and redox potentials. The study of sediment provenance, which entails discovering the source and transit history of sedimentary materials, is one of the main areas of interest in sedimentary geochemistry. Researchers may deduce details about the original source rocks, tectonic settings, and the erosional and depositional processes that have impacted sediment deposition by examining the composition and isotopic fingerprints of sedimentary rocks. Reconstructing previous environmental conditions also heavily relies on sedimentary geochemistry. It is possible to learn about previous temperature conditions, ocean circulation patterns, and changes in biogeochemical cycles via the isotopic study of sedimentary rocks, such as carbon and oxygen isotopes. Researchers may learn more about the oxygenation level of ancient seas and the existence of certain biogeochemical processes, including the deposition of organic-rich sediments, by analysing the elemental composition and redox potentials.

The study of diagenetic processes, which deal with the physical and chemical changes that take place in sediments following deposition, is also aided by sedimentary geochemistry. The alteration of primary minerals, the precipitation of secondary minerals, and the mobilisation or fixation of elements are all possible outcomes of these processes.

Scientists can determine the processes, timing, and effects of diagenetic reactions on sedimentary rocks by examining the mineralogy, pore water chemistry, and isotopic compositions of diagenetic products.

Sedimentary geochemistry offers a wide range of real-world uses, including resource exploration, environmental monitoring, and environmental remediation. It assists in locating possible mineral resources and determining whether they are economically viable. Furthermore, sedimentary geochemistry aids in the formulation of methods for pollution management and cleanup by revealing information about the fate and transit of pollutants in aquatic and terrestrial systems.

REFERENCES

[1] Ú. C. Farrell *et al.*, "The Sedimentary Geochemistry and Paleoenvironments Project," *Geobiology*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/gbi.12462.

[2] D. T. Jayawardana, R. M. T. D. Madusanka, R. M. N. P. K. Jayasinghe, A. M. N. M. Adikaram, and D. T. Udagedara, "Sedimentary geochemistry of alluvial overburden in the primary gem deposit of Pelmadulla, Sri Lanka," *J. Natl. Sci. Found. Sri Lanka*, 2019, doi: 10.4038/jnsfsr.v47i2.9164.

[3] A. G. Lipp, G. G. Roberts, A. C. Whittaker, C. J. B. Gowing, and V. M. Fernandes, "River Sediment Geochemistry as a Conservative Mixture of Source Regions: Observations and Predictions From the Cairngorms, UK," *J. Geophys. Res. Earth Surf.*, 2020, doi: 10.1029/2020JF005700.

[4] P. O. Kissi, "University of Ghana http://ugspace.ug.edu.gh," *Util. iodized salt among households Danfa community*, 2012.

[5] S. E. Calvert and T. F. Pedersen, "Sedimentary geochemistry of manganese: Implications for the environment of formation of manganiferous black shales," *Econ. Geol.*, 1996, doi: 10.2113/gsecongeo.91.1.36.

[6] J. R. Merrill, E. F. X. Lyden, M. Honda, and J. R. Arnold, "The sedimentary geochemistry of the beryllium isotopes," *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta*, 1960, doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(60)90022-3.

[7] S. M. McLennan, "Geochemistry of sedimentary processes on mars," *SEPM Spec. Publ.*, 2012, doi: 10.2110/pec.12.102.0119.

[8] J. Wang, C. Wu, T. Zhou, W. Zhu, X. Li, and T. Zhang, "Source and sink evolution of a Permian–Triassic rift–drift basin in the southern Central Asian Orogenic Belt: Perspectives on sedimentary geochemistry and heavy mineral analysis," *Journal of Asian Earth Sciences*. 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.jseaes.2019.103905.

[9] A. W. Rose, "Geochemistry of Sedimentary Ore Deposits," *Eos, Trans. Am. Geophys. Union*, 1984, doi: 10.1029/eo065i012p00106-02.

[10] J. W. Morse and F. T. Mackenzie, "Geochemistry of sedimentary carbonates," *Geochemistry Sediment. carbonates*, 1990, doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(93)90401-h.

[11] Y. S. Du, J. Zhu, S. Z. Gu, Y. J. Xu, and J. H. Yang, "Sedimentary geochemistry of the Cambrian-Ordovician cherts: Implication on archipelagic ocean of North Qilian orogenic belt," *Sci. China, Ser. D Earth Sci.*, 2007, doi: 10.1007/s11430-007-0111-z.

CHAPTER 4

SANDSTONES AND SANDSTONE RESERVOIRS

Dr. Suman Paul, Associate Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,
Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - sumanpaul@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Sandstones are sedimentary rocks predominantly made up of grains the size of sand, often measuring 0.0625 to 2 millimetres in diameter. They are a crucial part of sedimentary basins and are well known for serving as vital natural resource reserves for water, hydrocarbons, and other resources. For efficient exploration, production, and management of these important subsurface formations, sandstone reservoir features and characteristics must be understood. An overview of sandstones and sandstone reservoirs is given in this abstract, with special emphasis on their geological relevance, depositional processes, petrophysical characteristics, and exploration potential. It also emphasises how crucial it is to combine geophysical, petrological, and geological information when describing and assessing sandstone reservoirs. The abstract talks about how sandstones develop in a variety of habitats, such as fluvial, aeolian, deltaic, and marine ones. It emphasises how sediment transportation, classification, and grain size distribution affect the structure and porosity of sandstone reservoirs. The importance of diagenetic processes, including as cementation, compaction, and mineral alteration, in determining the reservoir quality and permeability is also emphasised in the book.

KEYWORDS:

Diagnetic Process, Meteoric Water, Sand Grains, Sandstone Reservoirs.

INTRODUCTION

Sandstones are sedimentary rocks largely made up of grains the size of sand (0.0625 to 2 millimetres in diameter), which are then bound together by a variety of minerals, usually silica, calcium carbonate, or iron oxides. They are often found in terrestrial and aquatic habitats, such as beaches, riverbeds, and deltas, where sand grains are transported and deposited. To determine a sandstone's potential as a reservoir, it is important to consider its petrophysical characteristics, such as porosity, permeability, and saturation. The relevance of core analysis, well logging, and geophysical approaches in measuring these characteristics and describing reservoir heterogeneity is emphasised in the abstract. The abstract ends by outlining the importance of sandstone reservoirs as a source of energy on a worldwide scale as well as the current scientific and technical developments aimed at bettering our knowledge and use of these reservoirs. It highlights the multidisciplinary character of sandstone reservoir studies, which, in order to reach their full potential, need for cooperation among geologists, petrophysicists, reservoir engineers, and geophysicists. Specific kinds of sandstone formations called "sandstone reservoirs" have characteristics that make them ideal for storing and moving hydrocarbons like oil and natural gas. The oil and gas sector uses these reservoirs as crucial targets for exploration and production. Porosity, permeability, and reservoir continuity are the main attributes that make sandstone reservoirs valuable [1], [2].

Porosity:

The term "porosity" describes the voids or holes in a rock that may accommodate liquids. The way that individual sand grains are packed and arranged determines the majority of the porosity in sandstones. Sand grains that are well-sorted and spherical often have greater porosity than those that are poorly sorted or angular. The amount of fluid that a reservoir rock can contain is determined by its porosity, which is an important consideration. The capacity of a rock to convey fluids via linked pore spaces is known as permeability. The dimensions, geometry, and connectivity of the pore spaces in sandstone reservoirs are the main determinants of permeability. The efficient transport of fluids inside the reservoir is made possible by the increased permeability often shown by well-sorted, well-rounded sand grains with strong pore connectivity.

Reservoir Continuity:

The size and connection of the sandstone reservoir across a certain region are referred to as reservoir continuity. Given that it enables the effective storage and transport of hydrocarbons within the rock formation, a continuous and wide sandstone reservoir is desired. Factors including sedimentary deposition, tectonic history, and erosional processes have an impact on reservoir continuity. Sandstone reservoirs may be found at varying depths below the Earth's surface and are often connected to sedimentary basins. Drilling wells and using methods like well logging, core analysis, and reservoir modelling are necessary for the exploration and production of hydrocarbons from sandstone reservoirs in order to characterise the reservoir characteristics and maximise hydrocarbon recovery.

Sandstone reservoirs provide other crucial purposes besides being significant to the oil and gas sector. They may operate as aquifers for the storage and extraction of groundwater, supplying vital water resources for agricultural and human use. Due to its advantageous porosity and permeability properties, sandstone reservoirs also offer promise as locations for underground carbon dioxide (CCS) or natural gas storage. Sandstones and sandstone reservoirs are important parts of the Earth's sedimentary system that have a big impact on the economy and the environment. For effective exploration, production, and management of hydrocarbon resources, as well as other uses relating to water resources and subsurface storage, it is crucial to understand their geological features, such as porosity, permeability, and reservoir continuity.

DISCUSSION

Sandstones make up around 60% of all petroleum reserves; outside of the Middle East, where carbonate reservoirs are rarer, the ratio is much greater. Although pore geometry and the wetting characteristics of the mineral surfaces may also have an impact on petroleum production, porosity and permeability are the most crucial reservoir features. Sandstones serve as reservoirs for both oil and gas as well as groundwater, which is a resource whose value is rising [3].

The depositional environment and reservoir parameters influence the outer shape and distribution of sand bodies. However, the internal characteristics (permeability and porosity) are essential for petroleum recovery. The depositional environment, the diagenetic processes close to the surface, and the diagenetic composition (provenance), which is governed by the textural and mineralogical composition (provenance), all have a role in the attributes of sandstone reservoirs.

Sand and sandstones are rocks that are mostly made up of sedimentary particles between 1/16 and 2 mm in diameter, or sand grains. While transitions to more silt- and clay-rich rocks may be found, sandstones also include varying quantities of various grain sizes. The majority of sandstones have a well-defined top grain-size limit with varying silt and clay concentrations. We refer to them as conglomeratic sandstones if they include a substantial amount of pebbles or other coarser grains. The majority of categorization methods are based on the correlation between the proportion of sand-sized grains, the make-up of the sand grains, and the matrix of clay and silt content.

Clay and sand grains, which are composed of quartz, feldspar, and rock fragments (or unstable rock fragments, U.R.F.), may be distinguished using a four-component diagram (Figure 1). The quartz mineral grains and the rock pieces made of microcrystalline (or cryptocrystalline) quartz, including chert, are often grouped together. Arkoses are sandstones with a higher than 25% feldspar concentration and little to no rock fragmentation. When the proportion of rock pieces is large, we refer to lithic sandstones, which are often formed from basalts and intrusive volcanic rocks with extremely fine-grained sediment and sand grains that frequently include several minerals. The names for pure quartz sandstones with fewer than 5% feldspar or rock pieces are quartz arenite or orthoquartzite. Subarkoses are sandstones with modest feldspar concentrations (5–25%). Sand grains made mostly of single minerals, primarily quartz and feldspar, are produced when granitic rocks and other coarse- to medium-grained rocks are eroded or weathered.

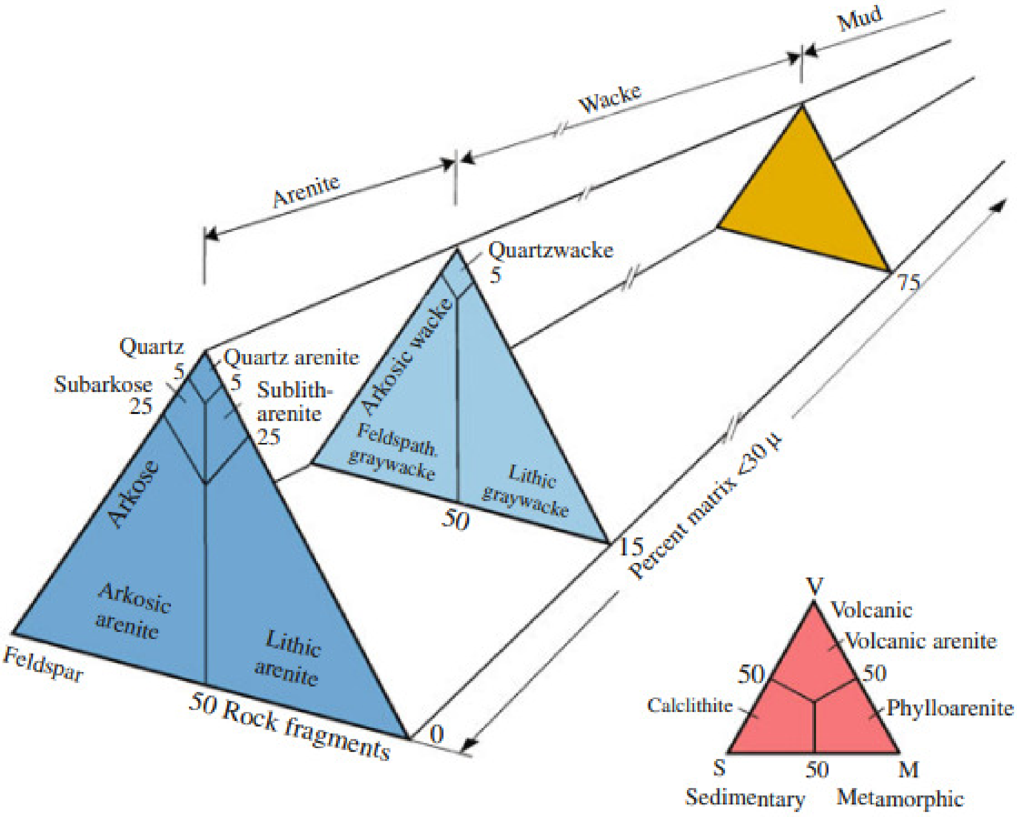


Figure 1: Classification of sandstones from Dott 1964.

The parent rock's feldspar must not have weathered too much into clay minerals (like kaolinite) in order for arkose to occur. Therefore, arkoses are created when granites and gneisses erode quickly compared to weathering and the resulting sediments are deposited in a basin after a brief sediment movement. Therefore, arkose is often connected to sedimentary rift basins created by faulting in gneissic and granitic rocks, sometimes known as continental crust. Because weathering occurs more slowly in colder regions, feldspar and unstable rock pieces are preserved.

There is a lot longer time for weathering of both in situ bedrock and sediment in transit in tectonically stable regions with mature relief. Sand particles (grains) in these settings are repeatedly deposited and degraded before they reach their ultimate deposition location. Subarkoses or orthoquartzites will then be deposited once a significant fraction of the feldspar grains break down during transit. The purest quartz sandstones, known as orthoquartzites or quartz arenites, are produced after weathering almost all unstable minerals, leaving a concentration of quartz and a few heavy minerals. This is especially true of beach sand as almost all clay particles have been eliminated. Fluvial sand, which rivers deposit, is less well-sorted and may have a higher clay content. Greywackes are sandstones that have a matrix content of above 15%.

Sand that is carried in suspension or during mass flow (such as turbidites) may grade into sandy mudstones and create greywackes but may also have worse sorting and a high matrix content. Sandstones may include clay minerals that are formed by alteration of feldspar, mica, and rock fragments following deposition during diagenesis. As a result, the sediments are less evenly sorted than they were during deposition.

Basic minerals like amphibole and pyroxene, as well as rocks like gabbro and basalt, are mechanically and chemically unstable by nature. It may be challenging to tell this material apart from the original matrix when the primary sand grains of volcanic or basic rocks break down and become a component of the matrix. Therefore, greywacke is characteristic of regions (fore-arc, inter-arc, and back-arc basins) where the sand grains are generated from volcanic or basic rocks along converging plate boundaries. Since there are no quartz grains, basic rocks will almost exclusively form clay during weathering [4], [5]. As we have seen, diverse source rocks and regions with differing tectonic stability are reflected in the different varieties of sandstone. Therefore, research on various sandstone types and their mineralogical maturity may be utilised to infer relief and climate as well as tectonic deformation in the past.

Prediction of Reservoir Quality

From the moment the sediments are deposited until they are buried at tremendous depth and throughout any subsequent uplift, the characteristics of all reservoir rocks are constantly changing. This is a result of both chemical processes involving the dissolution and precipitation of minerals and mechanical compaction. The qualities of the sandstones at any particular burial depth rely on their composition while at shallow depths as well as their temperature and stress histories during burial. Understanding the mechanisms that alter these characteristics is necessary for practical prediction of porosity and permeability throughout exploration and production.

It should be understood that the original sandstone composition serves as the beginning point for the diagenetic processes. This depends on the source, transit, and depositional settings of the degraded rocks. Therefore, a multidisciplinary basin study should include a relationship between diagenetic models and weathering and climate, sediment transport, facies models, and sequence stratigraphy. Although diagenesis is sometimes thought of as a somewhat particular area of sedimentology and petroleum geology, it encompasses all processes that alter the makeup of sediments after deposition but before metamorphism. The basic clastic composition and the depositional environment are the most crucial variables in forecasting reservoir quality at depth (Figure 2).

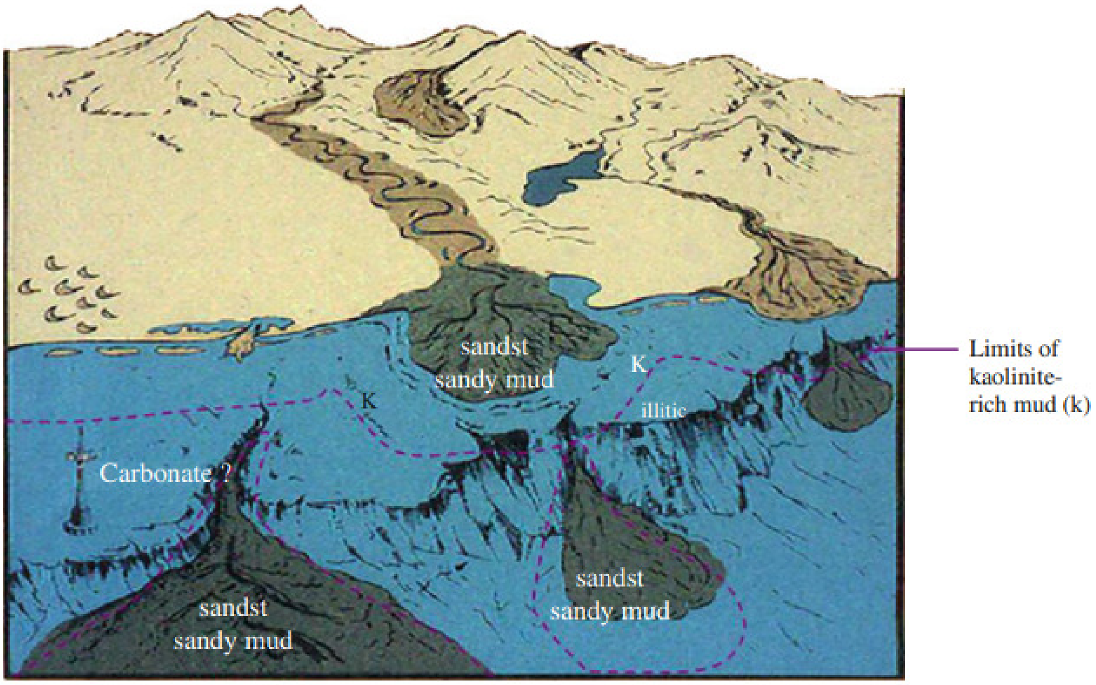


Figure 2: Schematic illustration of a sedimentary basin on a continental margin.

Early Diagenesis

Early diagenetic processes begin to change the main sediment composition as soon as sediments are deposited. Sediments have the greatest ability to interact with the atmosphere or water via fluid movement and diffusion at relatively shallow burial depths (between 1 and 10 m). The most effective location for the diffusion and fluid movement (advection) of dissolved solids is close to the surface, namely within approximately 1 m of the bottom. Therefore, at shallow depth as opposed to deeper burial, the possibility of sediments changing their bulk composition after deposition is substantially higher. Conditions may be oxidising close to the surface on land and in the first few centimetres of the ocean floor, but they are constantly diminishing at deeper depths in the basin.

Only on land or at shallow depths within enclosed basins may porewater concentration by evaporation lead to the precipitation of minerals. Sediments on ground are exposed to both air and fresh water from meteors. Weathering is caused by a combination of mineral dissolution in freshwater, which is initially undersaturated in relation to all the minerals present, and interactions with oxygen in the atmosphere. These are instances of early diagenesis that include the formation of soil. In arid climates, groundwater and sporadic rainfall may concentrate via evaporation, resulting in the precipitation of silicates and carbonates. Sand from the desert typically develops coatings of red or yellow iron oxides and clays, which may impede or stop quartz cementation at larger depths. The water in the ocean that is above the seafloor often oxidises. The lowest section of the water column is only likely to be decreasing if there is inadequate water circulation (poor ventilation), yet the phenomenon is more common in lakes and inland seas like the Black Sea.

However, oxidising conditions often only extend a few centimetres into the sediments even below well-oxygenated water because oxygen is rapidly used up by the oxidation (decay) of organic materials in the sediment. Most of the time, microorganisms help with this biologically. In most cases, accumulating sediments have enough organic material to act as porewater reducing agents. This organic material is made up of detritus from pelagic species like algae and bottom fauna that have accumulated on the seabed, as well as often detritus from terrestrial plants that have been carried into the basin.

Redox-Driven Processes on the Seafloor

Redox-driven activities on the seabed are those that take place as a result of changes in oxygen (O2) and other electron acceptor availability in marine sediments and the water column. Understanding biogeochemical cycling, nutrient dynamics, and the preservation of organic matter in marine settings depends on these processes. Here are a few significant redox-driven seabed processes:

Aerobic Respiration:

Aerobic respiration, in which bacteria use molecular oxygen as the electron acceptor to oxidise organic materials, is the predominant process in oxygenated settings. Carbon dioxide (CO2) is released during this process, which also produces energy for microbial metabolism.

Anaerobic Respiration:

Alternative electron acceptors are used by microorganisms to respire in settings when oxygen is scarce. In marine sediments, anaerobic electron acceptors such nitrate (NO3-), manganese (Mn4+), iron (Fe3+), and sulphate (SO42-) are often found. The microbial breakdown of organic waste and the cycling of nutrients depend on these processes, which include denitrification, manganese reduction, iron reduction, and sulphate reduction.

Methanogenesis:

Methane (CH4) is a byproduct of the anaerobic process of methanogenesis, which occurs when microbes break down organic materials. It occurs in sediments with low oxygen levels, especially in areas with a lot of organic matter, such wetlands, marshes, and certain deep-sea strata. A key player in the global carbon cycle, methane is a substantial greenhouse gas.

Diagenesis and Organic Matter Preservation:

The diagenesis (chemical and physical changes) of organic matter in marine sediments is influenced by redox conditions. Organic matter usually decomposes and oxidises well in aerobic environments. As electron acceptors become scarcer under anaerobic circumstances, organic matter preservation is improved, resulting in the buildup of organic carbon in sediments.

Biomineralization:

In marine settings, biogenic minerals may also develop due to redox reactions. For instance, microbial oxidation of soluble forms of iron (Fe2+) and manganese (Mn2+) results in the precipitation of iron and manganese oxides. These biogenic minerals have an impact on the geochemical cycling of metals and organic matter preservation.

Hydrothermal Vent Systems:

On the seabed, hydrothermal vent systems are characterised by high-temperature fluids that are particularly rich in reduced chemicals including hydrogen sulphide (H2S) and methane. Redox reactions happen when these hydrothermal fluids combine with oxygenated saltwater, creating mineral deposits and distinctive habitats sustained by chemosynthetic organisms.

Clarifying food availability, carbon cycling, and microbial dynamics in marine ecosystems requires an understanding of redox-driven processes on the bottom. These processes have effects on the operation of marine food webs, global biogeochemical cycles, and climate control. They are also relevant to the search for deep-sea mineral riches and the investigation of the planet's harsh conditions.

Importance of Biogenic Activity

After deposition, bioturbation is crucial in modifying the textural makeup of the sediments. The main lamination is physically destroyed by the burrowing creatures' consumption of mud, which causes organic materials to oxidise. At the sea or lake bottom, bioturbated sediments are more vulnerable to oxidation. By combining clean sand with clay, bioturbation may decrease the porosity and permeability of sandy laminae. The destruction of thin clay laminae by bioturbation would also enhance the vertical permeability, which might have a considerable impact on reservoir quality. Undisturbed primary lamination might be a sign of relatively quick sedimentation, which would have left little time for a burrowing bottom fauna to establish itself, or it could be a sign of significantly reducing circumstances, which would have severely limited the fauna. Because there aren't any species that can burrow, lamination in black shales is often well maintained. Anisotropy, or the difference in velocity and resistivity parallel and vertical to bedding, is a physical property that is also influenced by the presence or absence of burrowing and may be significant for geophysical modelling.

Faecal matter produced by burrowing worms has the potential to transform into smectite-rich clays, which in turn have the potential to transform into chlorite coatings, increasing reservoir quality. The function of early diagenetic coating development in maintaining deeper porosity on quartz grains makes it crucial. Most clastic depositional habitats include some organisms that produce organic matter, some of which is absorbed into the sediments, at least partially. Both sandstones and mudstones almost invariably include sizeable quantities of biogenic material from calcareous, and sometimes also siliceous, organisms. At deeper burial depths, this material may be a substantial source of carbonate and silica cement. Aragonite-based marine animals disintegrate after relatively shallow burial, and calcite either forms cement in the pore space between the grains or substitutes for the original material within the fossil a process known as neomorphism.

Sandstones may include layers or concretions of carbonate cement, which is often formed from biogenic carbonate, notably from aragonite-containing organisms. At higher depths, siliceous animals made of opal, such as diatoms and siliceous sponges, may be a significant source of the tiny quartz coatings on quartz grains. The supply of carbonate on the seabed, especially in deeper seas, was greatly augmented by the emergence of pelagic planktonic calcareous animals throughout the Mesozoic. Before then, benthic species limited to shallow water facies created the majority of the carbonate. Due to the "rain" of calcareous algae, foraminifera, and other planktonic creatures settling on the bottom, Upper Jurassic and younger sandstones often include a lot of calcite cement. Organisms that produce silica may also be crucial for diagenesis and reservoir quality at higher burial. Amorphous silica, which makes up organisms like siliceous sponges, will disintegrate at higher temperatures and be replaced with opal CT and quartz. Diatoms and radiolarians may potentially be a significant source of quartz-precipitating silica. Diatoms first arose in the Cretaceous and were a significant source of amorphous silica throughout the Cainozoic. The Tertiary Monterey Fm of California, which serves as both a source rock and a fractured reservoir rock, was created by diatoms and is entirely composed of silica. In most situations, the primary source of calcite cement is biogenic carbonate. As a result, the distribution of this cement must be related to sedimentary facies, more especially to the biological productivity in relation to the pace of clastic sedimentation. Environments with modest rates of clastic sedimentation, especially undersea highs, can produce a lot of organic carbonate.

Earth's surface and subsurface habitats are significantly shaped by processes including meteoric water flow and mineral dissolution. The passage of meteoric water through the Earth's crust has the potential to dissolve minerals. This term refers to precipitation in the form of rain or snow. As meteoric water seeps into the earth, it interacts with the surfaces of minerals as it passes through rocks and soil. Minerals dissolve when water molecules come into touch with their surfaces and undergo a chemical reaction, releasing ions into the water. This process is more noticeable in rocks that contain soluble minerals, such as halite, gypsum, and limestone.

Several variables may affect how minerals dissolve:

Water Chemistry:

Mineral dissolution is influenced by meteoric water's chemical composition, which includes pH, temperature, and the presence of dissolved gases and organic molecules. Mineral dissolution rates may be accelerated by water that is acidic or has a high concentration of dissolved carbon dioxide, particularly for carbonate minerals.

Mineralogy:

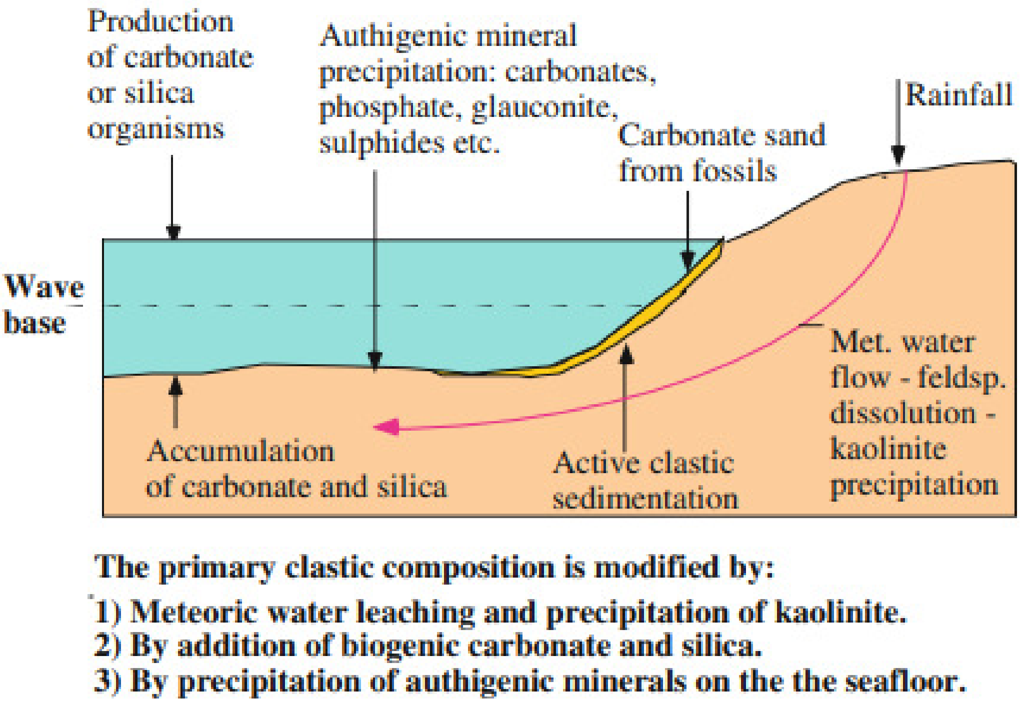
The ability of a rock or mineral to dissolve in meteoric water depends on the mineral makeup of the substance. When compared to minerals with low solubility, such as quartz ($SiO2$), minerals with high solubility, such as calcite ($CaCO3$), are more likely to dissolve.

Reactive Surface Sites and Surface Area:

Dissolution rates are influenced by the mineral's surface area and the presence of reactive surface sites. Rough surfaces on rocks or minerals with fine grains increase the surface area in contact with water, accelerating disintegration.

Contact time and flow rate:

The amount of mineral dissolution depends on the pace at which meteoric water percolates through the rock and the length of contact with mineral surfaces. A greater amount of dissolution is possible with higher flow rates and longer contact durations. Diagenetic processes in shallow marine environments. Sandstones deposited in these environments will be flushed by meteoric water flow and/or from the delta top, causing dissolution of feldspar and mica. Calcareous fossils and early carbonate cement may be a very important addition to the composition of the sandstones. The occurrence of siliceous organisms such a sponges can strongly influence reservoir quality at depth(Figure 3).



The primary clastic composition is modified by:

1) Meteoric water leaching and precipitation of kaolinite.
2) By addition of biogenic carbonate and silica.
3) By precipitation of authigenic minerals on the the seafloor.

Figure 3: Diagenetic processes in shallow marine environments.

Geological consequences of minerals being dissolved by meteoric water include the following:

Karst Landscapes:

Meteoric water's ability to dissolve soluble rocks like limestone may result in the formation of unusual landforms in such areas. As a result, karst springs, sinkholes, caves, and subsurface drainage networks are created.

Groundwater Chemistry:

The chemical makeup of groundwater is influenced by the dissolving of minerals in meteoric water. The quality and make-up of groundwater resources may be affected by the dissolved ions that water might take up as it moves through the subsurface as a result of mineral breakdown.

Formation of Ore Deposits:

Mineral dissolution may result in the release of elements and ions into solution, which can subsequently be transported and precipitated in other locations, aiding in the creation of mineral deposits with high economic value.

The weathering processes that reduce rocks to tiny pieces depend on mineral breakdown by meteoric water. This has an impact on how quickly the landscape erodes, how much soil is formed, and more.

For the study of groundwater resources, landscape change, and the geochemical cycling of elements, it is essential to comprehend the function of meteoric water flow and mineral dissolution. It has real-world uses in geotechnical engineering, hydrology, environmental research, and the investigation of mineral resources.

Mechanical Compaction of Loose Sand

The process of compressing and densifying loose, unconsolidated sand grains under the influence of mechanical forces is referred to as mechanical compaction of loose sand. It is an important geotechnical phenomenon that may happen either naturally as a result of the weight of the sediment that lies above it or as a result of human activity like building and compaction efforts. Several factors result in the compaction of loose sand when it is exposed to external forcing, such as the weight of sediment or construction machinery[6], [7].

Grain Rearrangement:

The loose sand first undergoes grain rearrangement, in which individual grains move and settle into a denser packing pattern. By doing this, the vacuum area between grains is reduced and the sand's overall density is raised.

Grain Crushing:

The pressure between sand grains rises as the external loading goes on, which causes the fragmentation and crushing of individual grains. Sand is further compacted as a consequence of the cracked grains filling the vacuum areas.

Forces of Intergranular Contact:

The sand grains are forced to get closer to one another by increased pressure. As intergranular contact forces grow, they help to thwart further compression and encourage densification.

Water Evacuation:

Water between the sand grains may sometimes prevent compaction. Water is forced out of the pore spaces when the sand is loaded externally, improving particle contact and densification. The beginning void ratio, loading circumstances, grain size, grain shape, mineralogy, and initial void ratio all have an impact on the compaction process. Due to their smaller particle size and larger surface area, finer-grained sands often demonstrate better compaction potential. In comparison to well-rounded grains, angular or irregularly shaped grains have a tendency to interlock more efficiently, leading to increased compaction. In a number of disciplines, including construction, sedimentology, and geotechnical engineering, loose sand compaction has practical ramifications. Designing foundations, earthworks, and soil stabilisation methods in geotechnical engineering requires a knowledge of sand compaction behaviour. Compaction efforts are often used during construction operations to increase the stability and load-bearing capability of soil layers.

Mechanical compaction plays a role in the diagenesis of sedimentary rocks in sedimentology. Sandstone that has been compacted and cemented over time may be created from loose sand. The strength, permeability, and porosity of the resultant sedimentary rocks may all be impacted by the degree of mechanical compaction. Under external force, unconsolidated sand grains are compressed and become denser by mechanical compaction. It happens as a result of water evaporation, intergranular contact forces, grain crushing, and grain rearrangement. Sand compaction behaviour affects the characteristics of soils, foundations, and sedimentary rocks, hence understanding it is essential for geotechnical engineering, building, and sedimentological investigations [8].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, sandstones and their reservoirs are essential for the search for and extraction of hydrocarbons. These sedimentary rocks, which mostly consist of sand-sized grains, have characteristics that make them suitable for storing and transporting oil and natural gas. Porosity, permeability, and reservoir continuity are important properties that contribute to their significance in the energy sector. The term "porosity" describes the existence of empty spaces inside the rock that allow for the storage of hydrocarbons. Sandstones are useful for reservoirs because they often have greater porosity than other kinds of rock. The capacity of fluids to pass across interconnected pore spaces is known as permeability, which enables the efficient movement of hydrocarbons within the reservoir. Sandstones often have excellent permeability, which makes it easier to extract oil and gas.

An further crucial component of sandstone reservoirs is reservoir continuity. It alludes to the size and interconnectedness of the sandstone deposit, which allowed hydrocarbons to build up and move over a vast region. Sedimentation, tectonic activity, and subsequent modification all have an impact on reservoir continuity. Numerous methods, including seismic imaging, well drilling, and reservoir characterization, are used in the search for and extraction of hydrocarbons from sandstone reservoirs. Geoscientists and engineers may evaluate the reservoir's attributes, estimate its potential, and maximise hydrocarbon recovery using well logging, core analysis, and reservoir modelling. Beyond the energy sector, sandstone reservoirs have other uses. They contribute to the management of water resources by acting as significant aquifers for the storage and extraction of groundwater. Sandstones are suitable locations for subterranean fluid storage because of their porosity and permeability, notably for the storage of natural gas or carbon dioxide for carbon capture and storage (CCS). For effective and long-lasting resource utilisation, it is crucial to comprehend the geological properties and behaviour of sandstones and sandstone reservoirs. It necessitates multidisciplinary methods including reservoir engineering, petrophysics, and geology. Our knowledge of and ability to use these important geological formations is continually being improved by ongoing study and technological breakthroughs.

REFERENCES

[1] K. Bjørlykke and J. Jahren, “Sandstones and sandstone reservoirs,” in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_4.

[2] P. A. Hamza *et al.*, “Recruitment and Selection: The Relationship between Recruitment and Selection with Organizational Performance,” *Int. J. Eng. Bus. Manag.*, 2021, doi: 10.22161/ijebm.5.3.1.

[3] A. C. Monsees, B. Busch, and C. Hilgers, “Compaction control on diagenesis and reservoir quality development in red bed sandstones: a case study of Permian Rotliegend sandstones,” *Int. J. Earth Sci.*, 2021, doi: 10.1007/s00531-021-02036-6.

[4] A. Y. Lawan, R. H. Worden, J. E. P. Utley, and S. F. Crowley, “Sedimentological and diagenetic controls on the reservoir quality of marginal marine sandstones buried to moderate depths and temperatures: Brent Province, UK North Sea,” *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2021.104993.

[5] A. E. Radwan, “Modeling the Depositional Environment of the Sandstone Reservoir in the Middle Miocene Sidri Member, Badri Field, Gulf of Suez Basin, Egypt: Integration of Gamma-Ray Log Patterns and Petrographic Characteristics of Lithology,” *Nat. Resour. Res.*, 2021, doi: 10.1007/s11053-020-09757-6.

[6] Y. Liu *et al.*, “A reservoir quality evaluation approach for tight sandstone reservoirs based on the gray correlation algorithm: A case study of the Chang 6 layer in the W area of the as oilfield, Ordos Basin,” *Energy Explor. Exploit.*, 2021, doi: 10.1177/0144598721998510.

[7] J. Domra Kana, A. Diab Ahmad, D. H. Gouet, X. Djimhoudouel, and S. P. Koah Na Lebogo, “Sandstone reservoir characteristics of Rio Del Rey basin, Cameroon, using well-logging analysis,” *J. Pet. Explor. Prod.*, 2021, doi: 10.1007/s13202-021-01211-4.

[8] T. L. Baiyegunhi, K. Liu, O. Gwavava, and C. Baiyegunhi, “Impact of diagenesis on the reservoir properties of the cretaceous sandstones in the southern bredasdorp basin, offshore south africa,” *Minerals*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/min10090757.

CHAPTER 5

A BREIF DISCUSSION ON CARBONATE SEDIMENTS

Dr. Deepjyoti Mech, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - deepjyotimech@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Carbonate sediments are an important component of Earth's sedimentary record, representing a diverse range of depositional environments and geological processes. They are mostly made of calcium carbonate (CaCO3), which comes from corals, mollusks, and foraminifera as well as the shells, skeletons, and other parts of marine animals. Coral reefs, lagoons, and carbonate platforms are just a few of the places where carbonate deposits may occur. An overview of the traits, production, and importance of carbonate sediments is given in this abstract. It draws attention to the elements that affect their deposition, such as changes in temperature, water chemistry, and biological activity. The distinctive textures of carbonate deposits, including as mudstones, wackestones, packstones, grainstones, and rudstones, which represent varying degrees of carbonate particle size and sorting, are well recognised.

KEYWORDS:

Carbonate Deposits, Carbonate Minerals, Carbonate Sediments, Marine Ecosystems.

INTRODUCTION

A combination of biological, chemical, and physical factors affects the precipitation of calcium carbonate in carbonate deposits. The development of carbonate sediment depends heavily on the expansion and accumulation of carbonate-producing organisms like corals and algae. Additionally, with time, carbonate deposits change and transform due to chemical processes such carbon dioxide (CO2) degassing, carbonate dissolution, and re-precipitation. Understanding Earth's past and its climatic conditions depends greatly on carbonate sediments. They provide insightful information on paleoecology, paleoclimate, and the development of marine ecosystems. These sediments give rise to carbonate rocks like limestone and dolomite, which are crucial oil, gas, and groundwater reserves. Numerous analytical methods, including as petrography, geochemistry, and isotopic analysis, are used to examine carbonate deposits. These techniques aid in understanding the diagenetic history, post-depositional modifications, and depositional environment of carbonate deposits.

As a representation of the intricate interaction between biological, chemical, and physical processes, carbonate deposits are an important part of the Earth's sedimentary record. Understanding their creation, make up, and diagenetic changes offers important new perspectives on Earth's past, paleoenvironments, and underground resources. Our understanding of these deposits and their significance in influencing Earth's geologic and biological development continues to grow as a result of ongoing study in carbonate sedimentology. Calcite (CaCO3) and dolomite (CaMg(CO3)2) are two examples of carbonate minerals that are the main constituents of carbonate sediments, which are sedimentary deposits. These sediments are often found in maritime areas, where they build up and create a variety of carbonate rocks, such as dolostone, limestone, and chalk.

Several mechanisms lead to the formation of carbonate sediments:

Biogenic Precipitation:

Many carbonate deposits are produced as a result of marine organisms precipitating carbonate minerals. In order to construct their shells or skeletons, organisms including corals, foraminifera, mollusks, and algae take dissolved carbonate ions from saltwater. When these animals die, their remnants fall to the ocean bottom where they accumulate and aid in the production of carbonate deposit [1]–[3].

Chemical Precipitation:

Additionally, carbonate minerals may be created chemically when dissolved carbonate ions in water precipitate out and create sediment. Carbonate mineral precipitation may be caused by variables such changes in temperature, pressure, or the amount of dissolved carbon dioxide in the environment.

Physical Fragmentation:

Carbonate rocks may be mechanically broken up to create carbonate sediments. Existing carbonate deposits may be damaged by waves, currents, and other physical processes, producing carbonate particles that are subsequently transported and deposited as sediments.

Carbonate sediments contain unique traits and qualities, including:

Grain Composition:

Carbonate minerals like calcite and dolomite are the main components of carbonate deposits. The availability of various carbonate ions and the presence of other minerals in the sediment are two examples of variables that might affect the mineral composition.

Texture:

The textures of carbonate sediments may vary from fine-grained muds to coarse-grained sands. The energy of the depositional environment and the presence of additional sediments or creatures are two examples of elements that affect texture.

Fossils:

The fossilised remnants of marine creatures are often plentiful in carbonate deposits. Carbonate rocks contain fossils that can tell us a lot about ancient climates, ecosystems, and the evolution of life on Earth.

Both economically and geologically important are carbonate sediments and rocks:

Reservoir Rocks:

Hydrocarbons, such as oil and natural gas, may be stored and transmitted in carbonate reservoirs like limestone and dolomite. For the discovery and development of these precious resources, it is essential to comprehend the characteristics and behaviour of carbonate sediments.

Aquifers:

Important aquifers for storing and transferring groundwater may be made of carbonate rocks. They are advantageous for storing and extracting water because to their porosity and permeability characteristics.

Construction Materials:

Dimensional stones, aggregate for concrete, and road foundation are all common uses for carbonate sediments, notably limestone.

Paleoenvironmental Reconstructions:

Understanding historical settings, climatic conditions, and the development of marine ecosystems is possible via the study of carbonate deposits. Carbonate rocks include fossils and information that may be used to recreate Earth's past and better comprehend the processes that produced our planet. Marine habitats need carbonate deposits because they help produce carbonate rocks, which have profound geological, economic, and paleoenvironmental ramifications. For many scientific fields, resource exploration, and the construction industries, it is crucial to comprehend the processes of carbonate sediment production, the composition of the sediments, and the sediments' eventual metamorphosis into rocks [4]–[6].

DISCUSSION

Calcite (CaCO3) and dolomite (CaMg(CO3)2) are two examples of carbonate minerals that make up the majority of carbonate deposits, a particular form of sedimentary deposit. Different biological, chemical, and physical processes take place in freshwater and marine settings to generate these sediments. Carbonate sediments have a significant impact on the evolution of carbonate rocks and related geological characteristics throughout Earth's history. Carbonate particles generated by marine creatures like corals, shell-forming species (like mollusks), algae, and microbial communities are the main source of carbonate deposits. To create their shells, skeletons, and other structural components, these animals draw dissolved carbonate ions from the surrounding water. These bone pieces and other particles eventually fall on the ocean bottom or in shallow marine settings, where they create carbonate deposits.

Physical, chemical, and biological processes all play a part in the creation of carbonate deposits. When dissolved carbonate ions in water undergo chemical reactions, carbonate minerals are precipitated as a result. This may occur as a result of variations in the water's pH, temperature, pressure, or availability of certain ions. Particles of carbonate are transported and redistributed by physical processes including wave and current action, which causes their deposition in certain places. There are several different depositional conditions where carbonate deposits build up. They may be found in shallow marine settings where a lot of carbonate-producing creatures flourish, such coral reefs, lagoons, and tidal flats. In deeper marine environments, such as slopes and basins, carbonate deposits may also be deposited by procedures like gravity-driven sediment transport or through the settling of small carbonate particles [7], [8].

The environmental circumstances at the time of deposition, the kinds of carbonate-producing organisms present, and the water chemistry all affect the properties and content of carbonate deposits. The textures of carbonate sediments may vary widely, from fine-grained muck to coarse-grained sand. Additionally, they could include fossils and other sedimentary features that can tell us a lot about earlier conditions and the evolution of life on Earth. For many different types of research, an understanding of carbonate sediments is crucial. Carbonate deposits provide light on the history of carbonate platforms and reefs as well as paleoenvironments and paleoclimate. They are also commercially important as prospective supplies of groundwater, oil, and gas as well as as suppliers of construction materials like marble and limestone.

Geochemistry of Carbonate Minerals

Calcite ($CaCO3$) and dolomite ($CaMg(CO3)2$) are examples of carbonate minerals, and the study of their chemical make-up, isotopic fingerprints, and interactions is called geochemistry. Understanding the geochemistry of carbonate minerals may help us better understand a variety of geological processes, such as how carbonate rocks are formed, how paleoenvironments were once, and how carbonates interact with their surroundings. Key elements of the geochemistry of carbonate minerals include the following:

Mineral Composition:

Depending on the presence of impurities and the replacement of various elements within the crystal lattice, the chemical composition of carbonate minerals may change. Calcite, for instance, may include trace amounts of magnesium (Mg), iron (Fe), and manganese (Mn), all of which have an impact on the material's characteristics and behaviour.

Stable Isotopes:

Carbonate minerals' stable oxygen and carbon isotopes (13C and 18O, respectively) provide crucial details about historical environmental processes and circumstances. Temperature, salinity, and the isotopic makeup of the water from which they precipitate are all variables that affect the isotopic composition of carbonate minerals. Researchers may analyse climatic change, recreate paleoenvironments, and track the origins of carbon and oxygen in carbonate systems by examining stable isotopes.

Diagenesis and Recrystallization:

The term "diagenesis" describes the physical and chemical alterations that sedimentary rocks go through after being first deposited. Diagenetic processes that carbonate minerals may go through include recrystallization, cementation, and fluid modification. The initial mineral composition, isotopic fingerprints, and pore architectures of carbonate rocks may all be altered by these processes.

Dissolution and Precipitation:

Temperature, pressure, pH, and the presence of dissolved ions in water are some of the variables that affect how easily carbonate minerals dissolve and precipitate. For the study of karst landscapes, cave formation, and carbonate reservoir dissolution, it is crucial to comprehend these processes.

Carbonate Weathering and Carbon Cycling:

The global carbon cycle is significantly influenced by carbonate minerals. Carbon dioxide ($CO2$) is released into the atmosphere during the weathering of carbonate minerals, adding to the natural carbon flow. The chemistry of water is impacted by carbonate dissolution in water bodies, which also has an impact on pH and carbon dioxide levels.

Carbonate Sedimentation and Diagenesis:

The development and diagenesis of carbonate sediments are strongly related to the geochemistry of carbonate minerals. Information on the origins of carbonate sediments, depositional settings, and the mechanisms affecting sediment accumulation and preservation may be found in the composition and isotopic fingerprints of carbonate minerals.

Carbonate Reservoirs and Hydrocarbon Exploration:

For the discovery and extraction of hydrocarbons from carbonate reservoirs, the geochemistry of carbonate minerals is essential. Assessing reservoir quality, estimating fluid flow paths, and maximising hydrocarbon recovery are all made possible by having a thorough understanding of the diagenetic processes, porosity development, and fluid-rock interactions in carbonate systems. An interdisciplinary area that integrates elements of geology, chemistry, and isotope geochemistry is the geochemistry of carbonate minerals. It offers insightful information on the evolution of Earth, previous environmental circumstances, and carbonate behaviour in diverse geological systems. Our knowledge of carbonate minerals and their importance to Earth's systems is constantly expanding as a result of ongoing study in this area.

Carbonate – CO2 Systems in the Sea

The interactions between carbon dioxide (CO2) and carbonate minerals in the ocean are referred to as the carbonate-CO2 system. It has a significant impact on marine chemistry, biology, and the global carbon cycle by controlling the pH of seawater. The carbonate-CO2 system in the sea has the following important components:

Oceanic Uptake of Atmospheric CO2:

A sizable amount of human carbon emissions are absorbed by the ocean, which serves as a substantial sink for atmospheric CO2. Seawater interacts with CO2 to generate carbonic acid (H2CO3) when it dissolves in the liquid. This causes the concentration of hydrogen ions (H+) to rise, which causes the saltwater to become more acidic.

Carbonate Buffering:

A crucial part of the carbonate-CO2 system is the carbonate ion (CO32-). It is essential for balancing the pH of seawater. In saltwater, bicarbonate ions (HCO3-) are created when carbonate ions interact with hydrogen ions. This ability to act as a buffer aids in keeping the pH of the ocean within a manageable range.

Ocean Acidification:

Ocean acidification is a result of the rise in atmospheric CO2 levels brought on by human activity. The concentration of hydrogen ions (H+) rises in saltwater as more CO2 dissolves, which causes a drop in pH. Marine creatures that depend on carbonate minerals for the development of their shells and skeletons, such corals, mollusks, and certain phytoplankton, are severely affected by this acidification.

Calcium Carbonate Saturation State:

The saturation state of calcium carbonate (CaCO3) crystals in saltwater is likewise impacted by the carbonate-CO2 system. The equilibrium between the concentration of calcium and carbonate ions in saltwater and the solubility of calcium carbonate minerals is known as the saturation state. Calcium carbonate may precipitate and create mineral formations when the environment is saturated. Calcium carbonate may dissolve, nevertheless, in undersaturated circumstances.

Impacts on Marine Organisms:

The effects on marine species of changes in seawater chemistry brought on by ocean acidification and variations in the saturation state of calcium carbonate are considerable. The capacity of creatures to produce and maintain their shells and skeletons may be hampered by high CO2 levels and ocean acidification, which can have an impact on their growth, development, and overall survival. On marine ecosystems and the biodiversity they sustain, this may have a domino effect.

Carbonate Compensation Depth:

The depth in the ocean where the rate of carbonate dissolution and the rate of carbonate formation are equal is known as the carbonate compensation depth (CCD). The preservation and burial of carbonate sediments in the deep sea may be impacted by changes in the carbonate-CO2 system, which can change the depth of the CCD. For evaluating the effects of climate change and ocean acidification on marine ecosystems, it is essential to comprehend the carbonate-CO2 system in the sea. Ongoing studies are looking at how rising CO2 levels affect the chemistry of seawater, marine life, and the general health of marine ecosystems.

Solubility of carbonate ions in seawater as a function of pH is shown in Figure 1.

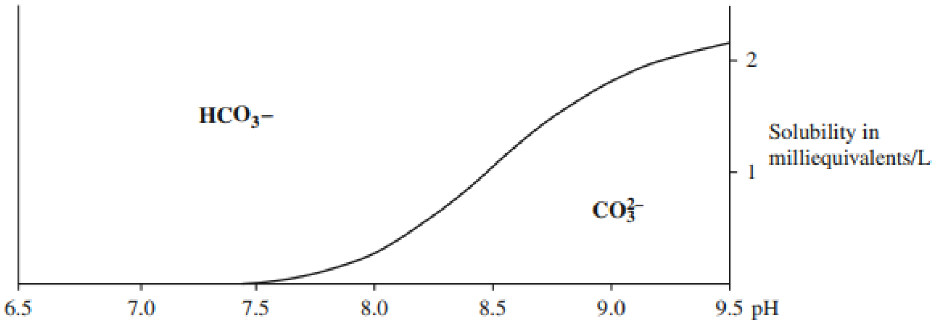


Figure 1: Solubility of carbonate ions in seawater as a function of pH

Skeletal Components

The remnants of the creatures that aid in the development of carbonate deposits are referred to as the skeletal elements of carbonate sediments. These skeletal elements contribute significantly to the deposition and preservation of carbonate deposits since they are predominantly made of calcium carbonate (CaCO3) minerals like calcite and aragonite. The following essential skeleton elements are often discovered in carbonate sediments:

Foraminifera:

Single-celled protists known as foraminifera have a test, which is a calcium carbonate shell. They are common in maritime habitats and may have a variety of morphologies, from simple to intricate. Size, form, and ornamentation of foraminifera testing may vary, and both recent and historic carbonate deposits often include them.

Mollusks:

Mollusks, such as gastropods (such as snails) and bivalves (such as clams and oysters), are often seen creatures that contribute to carbonate sediments. Depending on the species, their calcium carbonate shells may vary in size, shape, and decoration. In fossil records, mollusk shells are often well-preserved and provide important information about earlier ecosystems.

Corals:

Colonies of calcium carbonate skeletons are secreted by corals, which are marine creatures. They significantly contribute to the development of contemporary reef structures and the buildup of carbonate deposits in reef habitats. Coral skeletons may take the shape of complex branching, colossal, or plate-like formations and are a vital habitat for a wide variety of different creatures.

Algae:

Algae that contribute to carbonate deposits include coralline algae and calcareous green algae (like Halimeda). The calcified "thalli" produced by calcareous green algae aid in the sediment buildup process. Calcium carbonate is secreted by coralline algae, aiding in the formation of reefs and the stabilisation of sediment.

Echinoderms:

The calcified skeletal components of echinoderms, such as sea urchins and starfish, may contribute to the formation of carbonate deposits. For instance, sea urchins have hard, interlocking calcite tests that are retained in older strata. Echinoderms are involved in bioturbation, or the mixing of sediments by living things.

Microbial Carbonates:

Microorganisms, such as bacteria and cyanobacteria, may have a big impact on how carbonate sediment is formed. Some cyanobacteria have the capacity to precipitate calcium carbonate straight from the water, resulting in the formation of stromatolites and microbial mats. These microbial carbonates may help retain microbial structures in the rock record and aid in the formation of sediment. These skeletal elements aid in the buildup of carbonate deposits in diverse marine settings, together with other carbonate-producing species. These sediments may eventually go through diagenetic processes including compaction, cementation, and lithification to produce carbonate rocks like limestone and dolomite [9].

Paleoecology, the development of marine ecosystems, and historical conditions may all be better understood by examining the skeletal components of carbonate deposits. It is possible to recreate past marine habitats and ecosystems by using fossilised skeletal remains preserved in carbonate rocks. The development of animals that precipitate carbonate skeletons has been crucial to the development of carbonate deposits and their characteristics. The diameter of the skeletal material varies greatly across species, from a few micrometres in coccolithophores to more than a metre in certain bivalves and sponges. Figure 2 displays the distribution and taxonomic diversity of the main classes of skeletal organisms. However, we have restricted the descriptions in this textbook to those groupings that are most often found in carbonate hydrocarbon reserves.

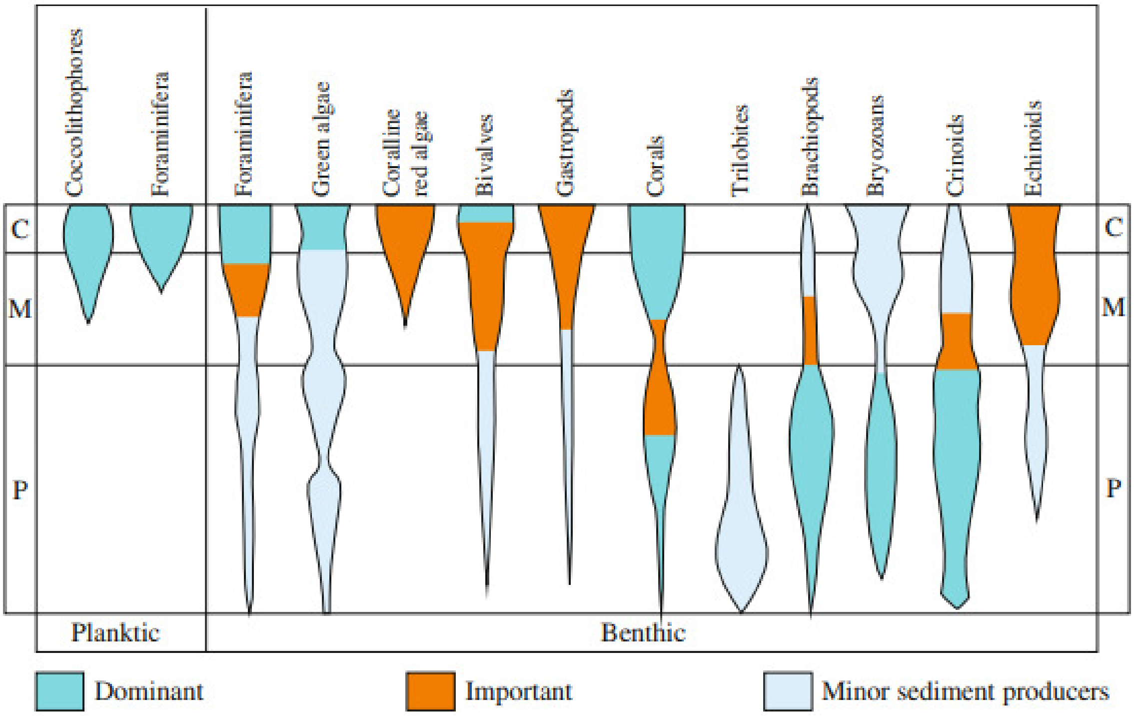


Figure 2: Diversity, abundance and relative importance of various calcareous marine organisms as sediment producers. P = Palaeozoic; M = Mesozoic; C = Cenozoic (modified after Wilkinson 1979)

The absence of terrigenous sediments like sand or clay, which would otherwise contaminate the carbonate content, is the first need for producing reasonably pure carbonate deposits. Because they remove nutrients from the ocean, many of the species that secrete carbonate need pure water. Mud kills corals and other creatures, drastically limiting carbonate synthesis. This significantly reduces the likelihood of carbonate sediments in sedimentary basins.

Stromatolites

"Stromatolite" refers to lamination in carbonate rocks brought on by carbonate buildup or precipitation as a consequence of algae development. Stromatolites fall under the category of both sedimentary structures and fossils. They are made up of cyanobacteria, often known as blue-green algae, which develop as unicellular filaments or coccooids, which are microscopic in size. Within a mucilaginous sheath that is sticky, the filaments are found in rows or strands. A biochemically precipitated skeleton, generally tubiform, is only produced by a few number of types. On the sediment surface, more cyanobacteria may produce organic coatings that capture and bind lime mud to create uneven laminae. A layered structure of alternating bright, sediment-rich laminae and dark, organic-rich laminae is created by rhythmic changes in algal filament development (Figure 3). Parallel lamination that follows algal mats, more intricate algal growth structures (stromatolites), or concentric structures (oncoids) are the outcomes. However, sometimes there aren't any algal remnants to be discovered, in which case the rock's lamination serves as the sole proof [10], [11].

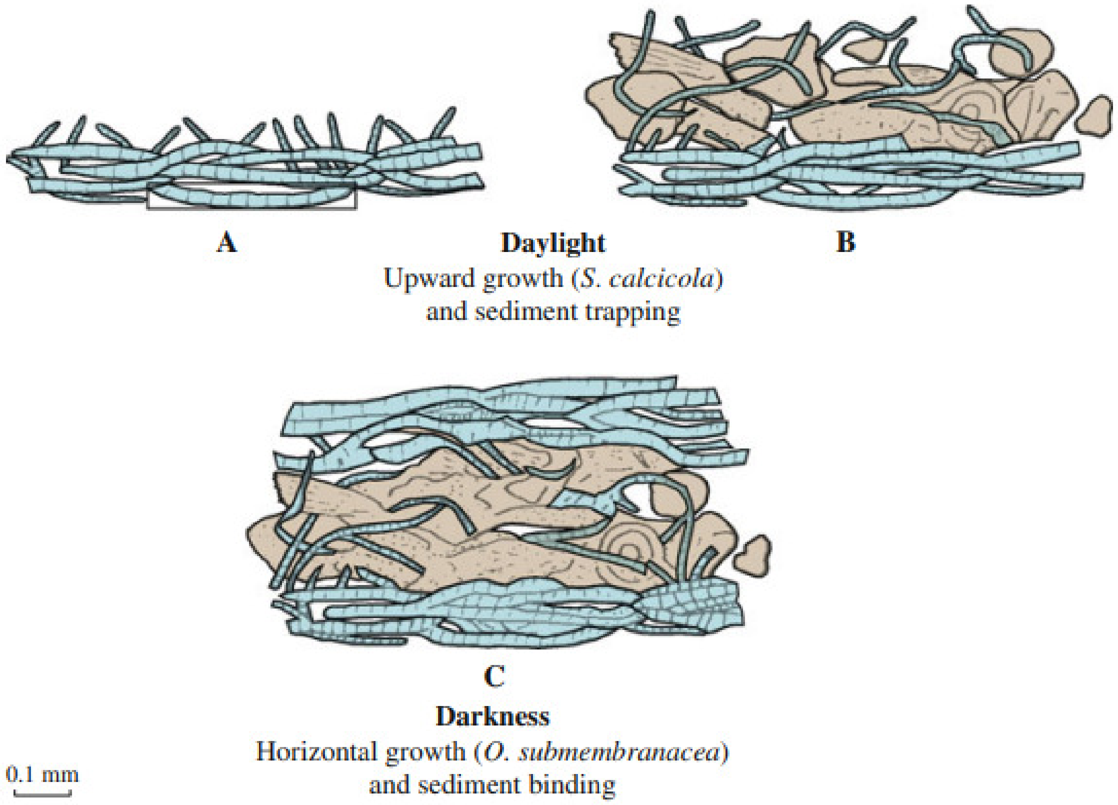


Figure 3: Diagrammatic representation of the day-night accretion in stromatolites. (a) and (b) During daytime the cyanobacteria trap and bind sediment and proceed to grow up and around the sediment grains. (c) A sticky surface that traps and binds the next sediment layer is produced during the night (modified from Gebelein 1969)

Algal laminated sediments are the term used for laminae that are flat-lying; however, stromatolites are used for laminae that create structures with vertical relief. The several general morphologies of stromatolites include:

1. Laterally linked hemispheroids
2. Discrete, vertically stacked hemispheroids
3. Discrete hemispheroids

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, calcium carbonate minerals lithified in freshwater and marine settings to produce carbonate deposits, which are significant parts of Earth's geological past. Foraminifera, mollusks, coral, algae, echinoderms, and microbial communities are among the creatures whose skeletal remains make up the majority of these deposits.

Physical transport and deposition, chemical precipitation, and biological production are the mechanisms that contribute to the development of carbonate deposits. Paleoecology, the development of marine ecosystems, and previous conditions are all well-understood through studying carbonate deposits. Carbonate rocks that contain fossilised skeletal remains act as archives of Earth's past, enabling researchers to rebuild historical marine habitats, spot sea level fluctuations, and comprehend the richness of former ecosystems.

Since carbonate minerals function as both carbon sources and sinks, the geochemistry of carbonate sediments is vital to the global carbon cycle. Understanding stable isotopes, dissolution-precipitation dynamics, and diagenetic processes in carbonate deposits might help us learn more about previous climatic conditions, carbon cycling, and the ability of carbonate rocks to be preserved.

Additionally, carbonate sediments are very important economically. They are sources of precious materials like marble and limestone that are utilised in building and industry, as well as reservoirs for oil, gas, and groundwater.

The species that contribute to the creation of carbonate deposits are, however, susceptible to environmental changes, notably ocean acidification brought on by elevated atmospheric CO2 levels. Changes in the chemistry and pH of seawater may affect the growth, development, and survival of creatures that produce carbonate, thereby causing changes in marine ecosystems and the loss of significant habitats like coral reefs.

REFERENCES

[1] A. J. Andersson, “A fundamental paradigm for coral reef carbonate sediment dissolution,” *Front. Mar. Sci.*, 2015, doi: 10.3389/fmars.2015.00052.

[2] J. A. Higgins *et al.*, “Mineralogy, early marine diagenesis, and the chemistry of shallow-water carbonate sediments,” *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.gca.2017.09.046.

[3] A. S. C. Ahm, C. J. Bjerrum, C. L. Blättler, P. K. Swart, and J. A. Higgins, “Quantifying early marine diagenesis in shallow-water carbonate sediments,” *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.gca.2018.02.042.

[4] E. Seibold, “Carbonate sediments and their diagenesis,” *Geoforum*, 1973, doi: 10.1016/0016-7185(73)90072-9.

[5] Z. Jiang *et al.*, “Contrasting root length, nutrient content and carbon sequestration of seagrass growing in offshore carbonate and onshore terrigenous sediments in the South China Sea,” *Sci. Total Environ.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.scitotenv.2019.01.175.

[6] E. Bura-Nakić, I. Sondi, N. Mikac, and M. B. Andersen, “Investigating the molybdenum and uranium redox proxies in a modern shallow anoxic carbonate rich marine sediment setting of the Malo Jezero (Mljet Lakes, Adriatic Sea),” *Chem. Geol.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.chemgeo.2019.119441.

[7] K. B. Sørensen, B. Glazer, A. Hannides, and E. Gaidos, “Spatial structure of the microbial community in sandy carbonate sediment,” *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 2007, doi: 10.3354/meps06996.

[8] M. L. Calleja, N. Marbà, and C. M. Duarte, “The relationship between seagrass (Posidonia oceanica) decline and sulfide porewater concentration in carbonate sediments,” *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.*, 2007, doi: 10.1016/j.ecss.2007.02.016.

[9] M. Holmer, C. M. Duarte, and N. Marbá, "Sulfur cycling and seagrass (Posidonia oceanica) status in carbonate sediments," *Biogeochemistry*, 2003, doi: 10.1023/B:BIOG.0000005326.35071.51.

[10] S. Tynan and B. N. Opdyke, "Effects of lower surface ocean pH upon the stability of shallow water carbonate sediments," *Sci. Total Environ.*, 2011, doi: 10.1016/j.scitotenv.2010.12.007.

[11] C. T. Perry, M. A. Salter, K. M. Morgan, and A. R. Harborne, "Census estimates of algal and epiphytic carbonate production highlight tropical seagrass meadows as sediment production hotspots," *Front. Mar. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.3389/fmars.2019.00120.

CHAPTER 6

SHALES, SILICA DEPOSITS AND EVAPORITES

Mr. Kalpajit Hazarika, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - kalpajithazarika@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Sedimentary formations including shale, silica deposits, and evaporites are rich sources of knowledge about the climate, geological processes, and ecosystems that formerly existed on Earth. Clay and silt-sized granules make up the fine-grained sedimentary rocks known as shale. They are widely distributed and provide information on tectonic activity, organic matter preservation, depositional conditions, and ancient marine and terrestrial ecosystems. Shales contain considerable deposits of natural gas and oil and are key hydrocarbon source rocks.Silica deposits, like chert and flint, are mostly made of silica (SiO2) and often have textures that are fine-grained, microcrystalline, or cryptocrystalline. There are many different causes for silica deposits, including biogenic (like diatoms and radiolarians) and chemical (like hot springs and hydrothermal fluids) processes. These deposits have significant industrial uses, such as serving as a filtering medium, a raw material for the manufacture of glass, and semiconductors.

KEYWORDS:

Clay Minerals, Evaporte Deposits, Evaporate Minerals, Mudrocks Shales.

INTRODUCTION

Evaporites are sedimentary rocks that often occur in arid or semi-arid climates when minerals from evaporating water bodies precipitate. Gypsum, anhydrite, and halite are typical evaporite minerals. Evaporites are important economic resources having uses in sectors including chemical production, building materials, and agriculture. They also provide as evidence of old salty conditions. Understanding the creation, make-up, and properties of shales, silica deposits, and evaporites is essential for deciphering previous geological events and understanding Earth's history. These sedimentary formations include information on the development of life, paleoenvironments, climatic change, and the production of mineral resources. They also serve as sources of energy, raw materials, and reservoirs for subsurface storage, which gives them practical value. Three separate kinds of sedimentary rocks with various compositions and formation processes include shale, silica deposits, and evaporites. Here is a description of each:

Shales:

Shales are sedimentary rocks with tiny grained grains that are predominantly made of clay minerals including illite, kaolinite, and montmorillonite as well as different quantities of silt and organic material. Shales are created when sediments rich in clay are compacted and cemented over an extended period of time. They often occur in serene depositional settings like lake bottoms and deep sea basins. Shales are crucial for storing oil and gas and serving as the source rock for hydrocarbon reservoirs because of their limited permeability [1]–[3].

Silica Deposits:

Silicon dioxide (SiO2), most often found in the form of quartz, makes up the majority of silica deposits, sometimes referred to as siliceous sediments. Both biogenic and non-biogenic deposits may form. Microscopic creatures, such diatoms and radiolarians, collect silica from the water to build sophisticated skeletal systems, which lead to the formation of biogenic silica deposits. Chemical precipitation or a buildup of wind-borne silicate particles may produce non-biogenic silica deposits. Lakes, deep ocean regions, and coastal regions are just a few of the habitats where silica deposits may be found.

Evaporites:

When water bodies evaporate and leave behind dissolved minerals, evaporites occur, which are sedimentary rocks. Evaporite minerals are most often found as halite (rock salt), gypsum, and anhydrite. Salt flats, playas, and coastal lagoons are a few examples of areas with little water circulation that tend to produce evaporites. Evaporation causes the concentration of dissolved salts to rise over their solubility limits, which leads to the precipitation of evaporite minerals. Economically significant evaporite deposits are sources of potash for fertiliser manufacturing, gypsum for building materials, and salt.

These many kinds of sedimentary rocks provide crucial information about Earth's geological past and earlier climatic conditions. They represent the distinct depositional settings in which they were produced by having various mineral compositions, textures, and formation processes. Geologists can understand ancient sedimentary sequences, recreate paleoenvironments, and locate important mineral resources by comprehending the properties and formation processes of shales, silica deposits, and evaporites.

DISCUSSION

Mudrocks and Shales

Shales and mudrocks are two kinds of sedimentary rocks that are linked and have a similar makeup and methods of creation. Shales, a subset of mudrocks, are described here in general terms:Fine-grained sedimentary rocks known as mudrocks are predominantly made up of organic material, silt-sized particles, and clay minerals. They may appear in a range of colours, including grey, green, brown, and black, and have a texture that is similar to mud. Clay minerals like illite, kaolinite, and montmorillonite, which give mudrocks their cohesive and plastic qualities when wet, are often found in large concentrations. Mudrocks serve as a crucial sealing layer for hydrocarbon reservoirs because of their fine-grained structure, low permeability, and characteristic impermeability to fluids [4]–[6].

Shales, a particular kind of mudrock, are distinguished by their fissility, or propensity to break into thin layers or laminae. In addition to various levels of silt and organic material, shale rocks are highly laminated rocks with a clay mineral composition at their core. The alignment of clay minerals during deposition and compaction produces the laminations in shales, which are often apparent to the unaided eye. Shales may exist in a variety of colours, including grey, black, and brown, but often have an uninteresting or earthy look.

Shale and mudrock formation: Shales and mudrocks both develop in low-energy depositional settings such deep sea basins, floodplains, and lakes. In still water, fine-grained sediments like clay and silt settle out of suspension and build up over time. Mudrocks rich in organic material are formed as a result of the deposition of organic materials, including dead plants and marine invertebrates.

Mudrocks are further transformed into shales by the process of diagenesis, which involves physical and chemical changes that take place during burial, compaction, and lithification. Increased density results from the compression of sediment layers, which squeezes out water and limits pore spaces. It is also possible for minerals like calcite or silica to cement the particles together, strengthening the rock as a result.

Importance of Mudrocks and Shales:

Shales and mudrocks are of great geological significance. They act as source rocks because they contain organic material, which when matured and converted into hydrocarbons, produces oil and gas. Shales also serve as seal rocks, keeping hydrocarbons from reservoirs from migrating higher. Mudrocks and shales also provide a plethora of knowledge on previous ecosystems, climatic circumstances, and the development of life on Earth. Mudrocks and shales, in particular shale formations like shale gas and shale oil reservoirs, have attracted a lot of interest in recent years owing to their potential as unconventional energy sources. Hydrocarbons may now be extracted from these dense rock formations using sophisticated drilling and extraction methods like hydraulic fracturing (fracking). The main constituents of mudrocks and shales, which are fine-grained sedimentary rocks, include clay minerals, silt, and organic matter. Mudrocks, of which shale is a subgroup, are characterised by their fissility. As seals, archives, and source rocks, these rocks are very important. Mudrocks and shales have significant effects on our knowledge of the Earth's geological history, energy resources, and environmental concerns.

Supply of Clay Minerals to Sedimentary Basins

Smectite and illite are more common in deserts because there is less flow of fresh (meteoric) groundwater, while kaolinite is generated by weathering in humid climates. Chlorite is mostly created when metamorphic rocks erode in cold, temperate areas where weathering is sluggish. Chlorite will degrade in wetter and warmer temperatures, however it may be found next to basalts and other basic volcanic rocks, especially in the sea, where it is more stable. Smectite may form from volcanic ash that contains glass and erratic volcanic mineral assemblages, both on land and under the sea. Phillipsite-type zeolites are frequent in sediments from the deep sea.

Nearly all varieties of clay minerals may be created through the erosion of earlier mudrocks and shales. Sedimentary, metamorphic, or igneous rocks are basically mechanically crushed down to form glacial clays. Their chemical makeup is almost identical to that of the eroded rocks due to the little chemical weathering. The majority of the quartz and feldspar are conserved throughout the formation of chlorite and illite from the dissolution of mica and metamorphic chlorite. Such clays may be seen collecting in front of contemporary glaciers that end in lakes or the sea. The thick glaciomarine clays that were deposited in the fjords after the continental ice sheet left Scandinavia 10,000–9,000 years ago eventually transformed into valleys due to postglacial isostatic uplift.

When clay is carried by rivers into lakes, it stays suspended for a while before being deposited as extremely finely laminated clayey deposits. Compared to marine habitats, lakes often have less bioturbation that may break down the lamination. When opposed to the majority of marine sediments, freshwater sediments tend to be thinly laminated.

Clay from rivers is not carried very far offshore, and satellite images show that the delta front is not very far from clear water (Figure 1). When clay minerals are exposed to saltwater, the salt component of the water causes the clay particles to flocculate, hastening their descent to the river mouth's bottom. This is due to the negative charge on clay minerals, which prevents them from adhering to one another in freshwater[7]–[9] .

Figure 1: Satellite photograph showing the distribution of clay outside the Mississippi delta. The limited extent of the delta mud is due to flocculation of the clay particles when freshwater is mixed with ocean water.

Silica Deposits

Geological formations known as silica (SiO2) deposits are predominantly made of silicon dioxide, also known as silica. One of the most prevalent minerals on Earth, silica may be found in many different deposits and forms. An overview of silica deposits is given below:

Types of Silica Deposits:

Quartz Veins:

One of the most typical forms of silica deposits is quartz veining. They originate from the precipitation of quartz crystals by silica-rich fluids that travel along rock faults or fractures, often as a result of hydrothermal processes. Quartz veins are frequently found in a variety of rock types and may vary in size from tiny veinlets to substantial mineralized structures.

Chert:

In sedimentary rocks, chert, a microcrystalline type of silica, often appears as nodules or layers. In situations like deep-sea sedimentation, hot springs, or geothermal locations, it occurs from the precipitation of silica from saltwater or groundwater. Chert is distinguished by its hardness and conchoidal fracture and may be found in a variety of colours, including white, grey, black, and red.

Siliceous Sinter:

When hot, silica-rich fluids rise to the surface in geothermal settings, siliceous sinter, also known as geyser or hot spring deposits, occurs. As the water cools and loses its capacity to keep the silica in solution, it begins to precipitate, forming these deposits. Terraces, mounds, and fluted columns are just a few of the unusual and complex structures that siliceous sinter often creates.

Diatomaceous Earth:

Diatoms are tiny algae with silica shells known as frustules, and diatomaceous earth is a deposit made of their leftovers. Diatomaceous earth is created when silica frustules left behind from dead diatoms collect over time at the bottom of bodies of water. This deposit often possesses light-colored, soft, and friable characteristics. It may be used in industry for filtration, absorbents, and pesticides.

Radiolarian Cherts:

The buildup of radiolarian tests, which are complex silica structures created by the single-celled sea creatures known as radiolarians, results in radiolarian cherts. These deposits are distinguished by their very well-preserved radiolarian fossils and often occur in deep-sea habitats.

Importance of Silica Deposits:

Deposits of silica are very important for industry and commerce. The most prevalent silica mineral, quartz, is used in a wide range of fields, including the production of glass, ceramics, electronics, and building materials. Silica is a useful material in many applications due to its excellent hardness, heat resistance, and electrical characteristics.

Diatomaceous earth also has a variety of industrial applications, including filtration, insulation, and abrasive goods. Through the study of radiolarian and chert formations, silica deposits also aid in the preservation of fossils and provide light on paleoclimate and ancient marine habitats.

Quartz veins, chert, siliceous sinter, diatomaceous earth, and radiolarian cherts are only a few examples of the silica deposits, which are important geological formations predominantly made of silicon dioxide. These deposits come from a variety of sources and are commercially significant across several sectors. They provide important knowledge about the geological past of the planet, prehistoric habitats, and the preservation of creatures in their fossil records.

Large amounts of organic material may be released without oxidation because saltwater is undersaturated in silica, which causes diatoms to disintegrate. Thus, a substantial portion of the total organic matter collected is organic matter created by diatom solution. As plankton descend through the water column, they break down, releasing phosphates, nitrogen, and other trace metals.

When water wells up to the photic zone, these recycled nutrients may once again serve as the foundation for organic production (Figure 2). Additionally, the upwelling currents stop the supply of clastic sediments from the land, allowing for the deposition of practically pure silica.

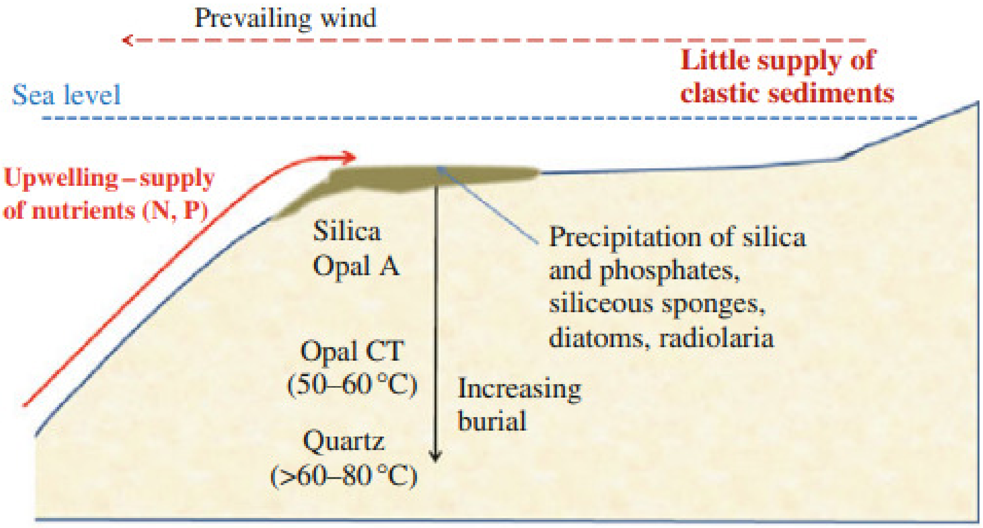


Figure 2: Upwelling of water rich in nutrients causes biological precipitation of silica and phosphates. The silica deposits (opal A) will, when buried, be altered to opal CT and then to quartz

Opal A will break down into opal CT, which may have crystals with blades that create lepispheres, which are tiny spheres. Cristobalite and tridymite are minerals that arise because precipitating quartz requires more energy (temperature). Although quartz is thermodynamically more stable than these minerals, which are stable at temperatures between 1,000 and 1,500 °C, they precipitate out instead of quartz at low temperatures. Opal CT is the name of this phase; porcellanite is another name for it. When exposed to higher temperatures, opal CT will gradually disintegrate and the silica will precipitate as quartz.

Evaporites

Evaporites are minerals that have crystallised as a result of water evaporation. This may occur in a variety of ways:

1. Seawater evaporation in marine basins that are entirely or partially blocked off.
2. In lakes with a high rate of evaporation and little or no outflow.
3. By the seasonal precipitation that accumulates in topographical depressions with no exits (playas) evaporating.
4. In soil profiles or sand-filled sediments from groundwater evaporation.
5. In Polar Regions, evaporite minerals like gypsum may precipitate as a result of ice sublimation and saltwater freezing to ice, which both raise the salt content of seawater.
6. Through the salts from previous evaporite deposits being dissolved and precipitated.

Although the majority of evaporite deposits (salt) originate in the climatically dry zones approximately 20 to 30 degrees from the equator, the creation of evaporites is not a clear sign of a high temperature. A variety of salt minerals found in evaporites are too soluble to precipitate in typical marine or continental conditions.

The most important are: Chlorides, Sulphates, Alkaline carbonates, Ca-Mg carbonates, Borates, Nitrates Silica deposits, Iron deposits.

Marine Evaporite Environments

Marine evaporite habitats are unique areas of the ocean where dissolved salt concentrations are higher than their solubility thresholds owing to evaporation, causing the precipitation and deposition of evaporite minerals. These habitats are often found in regions with high rates of evaporation, dry or semi-arid temperatures, and constrained water circulation. Several typical marine evaporite ecosystems are listed below:

Saline Lakes:

Saline lakes are inland water bodies with a high rate of evaporation but no outlet. The dissolved salts, such as sodium chloride (halite), calcium sulphate (gypsum), and magnesium sulphate (epsomite), become increasingly concentrated and precipitate, producing evaporite deposits on the lake's edges and bottom as the water evaporates from these bodies of water.

Sabkhas:

In dry or semi-arid areas, salt flats called sabbkhas may occur on the coast or inland. A shallow water table and recurring saltwater floods define these settings. Gypsum, halite, and calcite are examples of evaporite minerals that are deposited when saltwater infiltrates and evaporates, creating layers of evaporites inside the sediments.

Coastal Lagoons:

Lagoons along the coast are small, partly contained bodies of water that are isolated from the ocean by reefs, sandbars, and barrier islands. These lagoons' limited water exchange and high rates of evaporation encourage the precipitation of evaporite minerals. Gypsum, halite, and carbonate minerals like aragonite and calcite are examples of common evaporites discovered in coastal lagoons.

Mangrove Swamps:

Mangrove swamps are coastal wetlands distinguished by their abundant salt-tolerant mangrove tree flora. These areas often feature significant rates of evaporation and poor water circulation. Gypsum and halite are evaporite minerals that occur in the sediments as a result of organic matter buildup and saltwater evaporation [10], [11].

Saline Seepage Zones:

Salty seepage zones are found when salty water is released or seeps through the earth along coasts or in coastal groundwater systems. High levels of dissolved salts are often present in these zones, where they may precipitate as evaporite minerals when the water evaporates. Gypsum, halite, and carbonate minerals are often found in salt seepage zones.

Because they may contain large concentrations of evaporite minerals, which have a variety of industrial applications, marine evaporite habitats are commercially important. Salt, gypsum, potash, and lithium are all rich commodities that may be found in evaporite deposits.Stability of salt minerals as a function of progressive evaporation of seawater and temperature(Figure 3).

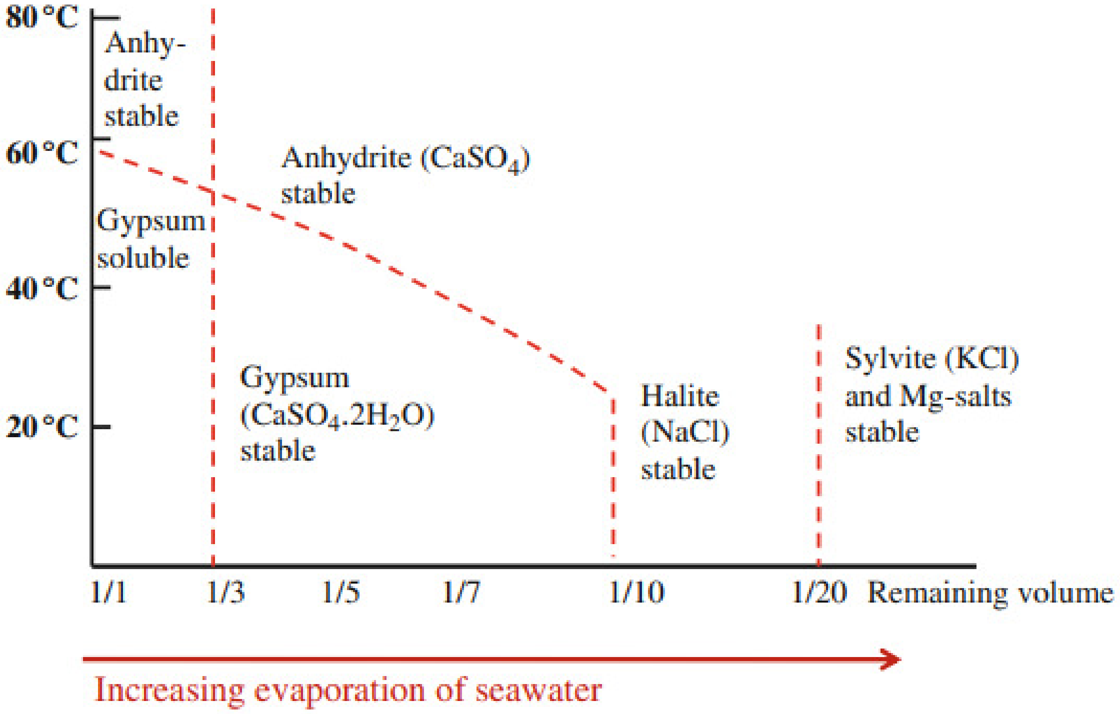


Figure 3: Stability of salt minerals as a function of progressive evaporation of seawater and temperature.

As a result of high evaporation rates and constrained water circulation, marine evaporite ecosystems are particular settings found in oceanic and coastal areas where evaporite minerals precipitate and collect. These settings, which include saline lakes, sabkhas, coastal lagoons, mangrove swamps, and saline seepage zones, are critical in the development of commercially lucrative evaporite deposits and provide important insights into previous climatic conditions.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, diverse kinds of sedimentary rocks with distinctive properties and mechanisms of production include shales, silica deposits, and evaporites. Shales are fine-grained rocks that serve crucial roles as source rocks and sealants for hydrocarbon reservoirs. They are predominantly made of clay minerals. Silica deposits, which mostly consist of silicon dioxide and include quartz veins, chert, and siliceous sinter, have a variety of sources, including hydrothermal processes, biological activity, and geothermal conditions. These deposits offer a wide range of economic uses and provide light on prehistoric habitats and Earth's geological past. Halite, gypsum, and carbonate minerals are examples of the minerals found in evaporites, which are composed of water that has evaporated in dry or semi-arid conditions. They are important commercially because they are suppliers of precious minerals like gypsum and salt. Evaporite deposits can provide important information on historical climatic conditions and sea-level changes. Our knowledge of Earth's geological development is aided by our understanding of the properties, formation processes, and economic significance of shales, silica deposits, and evaporites. This information also helps with resource exploration and offers insights into past habitats and climate dynamics.

REFERENCES

[1] K. Bjørlykke, "Mudrocks, shales, silica deposits and evaporites," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_6.

[2] J. M. Edmond, M. R. Palmer, C. I. Measures, E. T. Brown, and Y. Huh, "Fluvial geochemistry of the eastern slope of the northeastern Andes and its foredeep in the drainage of the Orinoco in Colombia and Venezuela," *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta*, 1996, doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(96)00142-1.

[3] R. P. Sheldon, "Association of phosphorites, organic-rich shales, chert and carbonate rocks," *Carbonates and Evaporites*, 1987, doi: 10.1007/BF03174301.

[4] R. R. Keays and P. C. Lightfoot, "Crustal sulfur is required to form magmatic Ni-Cu sulfide deposits: Evidence from chalcophile element signatures of Siberian and Deccan Trap basalts," *Miner. Depos.*, 2010, doi: 10.1007/s00126-009-0271-1.

[5] K. R. Mcclay and D. G. Carlile, "Mid-proterozoic sulphate evaporites at Mount Isa mine, Queensland, Australia [11]," *Nature*. 1978. doi: 10.1038/274240a0.

[6] E. K. Franseen, "Mississippian (Osagean) shallow-water, mid-latitude siliceous sponge spicule and heterozoan carbonate facies: An example from Kansas with implications for regional controls and distribution of potential reservoir facies," *Curr. Res. Earth Sci.*, 2006.

[7] R. N. Araujo, "Depósitos Lacustres Rasos da Formação Pedra de Fogo, Permiano da Bacia do Parnaíba, Brasil," *Dissertação*, 2015.

[8] K. Bjorlykke, "Shales, silica deposits and evaporites," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics*, 2010. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-02332-3_6.

[9] E. K. Franseen, "Mississippian (Osagean) Shallow-Water, Mid-Latitude Siliceous Sponge Spicule and Heterozoan Carbonate Facies," *Curr. Res. Earth Sci.*, 2006, doi: 10.17161/cres.v0i252.11790.

[10] L. A. Senior and R. A. Sloto, "Arsenic, Boron, and Fluoride Concentrations in Ground Water in and Near Diabase Intrusions, Newark Basin, Southeastern Pennsylvania," *USGS Sci. Investig. Rep.*, 2006.

[11] M. Meybeck, "Composition chimique des ruisseaux non pollués en France. Chemical composition of headwater streams in France," *Sci. Géologiques. Bull.*, 1986, doi: 10.3406/sgeol.1986.1719.

CHAPTER 7

A STUDY ON STRATIGRAPHY

Mr. Dileep Balaga, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - balagadileepkumar@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

A subfield of geology known as stratigraphy is responsible for analysing and studying the rock strata that make up the Earth's crust. It includes the theories and procedures used to comprehend the spatial and temporal interactions of sedimentary, volcanic, and metamorphic rocks, offering insightful information about the geological past of the Earth and the forces that have created our planet. An overview of the main features of stratigraphy, including its underlying theories, research techniques, and importance for comprehending Earth's prehistory, is given in this abstract. In stratigraphy, rock formations and their layering are analysed in order to learn vital details about the sequence of deposition, relative ages, and environmental circumstances at the time of formation.Lithostratigraphy, which focuses on the physical characteristics and relationships of rock units, biostratigraphy, which makes use of fossils to determine the relative ages of rock layers and correlate them across different regions, and chronostratigraphy, which uses absolute dating techniques to assign numerical ages to rock units, are some of the important topics covered in this abstract.

KEYWORDS:

Dating Techniques, Fossil Assemblages, Geological History, Geological Time.

INTRODUCTION

Additionally, the abstract emphasises how crucial stratigraphy is for comprehending geological processes including tectonic activity, sedimentation, climate change, and the development of life on Earth. A foundation for recreating former habitats, unravelling Earth's history, and locating possible natural resources is provided by stratigraphic investigations. Additionally, the abstract highlights how stratigraphy is multidisciplinary since it draws on ideas and methods from a variety of disciplines, including palaeontology, sedimentology, geophysics, and geochemistry. Remote sensing, isotope dating, and high-resolution imaging are only a few examples of the advanced technologies that have substantially improved our capacity to analyse and understand stratigraphic data [1]–[3].

Geology's discipline of stratigraphy focuses on the analysis of rock strata—layers of rock—and how they are arranged inside the Earth's crust. To comprehend the geologic history, chronology, and physical features of a certain region or area, it entails the investigation and interpretation of the vertical and lateral connections between various rock groups. Understanding the Earth's past and the forces that have formed it over millions of years may be done via the study of stratigraphy. Stratigraphers can reconstruct previous ecosystems, temperature changes, tectonic activity, and the history of life on Earth by studying the sequence, composition, and fossils found inside rock strata [4], [5].

The principles of superposition, original horizontality, lateral continuity, and faunal succession are important ideas in stratigraphy. According to the superposition principle, the oldest rocks are at the bottom and the youngest are at the top of a succession of sedimentary rocks that hasn't been disturbed. Original horizontality denotes the original horizontal or nearly horizontal deposition of sedimentary strata. Sedimentary strata are said to be continuous laterally up to the point when they thin out or run into a barrier. It is believed that fossils in rock strata appear in a predictable sequence called faunal succession, which enables relative dating and correlation of various geological units.

In many areas of geology, such as petroleum exploration, mining, environmental research, and palaeontology, stratigraphy is a crucial tool. It supports the mapping of geological dangers, the identification of possible hydrocarbon resources, the comprehension of groundwater systems, and the reconstruction of former habitats for paleontological study. Stratigraphers may create intricate geological maps and cross-sections by analysing the connections between various strata, offering a useful foundation for geological studies and resource evaluations. The study of rock strata and how they are distributed inside the Earth's crust is known as stratigraphy. It is essential for comprehending Earth's geological history, figuring out previous habitats, and connecting rock blocks across various areas. Geologists may better comprehend the dynamics of the Earth's present and future by utilising the ideas and tools of stratigraphy.

DISCUSSION

Stratigraphy is the study of how rock layers are arranged chronologically and in succession. Stratification may be found in igneous rocks, notably volcanic rocks, and in certain plutonic rocks in addition to sedimentary rocks. It is possible to determine age connections between beds by treating all bedded rocks stratigraphically. However, sedimentary studies is where the word "stratigraphy" is most often employed [6], [7]. Sedimentary successions are studied, divided, and documented in stratigraphy in order to explain the geological history they reflect. Correlating sedimentary strata from several locations is important in order to rebuild an environment or significant geological events on a regional or even global scale. Even if they are not precisely contemporaneous, it is crucial to determine which sedimentary units were formed at the same period or by the same or comparable sedimentological or biological processes. Correlation typically refers to what can be accomplished given the quantity and calibre of data at hand.

Although we often have no way of knowing for sure which layers were laid down at the same time, we make an effort to utilise all the data provided by the rocks. The following five categories best describe the information: (1) The composition of rocks and the structures they have as a consequence of sedimentary processes. (2) The presence of fossils, which are the product of biological, environmental, and ecological development throughout the course of geological time. (3) The presence of radioactive fission products in minerals or rocks that may be utilised to determine an object's age. (4) The strata's magnetic characteristics. (5) Sediment geochemical characteristics.

These correlation methods are so different that it has been found useful to work with three forms of stratigraphy which can be used in parallel:

1. **Lithostratigraphy**: Classification of sedimentary rock types on the basis of their composition, appearance and sedimentary structures.
2. **Biostratigraphy:** Classification of sedimentary rocks according to their fossil content.

3. **Chronostratigraphy:** Classification of rocks on the basis of geological time.

The division of geological time itself is known as geochronology.

The first two are thus founded on definable rock connections, which are sometimes referred to as rock stratigraphy. Although radiometric dating may be used, geological time is not unchanging. Depending on the half-life used to calculate radioactive decay, even this dating technique yields varying ages and is plagued by several additional error issues. Therefore, chronostratigraphy is a theoretical and ethereal word that refers to a temporal scale that is difficult for us to precisely quantify. On the other hand, rock stratigraphy begins with the rocks themselves and is based on boundaries that are thought to be potentially appropriate for correlation over bigger or smaller regions. Visit stratigraphy.org for the rules governing stratigraphic terminology. The many stratigraphic unit types are presented below in a hierarchical order.

Lithostratigraphy

The formation, which is characterised in a bedded sequence, is the basic lithostratigraphic unit. A formation's ability to be quickly identified in the field or a borehole owing to its lithology is a crucial characteristic. As a result, the formation is a mappable unit that may be seen on a regular geological map (such one scaled at 1:50,000) or acknowledged in a description of a bedded succession. Although there is in fact no upper limit to a formation's thickness, it often ranges from a few tens to several hundred metres. A naturally occurring formation would consist of a 50–300 m thick layer of sandstone that is covered and underlain by totally diverse rocks, such shale or limestone. A formation will seldom be homogenous, therefore breaking it up into smaller units will be helpful for more thorough mapping. For instance, portions of a sandstone formation with shale or conglomerate strata might be referred to as members of the formation.

The smallest unit in the lithostratigraphic classification is a bed that can be distinguished from the beds above and below and is believed to have been produced by a single depositional process without a pause in sedimentation. Beds are often reported as "units" when sections are logged. Laminae is the name for beds that are less than one centimetre thick, however this word just describes size. Laminae make up the majority of beds/units or may possibly constitute their whole composition. A lamina will only be given a name if it is separated between two markedly dissimilar layers, such as if it is a thin tephra (ash bed) or bentonite in a shale sequence.

It is practical to combine numerous forms into a single, bigger entity known as a group for certain reasons. A group may be broken into two or more subgroups and typically has three to six forms. A supergroup is the biggest lithostratigraphic unit and is made up of two or more groups. When a common term is required to cover a substantial sedimentary package, this unit is utilised. Formations and groups in sedimentary basins that are partially or completely submerged in the earth, like the North Sea basin, are identified using well records like well logs. Other names are also employed, such as historical names, animal names, etc., particularly offshore places where it is difficult to obtain adequate geographical names to identify the stratigraphic units.

Lithostratigraphic Terminology

An international standard lithostratigraphic nomenclature was needed as the study of sedimentary successions grew. As a result, a set of worldwide guidelines for identifying lithostratigraphic units was developed. Below is a summary of this:

1. It is preferable to identify a stratigraphic unit in relation to a type section (stratotype) found in a good exposure or a well where the unit is well represented.
2. If exposed on land, each stratigraphic unit has to be named after a specific geographic location, ideally one that is close to the type section. Although in the North Sea basin other names have also been employed, offshore stratigraphic units may be given names based on marine characteristics (for example, fishing banks).
3. No more than one stratigraphic unit should have the same name. Priority is given to the unit that is defined first.
4. Stratigraphic names may include both a name, such as one derived from a place, and a stratigraphic unit, such as Kimmeridge Formation or Kimmeridge Clay. Even though many stratigraphic names in the US do not fully adhere to the international standards for stratigraphic naming, they are nonetheless widely used.

Biostratigraphy

Sedimentary rocks' fossils serve as the foundation for biostratigraphy. Its duties include classifying strata into units based on the presence of fossils and using these units to correlate sedimentary successions. In conjunction with radiometric and other age dating techniques, biostratigraphy has made it feasible to correlate sedimentary rocks on a worldwide scale and serves as the basis for the global stratigraphic categorization of sedimentary successions. The use of fossils in biostratigraphy is based on the idea that biological evolution, in which some species disappeared and others emerged, occurred throughout the course of geological time. Because a certain species will only be present in sediments that were deposited during a specific time frame, it may be used to identify that time frame or a portion of it.

Nature of the Fossil Record:

a. Fields of Application

Microfossils are the primary focus of industrial biostratigraphy because they are often found in great quantities and are simple to extract from drill cuttings, sidewall cores, and standard cores. Numerous microfossil groupings have undergone fast development, making them useful tools in subsurface stratigraphic studies (Figure 1). Their applications include unconformity detection, characterization and correlation of seismic (depositional) sequences, fingerprinting of formations, reservoir zonation, and palaeoenvironmental modelling, in addition to the basic tasks of age determination and correlation. In petroleum exploration, these applications are essential because they have a big influence on evaluations of reservoir distribution, source rock evaluation, trap evaluation, reserve estimate, field development studies, and implications on drilling issues. In any subsurface study, the ability of microfossil samples to be evaluated quickly is also crucial.

b. Distribution of Microfossils

Almost all sedimentary rocks include microfossils, albeit their variety, quantity, and degree of preservation are quite diverse. Age, depositional environment, composition, and diagenetic history of the sediments all have a significant impact on these characteristics. Marine mudstones, marls, and limestones often contain an especially rich and diverse microfossil content (Figure 2). Due to the fact that the majority of microfossils are lighter and smaller than typical sand grains, well-sorted sandstones often contain less microfossil material. Because most of the ancient creatures with primary calcite were dissolved during dolomitization or because the beds resemble an evaporite habitat, dolomites are likewise deficient in microfossils. Terrestrial microfossils (such as spores and pollen) are abundant in coals and associated organic deposits. Small numbers of microfossils, mostly of terrestrial origin, are present in evaporites.

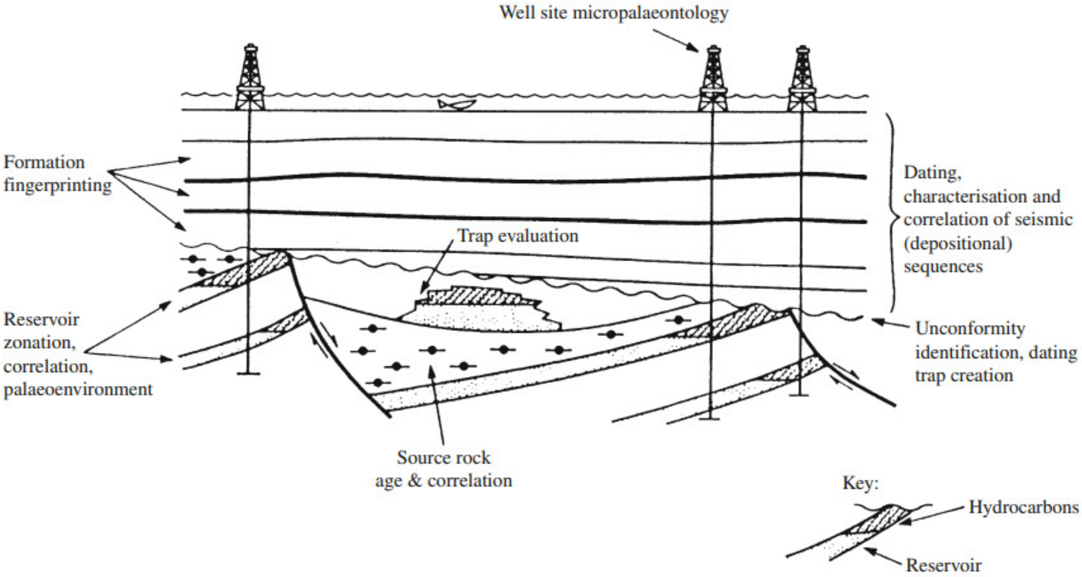


Figure 1: Application fields of micropalaeontological methods in petroleum exploration and appraisal activities

Microfossils Rocks	Spores, pollen	Dinoflagellates	Acritarchs	Foraminifera	Conodonts	Ostracods	Prasynophyceans	Calpionellids	Chitinozoans	Botryococcaceans	Coccolithophores	Radiolarians	Silicoflagellates	Diatoms
Clays and shales	●	●	●	●	⧗	●	⧗	⧗	●	⊗	●	●	⊗	⊗
Limestones and marls	⧗	⧗	⧗	●	●	●	⊗	●	⧗		●	⊗	⊗	
Flints and cherts	⊗	⧗	⊗	⧗	⊗	⊗					⊗	●	⧗	⧗
Coal, lignite, peat	●	⧗	⧗				○			⧗				
Sands and sandstones	⧗	⊗	⊗	⧗	⊗	○	○		⊗					
Dolomites, ankerites	⊗	⊗	⊗	⧗	⧗	○	○	○						
Evaporites: gypsum, halite	⊗	○	○											
Metamorphic rocks: slates, phyllites, marbles	○	○	○	○	○									

● Abundant
⧗ Common
⊗ Rare
○ Sporadic

Figure 2: Distribution trends and importance of major microfossil groups in different types of rocks.

Factors Controlling Stratigraphic Application

Several variables that govern the deposition, preservation, and interpretation of rock strata have an impact on stratigraphic application. These are some crucial elements:

Lithology and Sedimentology:

Applications of stratigraphy heavily rely on the lithology (composition) and sedimentology (characteristics) of rock strata. Different lithologies, such sandstone, limestone, shale, or conglomerate, have unique grain size, sorting, and bedding structure properties. These characteristics affect how depositional environments, paleoclimate, and geologic history are interpreted.

Tectonic Setting and Geologic History:

Rock strata are formed and preserved by tectonic pressures such as plate movements and mountain-building processes. Interpreting the distribution, deformation, and relationships of various stratigraphic strata requires knowledge of the region's tectonic history and geology. It sheds light on how basins, uplifts, and other geologic features that affect sediment deposition have changed throughout time.

Environmental Conditions:

The properties of stratigraphic sequences are governed by the environmental circumstances present during sediment deposition, such as changes in local topography, climate, and sea level. Unconformities, erosive surfaces, and transgression or regressive sequences may form as a consequence of sea level changes. Variations in climate have an impact on diagenetic processes, sediment types, and fossil preservation.

Paleontology and Biostratigraphy:

Rock units may be dated and related using fossils discovered within stratigraphic strata. Establishing relative and absolute age correlations between various rock strata requires the study of fossil content, distribution, and evolution, which is what palaeontology and biostratigraphy do. Paleoenvironments, Paleoclimate, and the history of life on Earth may all be inferred from fossil assemblages.

Techniques for stratigraphic correlation:

Establishing connections between rock strata in various sites is the goal of stratigraphic correlation. In order to correlate data, a variety of methodologies are utilised, including seismic stratigraphy, biostratigraphy, chronostratigraphy, and lithostratigraphy (based on lithologic similarities). Building stratigraphic columns and identifying geologic events across greater regions are made possible through correlation.

History of Diagenesis and Burial:

After a layer of rock is deposited, diagenetic processes including compaction, cementation, and modification may drastically change its characteristics and interpretative significance. Assessing the retention of sedimentary characteristics, the effect of diagenetic modification on rock properties, and the potential for hydrocarbon formation and movement requires an understanding of diagenesis and burial history.

Stratigraphic Data and Methods:

The precision and accuracy of stratigraphic applications are influenced by the quantity and quality of stratigraphic data, including seismic data, well logs, cores, outcrop observations, and outcrop observations. To analyse the geographical and chronological connections of rock strata, a variety of stratigraphic approaches are used, including as facies analysis, sequence stratigraphy, and basin analysis.

Lithology, sedimentology, tectonic setting, environmental circumstances, palaeontology, stratigraphic correlation methodologies, diagenesis, burial history, and the calibre of stratigraphic data all have an impact on stratigraphic applications. Our comprehension of rock strata, their depositional conditions, geologic history, and the interpretation of Earth's past is improved by taking these aspects into account. Stratigraphy is important for many different applications, including as resource exploration, geological mapping, and paleoenvironmental reconstructions. Stratigraphy offers insightful information on the development of the Earth.

Biozones

The presence of certain fossil assemblages or individual fossil species distinguishes rock or sedimentary strata as biozones, also known as biostratigraphic zones or fossil zones. The distribution and quantity of fossils within a certain stratigraphic unit or sequence are used to establish biozones. The study of the distribution and succession of fossils in order to determine the relative ages of rocks and correlate them across various sites is known as biostratigraphy, and the notion of biozones is crucial to this discipline. Biozones provide a method of dating and correlating sedimentary rocks and may aid in the reconstruction of an area's geologic history by finding and contrasting fossil assemblages.

Biozones are often called after important fossil species or groups that are widespread and clearly recognisable within a certain time frame. The top and lower bounds of the biozone are determined by the range of the chosen fossil species. Depending on the evolutionary history of the fossil species and the geological time scale's precision, the lifetime of a biozone may range from a few thousand to several million years.

In accordance with the presence of additional fossil species or certain evolutionary phases of a given taxonomic group, biozones may be further split into subzones or intervals. This enables correlation of sedimentary sequences and more thorough stratigraphic investigation. Careful fossil study, including taxonomy, palaeontology, and stratigraphic distribution studies, is necessary to determine biozones and their borders. Finding unique and diagnostic fossil assemblages that may be utilised to distinguish and correlate rocks of a comparable age from various geographical sites is the aim of this project.

Numerous disciplines, such as palaeontology, mining, petroleum exploration, and environmental research, have substantial uses for biozones. They contribute to the study of paleoenvironments, paleoclimate, and the evolutionary patterns of animals throughout geologic time. They also help determine the relative ages of sedimentary rocks, the vertical and lateral extent of certain rock units, and the relative ages of sedimentary rocks. Biozones are sections of sedimentary strata that are distinguished by the presence of certain fossil assemblages or single fossil species. By offering a way to date and correlate rocks based on the distribution and richness of fossils, they serve a significant role in biostratigraphy. Biozones aid in the linkage of sedimentary strata, help us comprehend the Earth's geologic history, and provide light on ancient ecosystems and the development of life.

Interval Zones

These are the most prevalent types of zones, and the earliest and last occurrences of taxa often species are what determine the limits of each. The strata that were deposited between these two episodes make up the interval zone. Interval zones come in five different varieties (Figure 3).

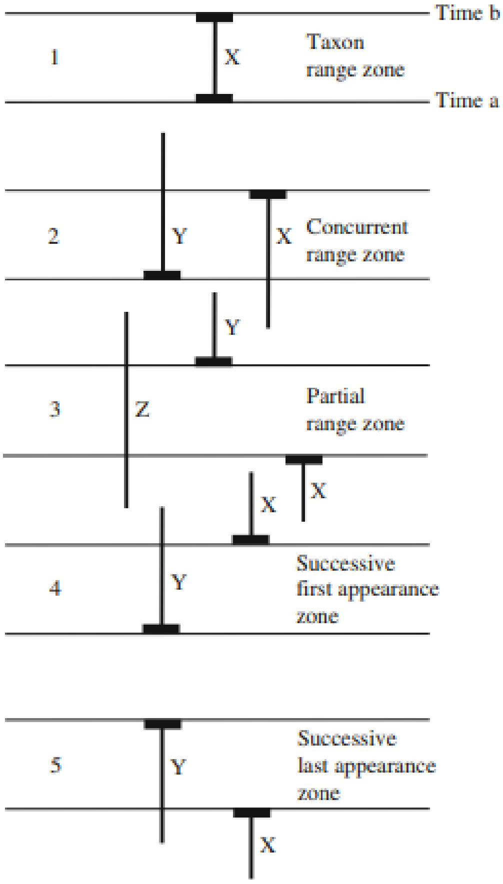


Figure 3: Outline of the five types of biostratigraphic interval zones shown by occurrences of microfossils X, Y, and Z. Vertical lines are taxon ranges, horizontal bars are first and last occurrences.

1. The earliest and final occurrences of a certain taxon serve as the definition of the taxon range zone.
2. A concurrent range zone is the space between the first and final occurrences of two different taxa.
3. The partial range zone divides the range of a third taxon by the time between the final occurrence of one taxon and the first occurrence of another taxon.
4. The sequential initial appearance zone depicts the space between two taxa's subsequent first appearances.

5. The zone between two taxa's consecutive last appearances is known as the sequential final appearance zone.

Since well drilling cuttings make up the majority of the samples in industrial biostratigraphy, the consecutive last appearance zone is the kind that is most often utilised. Due to downhole (caving) contamination, the actual initial occurrences in such sample sets are uncertain. To identify the first four interval zone kinds, precise placements of initial appearances are necessary.

Biostratigraphic Correlation

In geology and palaeontology, a technique known as biostratigraphic correlation is used to determine the relative ages of rock strata or sedimentary deposits based on the fossil material they contain. It is predicated on the idea that different types of creatures existed at different points in Earth's history and that the traces of those species may be used to connect rocks from various sites. Comparing the fossil assemblages found in various rock units to establish their respective ages is the technique of biostratigraphic correlation. The preserved remnants or signs of extinct species, such as their shells, bones, pollen grains, or trails, are known as fossils. Geologists may estimate the age of a layer of rock by looking at the sorts of fossils that are present in that layer. Geologists often concentrate on index fossils, which are species that were widespread geographically but had a very small geological range, to establish relationships. Because they specify the time period during which the related rock strata were deposited, index fossils are helpful. Geologists may identify the age of a layer of rock by looking for a certain species of ammonite, for instance, if that species is known to have lived between 100 and 90 million years ago.

After finding the index fossils in several sites, geologists examine the fossil assemblages from various rock strata and search for patterns. When identical or nearly identical index fossils are discovered in two distinct sites, it is likely that the matching rock strata were formed at the same time. This makes it possible for geologists to compare the ages of rock strata in various locations. Scales ranging from local to global may be employed when using biostratigraphic correlation. Geologists can build more accurate and reliable stratigraphic frameworks for comprehending Earth's history and the relative timing of events, such as the emergence or extinction of specific species, by combining biostratigraphy with other dating techniques, such as radiometric dating or magnetostratigraphy.

It's crucial to keep in mind that biostratigraphic correlation is predicated on the idea that variations in fossils throughout time may be utilised to designate various time periods. The fossil record has its limits, too, such as the scarcity of certain fossils or the possibility of gaps in the rock record brought on by erosion or non-deposition. Furthermore, biostratigraphic correlation works best for relatively recent geologic time periods because as we move back in time, fewer fossils are preserved and correlation becomes more difficult.

Time Stratigraphy

The goal of chronostratigraphy is to link rocks that were deposited at the same period across a wider region. The precision of chronostratigraphic correlation hinges on whether the sediments show signs of distinct geological events that occurred simultaneously across the area. These occurrences might be biological (such as the emergence of new species), sedimentary (such as the buildup of ash layers), or geophysical (such as magnetic field reversals on Earth). Correlating synchronous occurrences in geological history has a long history in geological inquiry. Such relationships don't rely on a strict timeframe. It was only feasible to establish a sequence of datings that were close to an absolute timeframe after the invention of radiometric dating techniques, although these datings are not time-absolute.

Chronostratigraphy, another name for time stratigraphy, is a subfield of geology that focuses on grouping and correlating rock strata according to their ages and the periods of time they represent. Geologists may better comprehend the chronological linkages between various rock formations and events by creating a detailed time scale that divides Earth's history into discrete units. The "chronostratigraphic unit," which denotes a certain period of time in Earth's history, is the basic unit of time stratigraphy. These units are determined by important geological or paleontological occurrences, such as extinctions, turning points in evolution, or changes in the climate of the planet. Chronostratigraphic units may be anything from considerably longer timescales like eras or aeons to much shorter ones like epochs or ages.

The definition and naming of chronostratigraphic units are a part of the international stratigraphic framework, which is developed and maintained by the International Commission on Stratigraphy (ICS). Starting with the shortest intervals and working up to bigger ones, the framework is arranged into a hierarchy of ever larger units. Epochs, ages, stages, series, systems, eras, and aeons make up the basic hierarchy. Numerous dating methods are used to determine the temporal boundaries and relationships between chronostratigraphic units. These include biostratigraphy (as was previously described), magnetostratigraphy, and other geochronological instruments, as well as radiometric dating techniques like radiocarbon dating and uranium-lead dating. Geologists may improve age estimations and guarantee the precision and consistency of the time scale by combining several dating techniques.

Understanding Earth's history and the sequence of geological occurrences that have created our planet is largely dependent on time stratigraphy. It enables geologists to compare rock units from various geographical locations, recreate historical ecosystems, follow the development of diverse life forms, and look into the origins and effects of significant geological occurrences like mass extinctions and climatic shifts. It's crucial to remember that time stratigraphy is an area of study that is always evolving, and the time scale is continuously updated as new information and methods become available. The stratigraphic framework is regularly reviewed and updated by the ICS to take new knowledge into account and to make sure it is compatible with international geological investigations [8]–[10].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the study of rock strata, their arrangement, and the interpretation of Earth's history based on their features are the main topics of stratigraphy, a basic branch of geology. It offers a framework for comprehending the chronological order, relative ages, geographical linkages, and processes that have created various rock types across geological time. Lithostratigraphy, which investigates the lithological and physical characteristics of rocks, biostratigraphy, which uses fossil content for dating and correlation, and chronostratigraphy, which uses a variety of dating techniques to determine the relative and absolute ages of rock units, are important aspects of stratigraphy. Geologists may build intricate stratigraphic columns and generate thorough time scales that enable the connection of rock formations across various locations by combining these methodologies.

Understanding stratigraphy is crucial for understanding geological processes, recreating Earth's history, and researching previous environmental conditions. It offers insights into the creation of sedimentary basins, the occurrence of mass extinctions, the generation of natural resources, and the recognition of prospective geologic dangers. Although stratigraphy has significantly improved our knowledge of Earth's past, study in this area is still continuing. Our understanding is being improved and expanded as a result of technological developments, new dating techniques, and the finding of fresh fossil records. In order to take these developments into account and maintain a consistent methodology for the investigation of Earth's geological record, the stratigraphic framework is regularly revised.

Overall, stratigraphy provides a significant background for geological research, resource development, and understanding the dynamics of Earth's history and present, serving as a crucial tool for geologists to unravel the intricate tale of our planet.

REFERENCES

[1] J. Martí, G. Groppelli, and A. Brum da Silveira, "Volcanic stratigraphy: A review," *Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research.* 2018. doi: 10.1016/j.jvolgeores.2018.04.006.

[2] O. Catuneanu, "Sequence stratigraphy," in *Regional Geology and Tectonics: Volume 1: Principles of Geologic Analysis*, 2020. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-444-64134-2.00021-3.

[3] D. A. Ferrill, A. P. Morris, R. N. McGinnis, K. J. Smart, S. S. Wigginton, and N. J. Hill, "Mechanical stratigraphy and normal faulting," *Journal of Structural Geology.* 2017. doi: 10.1016/j.jsg.2016.11.010.

[4] O. Catuneanu, "Model-independent sequence stratigraphy," *Earth-Science Reviews.* 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.earscirev.2018.09.017.

[5] O. Catuneanu *et al.*, "Towards the standardization of sequence stratigraphy," *Earth-Science Reviews.* 2009. doi: 10.1016/j.earscirev.2008.10.003.

[6] O. Catuneanu, "Scale in sequence stratigraphy," *Marine and Petroleum Geology.* 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2019.04.026.

[7] D. G. C. Fragoso, G. P. R. Gabaglia, A. J. C. Magalhães, and C. M. Dos Santos Scherer, "Cyclicity and hierarchy in sequence stratigraphy: An integrated approach," *Brazilian J. Geol.*, 2021, doi: 10.1590/2317-4889202120200106.

[8] O. Catuneanu, "Sequence stratigraphy in the context of the 'modeling revolution,'" *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2020.104309.

[9] X. Wang, "Uncertainty quantification and reduction in the characterization of subsurface stratigraphy using limited geotechnical investigation data," *Undergr. Sp.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.undsp.2018.10.008.

[10] A. A. S. Al-Masgari *et al.*, "A Guideline For Seismic Sequence Stratigraphy Interpretation," *ARPN J. Eng. Appl. Sci.*, 2021.

CHAPTER 8

SEQUENCE STRATIGRAPHY, SEISMIC STRATIGRAPHY AND BASIN ANALYSIS

Mr. Yarlagadda Kumar, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - dheerajkumar@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Geology disciplines that concentrate on the interpretation and study of sedimentary sequences, their depositional settings, and the history of sedimentary basins include sequence stratigraphy, seismic stratigraphy, and basin analysis. Sedimentary deposits are divided into "sequences," or groups of strata that are genetically connected, according to the framework of sequence stratigraphy. It is predicated on the understanding that variations in relative sea level affect sedimentation and lead to the deposition of distinctive sedimentary units with distinctive geometries and facies correlations. Understanding the mechanisms that regulate sedimentation and how these mechanisms affect the distribution of reservoirs, seals, and other subsurface structures is the goal of sequence stratigraphy. It entails locating crucial surfaces that act as markers for correlating and mapping sedimentary units over an area, such as sequence borders and maximum flooding surfaces. Seismic stratigraphy examines and interprets underlying sedimentary sequences by using geophysical data, especially seismic reflection data. Geologists may detect and map different geological features and stratigraphic units using seismic reflection data, which gives them a two-dimensional depiction of the subsurface. Understanding the shape, distribution, and depositional history of sedimentary units requires the investigation of seismic reflection patterns and seismic facies. By identifying depositional conditions, faults, and hydrocarbon reserves, it may provide important light on the structure and development of sedimentary basins.

KEYWORDS:

Basin Analysis, Continental Crust, Sequence Stratigraphy, Seismic Reflection.

INTRODUCTION

In order to comprehend the creation, development, and tectonic history of sedimentary basins, basin analysis incorporates a variety of geological data and methodologies. To understand the intricate relationships between tectonic forces, sedimentation, and basin subsidence, it entails the study of sedimentary processes, structural geology, stratigraphy, and geochronology. The goal of basin analysis is to pinpoint the forces that shape basin formation, the processes that cause sedimentation, and the variables that affect how sedimentary facies and hydrocarbon accumulations are distributed. Additionally, it sheds light on the fluid motion, the potential for hydrocarbon exploration and production, and the thermal and burying histories of basins.

Sequence stratigraphy, seismic stratigraphy, and basin analysis work together to help us understand how sedimentary basins have changed through time and how to find geological resources on Earth. These fields are used in both academic and practical geology, such as resource evaluation and petroleum exploration. They assist geologists in understanding the intricate history of sedimentation and tectonic processes via the integration of geological, geophysical, and stratigraphic data, which improves geological models and predictability. Geological disciplines such as sequence stratigraphy, seismic stratigraphy, and basin analysis all add to our knowledge of sedimentary deposits, their properties, and the geological processes that have formed them. Let's look more closely at each of these fields of study:

Sequence Stratigraphy:

Sedimentary successions are analysed and understood using a framework called sequence stratigraphy based on their vertical and lateral linkages. It acknowledges that variations in relative sea level have an impact on sedimentation and lead to the establishment of sedimentary sequences with different borders and depositional properties. Geologists may link sedimentary units across many places by identifying important surfaces, such as sequence borders and maximum flooding surfaces. Understanding sedimentary facies, depositional conditions, and the evolutionary history of sedimentary basins is made easier by sequence stratigraphy. When analysing cyclical sedimentary successions and identifying reservoirs and seals for the exploration and exploitation of petroleum resources, it is very useful [1].

Seismic Stratigraphy:

Seismic stratigraphy is the study and characterization of subsurface sedimentary sequences via the analysis of seismic reflection data. Geophysical methods are used to collect seismic reflection data, which offers a precise picture of the underlying strata. Geologists may identify a wide range of stratigraphic units, structures, and geological features by examining the patterns of reflection and the geometry of seismic events. Seismic stratigraphy aids in understanding sedimentary processes and the development of sedimentary basins, as well as mapping the geometry and distribution of sedimentary units and spotting faults and folds. It is commonly utilised in engineering studies, environmental evaluations, and the discovery of hydrocarbons.

Basin Analysis:

The study of sedimentary basins' creation, evolution, and geological past is called a basin analysis. To comprehend the variables influencing the development and sedimentation of basins, it combines numerous geological, geophysical, and geochemical data. In order to recreate the historical history of basins, basin analysis entails the interpretation of sedimentary facies, stratigraphy, structural geology, and tectonic processes. It aids in locating sediment sources, comprehending basin subsidence, examining thermal history, and assessing the likelihood of hydrocarbon buildup. The regional geology, tectonic history, and resource potential of sedimentary basins may all be better understood via basin analysis. Seismic stratigraphy, basin analysis, and sequence stratigraphy are all related fields that help analyse sedimentary deposits and comprehend how geological processes work. They provide useful resources for examining the development of sedimentary basins, describing reservoirs, and directing petroleum industry exploration and production operations.

DISCUSSION

Seismic Stratigraphy

Measurements of how long sound waves (seismic waves) take to travel through rock serve as the foundation for seismic records. Explosions or compressed air (such as from air cannons) are used to create the sound or signal. Rock is an elastic material, therefore the sound velocity reveals a lot about the characteristics of the rock. Normal sound waves (P-waves) pass through both the liquid or gas in the pores as well as the solid phase, which is mostly composed of minerals or rock pieces. On the other hand, shear waves (also known as S-waves) can only pass through the solid phase.

Porosity, mineral composition, and cementation level are the three main factors affecting sound velocity. In water, sound waves move at a speed of around 1,500 m/s, however this velocity varies with temperature and salt content. Due to their high water content and the fact that the framework on which the sediment grains are based does not provide any real strength (stiffness) as a medium for the seismic waves, sound travels through unconsolidated sediments at speeds that are only marginally higher than the velocity in water (1,500–2,000 m/s, and occasionally even lower).

Even though the porosity is somewhat large, cementing sand with carbonate or siliceous cement will bind the grains together in a framework that significantly increases stiffness and velocity. Higher velocities will also result from compaction from overlaying sediments that force water to escape, not just because the water content drops but also because more frequent and bigger contacts are made between the clastic grains. 2-3 km/s are the speeds in moderately cemented sediments, as the Tertiary deposits of the North Sea. Velocities are typically between 3 and 5 km/s in more consolidated (compacted and cemented) sedimentary rocks that have not undergone metamorphosis. Many of the North Sea's Mesozoic strata have this characteristic [2]–[4].

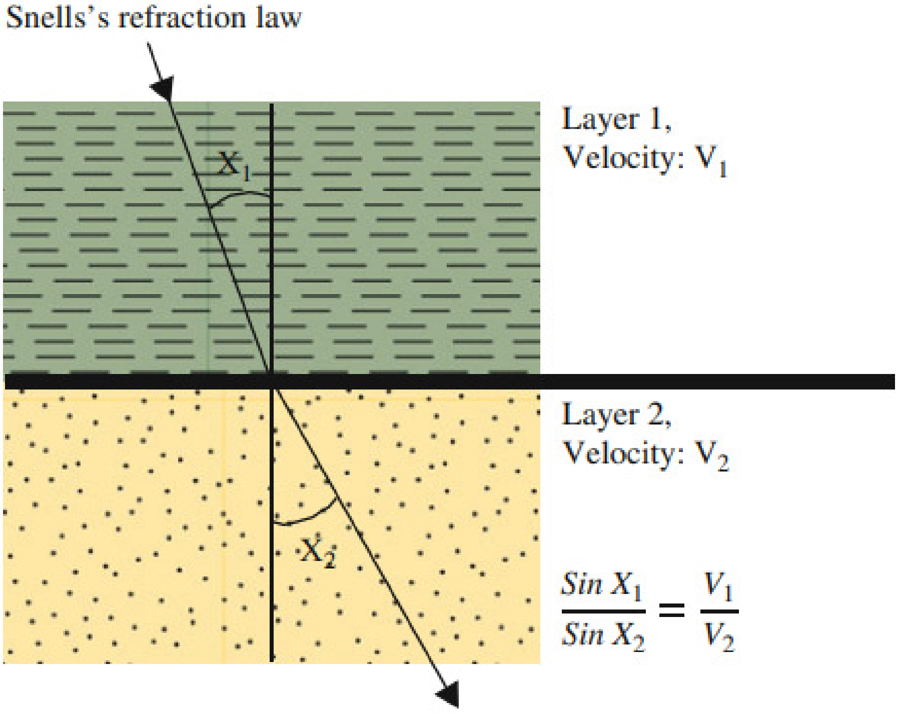


Figure 1: Snell's law for the refraction of sound waves.

Rocks that have undergone metamorphism and eruption will move at speeds of 5 to 6 km/s. Because limestones are often more densely cemented and because carbonate cement has a high degree of stiffness and a low compressibility, limestones frequently move more quickly than sandstones at the same depth. Strong cementing and high velocity at shallow depths are possible characteristics of carbonate reefs. The grain-supported structure of sandstone, on the other hand, makes it a more rigid medium for sound waves than shale at the same depth.

The porosity should be calculable as a function of velocity if we know the velocities of the fluid and rock matrix, however the Wyllie equation greatly simplifies the problem. Depending on the nature of grain interactions and the distribution of cement, rocks with the same porosity might move at rather varied speeds. Snell's law (see Figure 1) states that sound waves will be refracted as they travel through sedimentary strata with varying velocities:

$$\sin x1 / \sin x2 = v1/v2.$$

Since the two beds would typically have different densities if they move at different speeds, some of the acoustic energy will be reflected rather than refracted. The difference in the acoustic impedance, which is the result of velocity and density, determines how much of the energy is reflected (Figure 2).

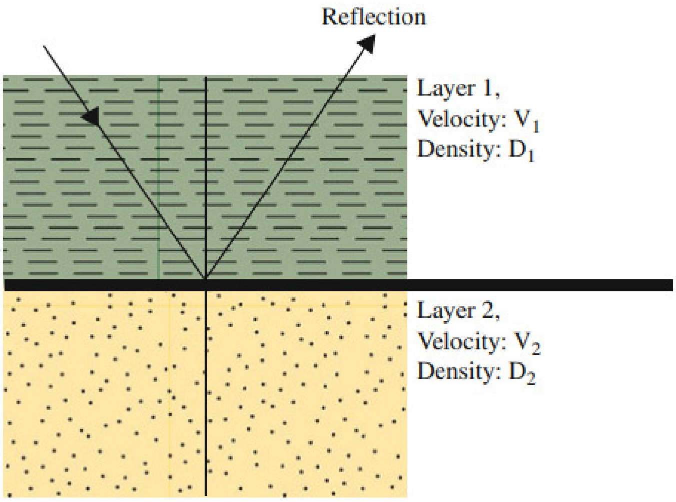


Figure 2: Diagram for the reflection of waves in a layered sedimentary sequence.

Different Types of Seismic Signatures

The term "seismic signatures" describes the distinctive patterns or reactions seen in seismic data and is acquired by using seismic reflection or seismic refraction methods. These fingerprints provide important details on lithology, fluid content, subsurface structures, and other geological phenomena. Seismic signatures may take many different forms, including:

Reflection Strength:

The characteristics of the subsurface materials may affect the amplitude or intensity of the seismic reflections. Significant impedance disparities between various rock layers, such as those between sandstone and shale, are sometimes indicated by strong or high-amplitude reflections. Inconsistent or comparable lithologies may be indicated by weak or low-amplitude reflections.

Configuration of Reflection:

Seismic reflections' geometry and shape may provide crucial details about the underlying formations. In contrast, broken or chaotic reflections may indicate faulting or folding. For instance, consistent, parallel reflections may imply horizontal or gradually sinking strata. Additionally, unique reflection patterns may be seen in synclinal and anticlinal structures.

Diffraction:

Seismic waves are bent or scattered around small-scale geological structures, such as faults or fractures, in a process known as diffraction. Seismic recordings show diffraction signs as localised, high-frequency energy, which may provide important information about subsurface discontinuities and smaller-scale structures.

Amplitude Variation with Offset (AVO):

Studying seismic reflection amplitude variations as a function of offset (the separation between the source and receiver) is a component of AVO analysis. By displaying different amplitude anomalies linked to changes in the elastic characteristics of hydrocarbon-bearing reservoirs compared to neighbouring rock formations, AVO signatures may reveal the existence of hydrocarbons.

First breaks and direct waves:

The first seismic waves, known as direct waves or first breaks, are those that go straight from the seismic source to the receivers without experiencing reflections or refractions. Seismic reflector depth may be determined using the timing and properties of these waves, which provide information about the subsurface velocity structure.

BSRs, or bottom simulating reflections:

The existence of methane hydrates under the seabed is often linked to BSRs, which are characteristic seismic reflections. Ice-like formations known as methane hydrates occur at certain pressure and temperature levels. The possible locations of these methane hydrate deposits may be found and mapped using BSRs.

Basalt layer complexity makes it difficult to identify seismic evidence linked with imaging under basalt flows. Sub-basalt imaging may be improved by using methods like amplitude versus offset (AVO) analysis, velocity inversion, and wavelet tuning to differentiate between basalt layers and underlying sedimentary formations.

These are but a few examples of the many seismic signatures that geologists and geophysicists examine in order to understand subsurface structures, lithology, and probable hydrocarbon reserves. When interpreting seismic data, it is important to take into account a variety of signature types and combine them with geological knowledge to create thorough models of the subsurface [5]–[7].

Interpretation of Lithology and Sedimentary Facies by Means of Seismic Profiles

When it comes to understanding lithology and sedimentary facies in subsurface geology, seismic profiles are a helpful resource. Seismic data may provide indirect indications and aid in the identification of probable lithological variations and facies alterations, despite the fact that they alone cannot directly define lithology or sedimentary facies. Seismic profiles are employed in the interpretation process in the following ways:

Reflection Patterns:

The patterns of reflections caused by the boundaries between several rock strata are seen in seismic profiles. Changes in the geometry, continuity, and amplitude of reflections may provide information regarding lithological shifts. Strong, uninterrupted reflections, for instance, can point to lithologically homogenous intervals, while disturbed or chaotic reflections might point to lithological heterogeneity or depositional settings that are prone to sediment instability.

Stratigraphic Sequences:

Seismic profiles may show the internal structure of sedimentary sequences as well as their lateral extent and thickness. Geologists may deduce the existence of various sedimentary facies and lithological differences by examining these sequences. A progradational series, for instance, may represent a change from shallow marine to terrestrial habitats, while a retrogradational sequence might suggest a move towards deeper marine conditions.

Amplitude Variations:

Seismic reflection amplitude fluctuations may provide information about lithological changes and fluid composition. The presence of lithologies with significant impedance contrasts, such as sandstone or limestone, may be indicated by strong, high-amplitude reflections. Weak or low-amplitude reflections may point to deposits rich in clay or shale, which have comparable acoustic characteristics. Amplitude anomalies may sometimes point to the presence of hydrocarbons.

Seismic Facies Analysis:

Based on distinctive reflection patterns, seismic facies are identified and mapped during seismic facies analysis. Seismic units having comparable lithological or depositional properties are referred to as seismic facies. Geologists may deduce changes in lithology and sedimentary environments by examining the lateral and vertical distribution of seismic facies. For instance, a sandstone reservoir facies may be represented by a seismic facies with parallel, continuous reflections, while a shale or debris flow facies may be represented by a facies with chaotic reflections.

Well Calibration:

Drilling logs and core samples are examples of well data that may be used to calibrate and verify seismic patterns. The lithological interpretations and seismic facies may be more restricted by combining well data with seismic reflections. In order to more accurately analyse the seismic signals, well data give direct information on lithology and sedimentary facies.

It is crucial to remember that lithology and sedimentary facies interpretation from seismic profiles is often an iterative process that involves combining information from many data sources, including seismic data, borehole data, and local geological knowledge. The interpretation need to take into account the local geological setting, depositional theories, and established lithological relationships. Additionally, by estimating rock characteristics and magnifying minute fluctuations in seismic data, seismic inversion methods and attribute analysis may further support lithological and facies interpretation.

Tectonic boundaries and faults

Remember that the layering is assumed to be mostly horizontal by the theory we apply to determine the depth to a reflecting border. Through tectonic deformation, primary seismic reflections will be bent, slanted, or folded. Folded beds can only be shown properly if the folds are soft enough to have a low angle of dip. We may identify faults when excellent reflections abruptly cease, indicating a lateral shift in lithology. The fault plane itself will not show up as a reflector on the seismic profile because faults are often too steep to reflect the sound wave back in a straight line. The ends of the reflecting layers that should indicate faults will not be quite precisely identified on the seismic profile due to the peculiar "edge" effects around faults, making it potentially challenging to trace the fault with complete accuracy. A point source's diffraction from a bed termination against a defect may result in a curved alignment. Many of these flaws will be addressed by special treatment of seismic data (migration), which will provide a more accurate image.

In order to provide a more accurate image of the reservoir structure, seismic lines have been shot in recent years with ever-narrower grid spacings. After that, a three-dimensional seismic data set is created, allowing seismic sections to be built at any angle to the grid. We may create horizontal time-slices across the structure using this technique as well. This is a horizontal projection of the geology, similar to a topographic or geological map. It is a highly effective way of identifying flaws and other significant structural components. Borehole seismics, in particular vertical seismic profiles (VSPs), is another recent discovery. In this technique, signals are recorded in the well at regular depth intervals as rounds are fired at the bottom near a well. The primary benefit of VSPs is that they create a better seismic velocity profile as a function of depth than a synthetic seismic log.

Changes in Sea Level

Long-distance correlations between unconformities in sedimentary layers and the presence of high and low sea levels at different times throughout geological history have been shown.

Sedimentation migrating inland over an unconformity surface causes proximal onlaps. A proximal onlap indicates that the sea level has increased in respect to the land surface that makes up the top of the unconformity if we are dealing with a coastal deposit. We can spot onlaps into the ground on seismic profiles, quantify the height difference between the lowest and highest onlaps, compute the seismic time difference, and translate this into an approximation of thickness.

However, it's important to keep in mind that this region of the basin's local subsidence is also a contributing factor to the thickness of the sediments that have been deposited. In order to reach isostatic equilibrium, the weight brought on by increasing water depth will bring about greater subsidence, and sedimentation will increase the load. A seismic profile's relative shift in coastal onlap may result from local tectonic subsidence. Regressions are characterised by the displacement of the land-ocean line into the basin. They may be brought on by a drop in sea level, which would move the shoreline closer to the edge of the continental slope or further out on the shelf. The region landward of the coast line is isostatically lifted in this situation as a result of part of the water being discharged and sediment being eroded, which causes the recorded regression to be larger than the actual lowering of the sea level.A regression occurs when the shoreline the line dividing land from the sea moves seaward such that the seabed turns into land. A transgression is when the sea encroaches onto what was once land. Regressions and transgressions are not usually correlated with variations in sea level. Even though the water level has not decreased, a delta that extends into the sea has a local regression. Even with the sea level rising, we may still see a local regression on a delta if sedimentation is occurring at a fast enough rate. Depending on the pace of sedimentation or erosion in relation to sea level rise, there may be transgressions in certain regions along a coastline and regressions in others at the same time. The phrase "forced regression" refers to a major decrease of the sea level.

Sea level changes may result from:

1. Local tectonic motions, such as the sinking of a graben structure or the uplift of a horst.
2. Large-scale plate tectonic motions that are not global but can be.
3. Changing sea levels. These eustatic sea level fluctuations are worldwide in scope.

Although one might anticipate that local tectonics, drainage, depositional conditions, etc. would primarily define a basin's sedimentation, studies of tens of thousands of seismic profiles and wells from numerous sedimentary basins show that simultaneous transgressions and regressions have occurred in utterly unrelated regions of the globe. This has been shown by comparing seismic profiles to nearby oil wells, where the age of depositional sequences and seismic unconformities may be determined using biostratigraphy. It turns out that distinctive seismic reflectors, such as those in the North Sea, South China Sea, Mexican Gulf, and Alaska, that show declines in sea level are around the same age. It is now evident that many regions, particularly continental edges, have a tectonic history that may be attributed to the expansion of the seafloor on a global scale.

Although there are often bigger or minor gaps in deposition (hiatuses), a large portion of geological time is not recorded by deposits. When one carefully examines the continental sequences, this becomes quite obvious. Sequences on the ocean bottom are more continuous, although there are also obvious interruptions in deposition. Because there will always be some sedimentation someplace, the period represented by breaks (hiatuses) varies widely. In order to correlate sequences with continuous sedimentation, one must look for indications of abrupt shifts in facies and deposition depth.

Even though they are not always accurate, microfossils may be useful in determining water depth. It might be challenging to map irregularities in the field when there are few exposures. As a result, many of the greatest specimens have been discovered in arid regions of the USA and other countries.

Changes in the Volume of the Ocean

Basins

As we've seen, the seafloor's age, or how long it's had to cool down since it was created, and the thickness of the sediment laying on top both influence the topography of the ocean bottom at a vast scale. Seawater will extend farther onto continent borders during periods of fast seafloor spreading, creating relatively wide spreading ridges that reduce the volume of ocean basins. The spreading ridges would gradually sink and nearly totally vanish after 100 million years if all seafloor spreading stopped. The volume of the ocean basins would then be bigger because the sea level would decrease by an amount equal to the volume of the spreading ridges. The significant variations in sea level over geological time may be explained by this process. Also take note of the correlation between massive incursions and fast seafloor spreading, as seen, for instance, in the Cretaceous and Carboniferous eras. In reality, the deep channels created by subduction are insignificant in comparison to the spreading ridge's breadth. We had a single large supercontinent and negligible seafloor spreading throughout the Permian and Triassic periods. It was a time of regression across a huge geographical region.

Eustatic shifts in sea level may also result from cut-off ocean basins drying up. There is strong evidence that during the Upper Miocene (Messian) era, the Mediterranean Sea was shut off from the Atlantic Ocean and dried up. As a result, the volume of ocean basins throughout the globe decreased, leading to a 5–6 m rise in sea level weakening and thickening of the crust. Land will be elevated when the depth to the Moho (seismic discontinuity dividing the earth's crust and mantle) increases. When two continents collide, the thickness of the continental crust may treble (to 70–80 km), creating mountains like the Himalayas.

Heavy mantle rocks will be moved higher by the stretching and thinning of the continental crust, and their average density will rise all the way to a compensatory depth of 100 km. This will cause sinking, which will allow for the accumulation of additional low density sediments. This occurs as the continental crust transitions to the oceanic crust, and where rift development occurs, the continental crust thins under the rift, resulting in graben formation. The density of the rocks and, therefore, the isostatic equilibrium are both impacted by changes in the temperature gradient. In locations along the rift's boundary where the crust has not thinned, such as East Africa, rifting generates elevation; in areas where rifting stops and the crust cools, such as the North Sea, rifting causes subsidence.

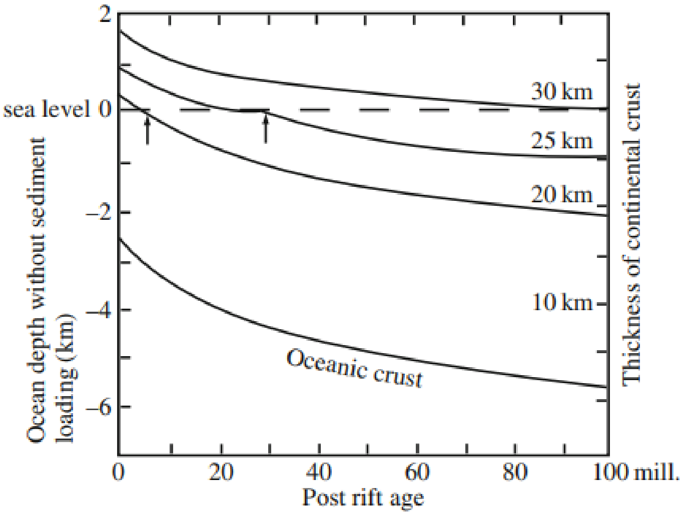


Figure 3: Subsidence of the sea bed and continental crust of various thicknesses as a function of post-rifting age (after Kinsman 1975).

By using plate tectonic models, the main transgressions in the Cambrian, Ordovician, and Cretaceous may be reasonably effectively explained. the Carboniferous-Permian epoch, which marked the end of the Palaeozoic and the start of the Seafloor spreading was only moderate throughout the Mesozoic (Triassic), as shown, for instance, along the Less and smaller spreading ridges would allow the seas to hold more water, reducing the amount of saltwater that flooded the land.

Active rifting without seafloor spreading occurred on the continents, increasing the geothermal gradient and elevating regions that were previously submerged in shallow epicontinental seas above sea level.

But it is harder to explain the short-term changes in sea level. The Quaternary-Upper Miocene, Permian-Carboniferous, Upper Ordovician, and late Precambrian geological eras, which all saw significant continental glaciation, as well as the Upper Ordovician and Precambrian periods, allow us to use glacioeustatic fluctuations in sea level, which are quite quick in geological time. The Lower Tertiary and Mesozoic Sea level variations that occurred widely must have been caused by plate tectonics. The rate of seafloor and continental crust subsidence following the rifting stage depends on the passage of time. The spreading ridges of hot basalt (oceanic crust) are often islands that are 2 km or more above sea level. As a result of cooling over 100 Ma without sediment loading, seafloor basalt eventually recedes to about 6 km (Figure 3).

Sedimentation and Isostatic Equilibrium

The terms sedimentation and isostatic equilibrium have to do with the geological processes that form the crust of the Earth. Let's investigate each of these ideas:

Sedimentation:

The term "sedimentation" describes the act of depositing and accumulating sediments, which are rock-derived particles produced by weathering and erosion. Sediments may be moved and deposited by a number of different forces, including gravity (mass wasting), wind, ice (glaciers), and water (rivers, lakes, and seas). Terrestrial (such as rivers, deserts, and floodplains) and marine (such as continental shelves, deep-sea basins) habitats all experience sedimentation.

Sediments are moved, sorted, and settled during the sedimentation process. Sediments are sorted according to their size, shape, and density when they are moved by wind or water. While finer particles are moved farther afield, coarser particles often settle closer to the source. Sedimentary layers, also known as strata, are created as a result of the settling process and have unique properties and compositions. These deposited sediments undergo lithification, or compaction and cementation, to become sedimentary rocks. They provide significant archives of Earth's past, containing details on earlier ecosystems, climatic patterns, and the development of life.

Isostatic Equilibrium:

Asthenosphere, the partly molten and malleable layer of the mantle, and lithosphere, the stiff outer layer made up of the crust and highest section of the mantle, are in an equilibrium condition known as isostatic equilibrium. The geophysical concept of isostasy outlines how the lithosphere's mass distribution affects how vertically the Earth's crust moves. The underlying lithosphere is said to push downward more forcefully in areas of higher mass (such as mountain ranges), which causes it to sink farther into the asthenosphere. On the other hand, areas with less bulk, such basins, are subject to less downward pressure and tend to rise higher. Long geological durations and a variety of processes, including sediment deposition and erosion, tectonic activity (such as the formation of mountains and plate movements), and the melting or expansion of ice sheets, result in isostatic shifts.

When the lithosphere floats at a level where the forces from the mass above and below it are equal, isostatic equilibrium has been reached. The weight of the rocks and the buoyancy given by the underlying asthenosphere are balanced in this stage, as seen by the topography of the ground surface. The loading or unloading of sediments or the removal of ice masses, for example, may cause local perturbations that can upset the isostatic balance and cause modifications to the crust. Sedimentation is the action of depositing and accumulating sediments, while isostatic equilibrium is the equilibrium between the lithosphere of the Earth and the subsurface asthenosphere. Both of these processes are important in creating the Earth's crust and have significance for comprehending geological events and tracing the history of the planet.

Continental Rifting

Tensional tectonics, in conjunction with rifting, causes the continental crust to stretch and thin. The strong geothermal gradients connected to rifting may cause tensional pressures and uplift that cause crystalline stretching. As a result, the continental crust thins, resulting in isostatic subsidence. Because the continental crust is thin and heavy rocks from the mantle force their way up, increasing the average density of the rocks, subsidence caused by fracture zones in the continental crust (rift valleys) often occurs in a sedimentary basin. Less room will be available for the sediments in the rift valley system's volcanogenic regions. The larger geothermal gradient causes uplift along rift system borders when the continental crust is not strained. As a result, the geothermal gradients are diminished, which causes the foundation rock near the surface to slope away from the rift valley. The development of erosional valleys that cut backward into the higher shoulders on the sides of the rift valley will somewhat make up for this.

These basins will be distinguished by mineralogically relatively juvenile sediments, mostly arkoses and conglomerates deposited in fan deltas along the active faults, due to the steep terrain around these basins and the short transit distance for the material eroded from the bedrock. Finer-grained sandstones and clayey sediments are deposited in the basins' centre and deeper regions. Rift valley basins may be maritime, like those offshore of East Africa, or continental, as those in East Africa and the North Sea's Jurassic basins. Due to significant heat flow, horsts—unstretched (thick) chunks of continent crust may grow topographically quite high. East African mountains with a height of more than 5,000 metres are one illustration. Due to the restricted movement of oxygenated water, both marine and lacustrine rift basins have a tendency to have decreasing conditions in the deeper region [8], [9]. Large lakes will inhabit rift basins created in moist climates. Because water stratification (density stratification) is often more pronounced in lakes, lacustrine basins frequently have an even greater potential for creating source rocks than marine rift basins.

As a result, these basins often include dark, organic-rich shales. Evaporite deposits are a distinctive feature of rift basins that developed in dry regions. Block faulting is a common source of isolated basins or horsts that shut off access to the open ocean. Before the ocean bottom began to expand, forming the Atlantic Ocean, in the Mid-Jurassic, evaporites were common in North America and Europe throughout the Permo-Triassic. Today, evaporites are characteristic in rift deposits, such as those in East Africa. Examples include the North Sea and the German

Zechstein Salt Deposits. In the early stages of the formation of the South Atlantic Ocean evaporite basins, Jurassic and early Cretaceous rifting occurred in the dry areas of the period. They have the ability to create almost leak-proof cap rocks. If they are thick enough, they may create salt domes that, as at Ekofisk and in the Gulf Coast basin, cause structural traps in the rocks above. Rising salt domes have a significant impact on how the clastic sediment is distributed throughout a basin.

Due to the strong conductivity of salt, temperatures above it are greater than usual, while sediments below it are colder than usual. When simulating the maturity of source rocks linked to the salt, this must be taken into consideration. Modelling diagenesis and reservoir characteristics may also need consideration of these temperature anomalies. In recent years, significant subsalt finds have been found offshore Brazil and along the Gulf Coast. Blocks in the crust are drawn inward into the rift structure by gravitational attraction as a result of the subsidence caused by rifting, which makes the nearby rocks unstable. Listric faults, or parallel, curved fault planes that begin as normal faults and gradually round in depth until they are practically horizontal, have a propensity to occur. Then, the blocks are turned, turning over and sloping away from the fissure. Evaporites and carbonates are often deposited in basins with restricted circulation that occur during the early stages of the spreading phase. Such deposits of the Upper Jurassic and Lower Cretaceous period are widely distributed along the Atlantic Ocean's edge [10], [11].

CONCLUSION

Seismic stratigraphy, sequence stratigraphy, and basin analysis are three interrelated fields that help us understand how sedimentary deposits are distributed both spatially and temporally as well as how sedimentary basins evolve. In order to identify packages of strata that are genetically connected, sequence stratigraphy offers a framework for analysing sedimentary successions based on changes in relative sea level. It aids in both correlating and mapping sedimentary units across various sites and understanding the mechanisms governing sedimentation. In the exploration and production of hydrocarbons, sequence stratigraphy is especially useful for locating reservoirs, seals, and other subsurface structures.

Seismic stratigraphy examines and interprets underlying sedimentary sequences by using geophysical data, especially seismic reflection data. In order to comprehend the geometry, distribution, and depositional history of sedimentary units, seismic facies and reflection pattern analysis are used. By identifying depositional environments, faults, and oil reserves, seismic stratigraphy sheds light on the structure and development of sedimentary basins. It is essential to subsurface mapping, imaging, and exploration operations.

In order to comprehend the creation, development, and tectonic history of sedimentary basins, basin analysis incorporates a variety of geological data and methodologies. To understand the intricate relationships between tectonic forces, sedimentation, and basin subsidence, it entails the study of sedimentary processes, structural geology, stratigraphy, and geochronology. Understanding the mechanics of sedimentation, the controls on basin formation, and the variables affecting the distribution of sedimentary facies and hydrocarbon accumulations are all made possible with the aid of basin analysis. Additionally, it sheds light on the fluid flow and the temperature and burying histories of basins.

Seismic stratigraphy, sequence stratigraphy, and basin analysis all work together to help us understand how sedimentary basins have changed through time and how to find geological resources on Earth. These fields are used in both academic research and real-world applications, such geological hazard assessments, groundwater investigations, and hydrocarbon exploration. They improve our knowledge of subsurface geology and aid in the creation of precise geological models and forecasts by combining geological, geophysical, and stratigraphic data.

REFERENCES

[1] R. D. S. Alvarenga *et al.*, "Tectonic and stratigraphic evolution based on seismic sequence stratigraphy: Central rift section of the campos basin, offshore brazil," *Geosci.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/geosciences11080338.

[2] A. A. Almasgari *et al.*, "Application of seismic attributes to delineate the geological features of the malay basin," *Bull. Geol. Soc. Malaysia*, 2020, doi: 10.7186/bgsm69202009.

[3] S. H. Solangi, A. Nazeer, S. A. Abbasi, and M. M. Zulkifil, "Morphological features of continental shelf margin: Examples from the Pakistan Offshore," *Geodesy and Geodynamics*. 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.geog.2018.09.004.

[4] H. Di, L. Truelove, C. Li, and A. Abubakar, "Accelerating seismic fault and stratigraphy interpretation with deep CNNs: A case study of the Taranaki Basin, New Zealand," *Lead. Edge*, 2020, doi: 10.1190/tle39100727.1.

[5] A. H. Melo, P. R. O. Andrade, A. J. C. Magalhães, D. G. C. Fragoso, and F. P. Lima-Filho, "Stratigraphic evolution from the early Albian to late Campanian of the Potiguar Basin, Northeast Brazil: An approach in seismic scale," *Basin Res.*, 2020, doi: 10.1111/bre.12414.

[6] A. Abbas, H. Zhu, Z. Zeng, and X. Zhou, "Sedimentary facies analysis using sequence stratigraphy and seismic sedimentology in the Paleogene Pinghu Formation, Xihu Depression, East China Sea Shelf Basin," *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2018.03.017.

[7] A. A. S. Al-Masgari *et al.*, "Geomorphological geometries and high-resolution seismic sequence stratigraphy of malay basin's fluvial succession," *Appl. Sci.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/app11115156.

[8] M. M. Rivera-Franco and E. Leon-Rodriguez, "Delays in Breast Cancer Detection and Treatment in Developing Countries," *Breast Cancer Basic Clin. Res.*, vol. 12, p. 117822341775267, Jan. 2018, doi: 10.1177/1178223417752677.

[9] É. N. Barbosa, V. C. Córdoba, and D. Do Carmo Sousa, "Evolução estratigráfica da Sequência Neocarbonífera-Eotriássica da Bacia do Parnaíba, Brasil," *Brazilian J. Geol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1590/2317-4889201620150021.

[10] C. A. Samakinde, J. M. Van Bever Donker, R. Durrheim, and M. Manzi, "Application of seismic stratigraphy in reservoir characterisation: a case study of the passive margin deposits of the northern Orange Basin, South Africa," *J. Pet. Explor. Prod. Technol.*, 2020, doi: 10.1007/s13202-020-01050-9.

[11] H. Zeng, X. Zhu, R. Zhu, and Q. Zhang, "Guidelines for seismic sedimentologic study in non-marine postrift basins," *Pet. Explor. Dev.*, 2012, doi: 10.1016/S1876-3804(12)60045-7.

CHAPTER 9

HEAT TRANSPORT IN SEDIMENTARY BASINS

Mr. Bhairab Gogoi, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - bhairabjyoti@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

These intricate systems' thermal regime and geological development are greatly influenced by heat transmission in sedimentary basins. Numerous applications, including as the search for hydrocarbons, the extraction of geothermal energy, and the investigation of basin dynamics, depend on having a thorough understanding of the mechanisms and processes involved in heat transport. In this abstract, the main elements relating to heat transfer in sedimentary basins are briefly summarised.The introduction of the abstract emphasises the significance of heat transmission in regulating temperature distribution in sedimentary basins. It places emphasis on how heat transfer affects many geological processes, including the development of organic matter, the production of hydrocarbons, and basin subsidence.The main processes of heat transport in sedimentary basins are then covered in the abstract. In addition to recognising the relevance of advection and convection caused by fluid movement, it describes conduction as the predominant route of heat transport inside the solid rock matrix. We talk about how these systems interact and how that affects the basin's thermal structure.

KEYWORDS:

Geothermal Gradients, Heat Transmission, Heat Transfer, Thermal Conductivity.

INTRODUCTION

A crucial mechanism that affects the thermal structure, development, and geothermal energy potential of sedimentary basins is heat transmission. Sedimentary basins, which may range in depth from deep offshore basins to shallow coastal plains, are characterised by the buildup of sedimentary rocks. It is essential to comprehend how heat is moved within these basins for a variety of purposes, including as hydrocarbon exploration, the production of geothermal energy, and the study of geological processes [1]–[3]. The remainder of the abstract explores the variables affecting heat transfer in sedimentary basins. It emphasises how crucial lithology, rock features, and fluid properties are in controlling the basin's thermal conductivity and diffusivity. Also covered is how tectonic processes, burial histories, and sedimentation rates affect the heat transmission regime.

The abstract also discusses the significance of thermal boundary conditions in sedimentary basins. It acknowledges how the temperature distribution within the basin is influenced by surface heat flux, geothermal gradient, and heat movement from neighbouring areas. The impact of deep mantle activities and regional tectonic pressures on the temperature regime of sedimentary basins is also mentioned in the abstract. The abstract also recognises the use of geophysical and numerical modelling methods in understanding heat transfer in sedimentary basins. It highlights the want for interdisciplinary methods that integrate geological, geophysical, and geothermal data to create thorough models and comprehend the thermal evolution of these intricate systems.

Conduction, advection, and convection are three methods by which heat is transported in sedimentary basins. Conduction is the process of heat moving through solids like the silt and rocks that make up the fill of the basin. Advection describes the transfer of heat by a fluid flow, such as the movement of hydrocarbons or groundwater. Convection is the process of transferring heat by fluid movement caused by changes in density, which may be brought on by thermal gradients or buoyancy factors.

The thickness and makeup of sedimentary layers, the presence of fluids (such water or hydrocarbons), and geothermal gradients are only a few of the variables that affect the thermal structure of sedimentary basins. The maturation and migration of hydrocarbons as well as the potential for geothermal energy production may be significantly impacted by the temperature dispersion within a basin.

For evaluating the resource potential and geological dynamics of sedimentary basins, it is crucial to comprehend the mechanisms that regulate heat transfer and the consequent thermal patterns.Heat transport mechanisms in sedimentary basins have ramifications for resources as well as other geological phenomena. They contribute to the formation of subsurface pressure gradients, fluid movement (including groundwater and hydrocarbons), and the formation of geological features like faults and folds. Heat transfer may affect the porosity, permeability, and general reservoir quality of sedimentary rocks by altering their diagenesis and diagenesis-related properties.

A multidisciplinary approach incorporating geological, geophysical, and computational modelling methods is required to study heat transmission in sedimentary basins. Understanding the thermal characteristics and gradients within basins is possible because to geophysical techniques like heat flow measurements and thermal imaging. Thermal processes may be simulated and predicted using numerical modelling, which is based on the laws of heat conduction and fluid flow.

In general, deciphering the intricate connections between heat, fluids, and geological processes depends on our ability to comprehend heat transport in sedimentary basins. It shapes our knowledge of Earth's subsurface dynamics and enables educated decision-making in a variety of sectors, from energy exploration to geological hazard assessment. It offers insights on the thermal history, development, and resource potential of basins.

DISCUSSION

Geothermal research and understanding the thermal development of the Earth's crust both benefit from a knowledge of heat transfer in sedimentary basins. The subject of heat transport in sedimentary basins includes a number of procedures and elements that have an impact on how heat is distributed and moved across these basins. Here are some important things to think about:

Conduction:

Conduction is the physical exchange of heat between two materials. Heat is carried through the sedimentary rocks that make up the basin fill, as well as the foundation rocks underneath them, in sedimentary basins. The rate of heat transport is significantly influenced by the thermal conductivity of these rocks. Because sedimentary rocks typically have poorer thermal conductivities than crystalline foundation rocks, heat conduction within the basin fill proceeds more slowly [4]–[6].

Advection:

The term "advection" describes the transfer of heat by fluid motion. Heat transfer in sedimentary basins may be impacted by fluid movement, such as groundwater circulation or hydrothermal activity. Conduction's effects may be strengthened or weakened by advection. For instance, heat may be introduced into the basin through hot fluid circulation, increasing the basin's total thermal budget. On the other hand, the passage of colder fluids may remove heat from the basin and lessen the temperature disparity there.

Radiative Heat Transfer:

Thermal radiation emission and absorption are both a part of radiative heat transfer. Radiative heat transport often plays a smaller role in sedimentary basins than conduction and advection. Even so, it may still play a role in the transfer of heat, particularly in places with significant geothermal gradients or large levels of radioactive heat generation in the rocks.

Thermal Conductivity Variations:

The composition, porosity, and fluid content of rocks may all affect how well they transport heat. The lithology of sedimentary basins often displays heterogeneity, with alternating layers of various rock types and differing levels of compaction and cementation. These differences in thermal conductivity may form thermal conduits or barriers that affect how heat moves through the basin and where it is distributed.

Geothermal Gradient:

The rate at which temperature rises with depth in the Earth's crust is known as the geothermal gradient. The thermal conductivity of the rocks, the heat flow from the underlying mantle, and the thermal history of the basin all have an impact on the geothermal gradient in sedimentary basins. differences in subsurface temperatures are caused by differences in geothermal gradients, which may range dramatically within the same basin and across different regions of the same basin.

Heat Generation and Basin Tectonics:

Heat transfer in sedimentary basins may be impacted by tectonic processes such as basin subsidence and uplift. By encouraging the burying of sediments and minimising heat loss via conduction, basin subsidence may improve heat preservation. Additionally, tectonic movement and faulting may open up channels for fluid circulation, which can affect heat transfer and affect how thermal anomalies are distributed across the basin.

The investigation of geothermal energy, the maturation and migration of hydrocarbons, and the comprehension of the thermal history of sedimentary rocks all depend on a knowledge of heat transport in sedimentary basins. The thermal development and dynamics of sedimentary basins are a fascinating and difficult field of research because to the intricate interaction of conduction, advection, radiative heat transport, and geological variables.In a sedimentary basin, heat is carried together with the fluid, which is typically water, unless the fluid is transported parallel to the isotherm (Figure 1).

The flow rates are often too low during compaction-driven flow for this heat transfer to be substantial. If the velocity of porewater flow is very high, focused compaction-driven flow may result in a considerable heat transfer through advection. Although there is often relatively little water flowing upward in relation to the sediments, the porewater is typically sinking in relation to the bottom. In comparison to compaction-driven flow, meteoric water fluxes via aquifers into sedimentary basins are orders of magnitude quicker. In certain circumstances, the downward flow of cold meteoric water from mountains into sedimentary basins may significantly lessen the geothermal gradients [7]–[9].

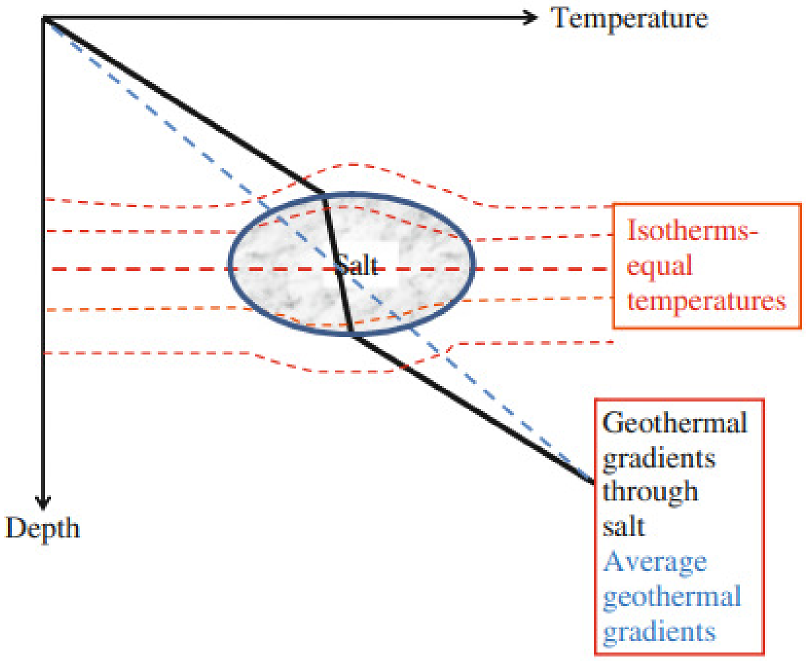


Figure 1: Geothermal gradients are strongly influenced by layers of salt or salt domes.

Heat Transported by Conduction and by Fluid Flow (Advection)

Conduction and fluid movement (advection) are the two main processes that move heat through the Earth's crust. Let's examine each of these methods and how it contributes to the movement of heat:

Conduction:

Heat is transferred through a solid medium through molecular contact and diffusion, or conduction. Heat conduction, as it relates to the Earth's crust, is the process through which thermal energy is transferred through the crust's minerals and rocks. Heat moves from areas of greater temperature to areas of lower temperature when there is a temperature gradient inside a solid substance. In the Earth's crust, vertical heat movement from deeper, hotter parts to shallower, cooler regions is mostly mediated via heat conduction. The rate at which temperature rises with depth, or the geothermal gradient, is affected. The capacity of rocks and minerals to transmit heat depends on their thermal conductivity. In general, igneous rocks, which have a greater thermal conductivity, transmit heat more effectively than sedimentary or metamorphic rocks.

However, particularly across vast distances and geologically long durations, heat conduction could not be enough to fully explain the heat transmission inside the crust. Here fluid flow becomes important.

Fluid Flow (Advection):

The movement of fluids, such as water, magma, or hydrothermal fluids, and the accompanying transfer of heat are both considered to be fluid flow. Advection describes the method of transferring heat via the fluid's actual physical motion. Because they can move and mix, fluids may convey heat energy over greater distances than solids. As a result, fluids can transport heat energy far more efficiently than solids. Different geological contexts, such as groundwater systems, hydrothermal systems, and volcanic processes, all exhibit advection-driven heat transfer. The flow of water in groundwater systems may transfer heat from deeper, hotter places to shallower locations. In hydrothermal systems, heat is transferred from geothermal reservoirs to the surface by flowing hot fluid via cracks and porous rocks. The ascent of magma during volcanic processes transfers heat from the Earth's mantle to the crust and surface.

Advection and fluid movement help conduction transmit heat more efficiently. While advection permits the transportation of heat over greater distances and may produce massive heat fluxes, conduction is useful for short-range heat transfer inside solids. The redistribution of heat in the Earth's crust is facilitated by the fluids' capacity to travel, mix, and alter their thermal characteristics.It's vital to remember that conduction and fluid flow often cooperate with one another rather than being mutually incompatible. The balance between these processes is influenced by a number of variables, including as the geological environment, rock permeability, fluid characteristics, and the existence of thermal anomalies or heat sources. In order to understand geothermal systems, the thermal development of the crust, and the distribution of heat resources, it is essential to comprehend how conduction and advection interact.

Importance of Heat Flow and Geothermal Gradients

An extremely significant factor that significantly affects geothermal gradients and rates of petroleum formation is heat flow. Additionally, it has a significant impact on the rates of chemical compaction of siliceous sediments, including quartz cementation. For the use of geothermal energy and heat pumps in the earth or in rocks, heat flow and geothermal gradients are also crucial. We have a heat flux from the basement into the underlying sedimentary sequence in sedimentary basins. The rate is based on the rock's composition in the basement. Granitic rocks with high potassium and uranium concentration will generate more heat than rocks with low potassium content, such as anorthosites and gabbro. Depending on the underlying rocks, the background heat flux offshore Norway varies dramatically.

Because of the radioactivity (high uranium concentration), organic-rich shales like the Upper Jurassic source rocks from the North Sea region may also supply a significant amount of heat. Since part of the heat flow is utilised to heat the sinking sediments, as we have shown above, high sedimentation rates will result in a decrease in the geothermal gradient. Because of the low temperature and the short geologic period (2–3 million years) required for the formation of petroleum, cold basins with quick subsidence and low geothermal gradients (20–25°C/km) must first deeply bury the source rocks. Little quartz cement will also form in reservoir sandstones as a consequence of the modest time/temperature integral. The time/temperature index may also be calculated using the quantity of quartz cement. The sediment density, which affects the pace of subsidence, the production of hydrocarbons, the quality of the reservoir, and the temperature history, is a crucial element in basin modelling.

Basin modelling is made more difficult by the possibility of geologic time-dependent changes to the heat flow and geothermal gradients. However, in sinking basins, the most significant geothermal gradients occur in the last 20–30% of subsidence. Even though the North Sea Basin may have experienced relatively high geothermal gradients in the late Jurassic, the source and reservoir rocks were only partially submerged at that time and temperatures were still relatively low, with the exception of areas near volcanic intrusions and hydrothermal activity [10]–[13].

CONCLUSION

In summary, a complex interplay of processes, including conduction and fluid movement (advection), is involved in heat transfer in sedimentary basins. Understanding heat transfer in sedimentary basins is essential for many geoscientific investigations and applications, such as the search for geothermal energy, the maturation of hydrocarbons, and basin development. Here are a few important ideas to sum up the conversation: In sedimentary basins, heat conduction occurs inside the rocks and sediments, causing vertical heat transfer from deeper to shallower locations. The rate of heat conduction is significantly influenced by the thermal conductivity of rocks. Heat transmission efficiency is affected by sedimentary rocks' typically poorer thermal conductivity as compared to crystalline basement rocks.

Heat transfer in sedimentary basins is influenced by fluid movement, including groundwater circulation and hydrothermal activity. When fluids move physically, they transmit heat via a process known as advection. The temperature distribution within the basin may be impacted by fluid movement, which can transfer heat from deeper, hotter parts to shallower locations.Geothermal gradient, which is the rate at which temperature increases with depth, is influenced by heat transfer within sedimentary basins. Localised changes in subsurface temperatures may result from departures from the typical geothermal gradient brought on by fluid movement.Heat is transported significantly through sedimentary basins via hydrothermal systems, which are characterised by the circulation of hot fluids through cracks and porous rock formations.

These systems have the ability to transfer heat from deep sources to the shallow crust, affecting the basin's geological processes and temperature distribution.

Overall, knowledge of conduction, fluid movement, geological variables, and the thermal history of the basin must be integrated to fully comprehend heat transmission in sedimentary basins. This knowledge is essential for a variety of applications, including as energy exploration, resource evaluation, and subsurface temperature prediction. Geoscientists may better comprehend Earth's geology and resources by investigating heat transfer in sedimentary basins and unravelling the thermal development and dynamics of these basins.

REFERENCES

[1] M. Scheck-Wenderoth *et al.*, “Models of heat transport in the Central European Basin System: Effective mechanisms at different scales,” *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2014, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2014.03.009.

[2] G. Garven, “Continental-scale groundwater flow and geologic processes,” *Annu. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci.*, 1995, doi: 10.1146/annurev.ea.23.050195.000513.

[3] K. Bjørlykke, “Heat transport in sedimentary basins,” in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_9.

[4] A. Balázs, L. Maţenco, D. Granjeon, K. Alms, T. François, and O. Sztanó, “Towards stratigraphic-thermo-mechanical numerical modelling: Integrated analysis of asymmetric extensional basins,” *Glob. Planet. Change*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.gloplacha.2020.103386.

[5] G. Garven, “Continental-Scale Groundwater Flow and Geologic Processes,” *Annu. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci.*, 1995, doi: 10.1146/annurev.earth.23.1.89.

[6] J. P. Raffensperger and D. Vlassopoulos, “The potential for free and mixed convection in sedimentary basins,” *Hydrogeol. J.*, 1999, doi: 10.1007/s100400050224.

[7] M. Person, J. P. Raffensperger, S. Ge, and G. Garven, “Basin-scale hydrogeologic modeling,” *Rev. Geophys.*, 1996, doi: 10.1029/95RG03286.

[8] Á. Tóth, A. Galsa, and J. Mádl-Szőnyi, “Significance of basin asymmetry and regional groundwater flow conditions in preliminary geothermal potential assessment – Implications on extensional geothermal plays,” *Glob. Planet. Change*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.gloplacha.2020.103344.

[9] S. Fuchs, N. Balling, and A. Förster, “Calculation of thermal conductivity, thermal diffusivity and specific heat capacity of sedimentary rocks using petrophysical well logs,” *Geophys. J. Int.*, 2015, doi: 10.1093/gji/ggv403.

[10] K. Bitzer, “Two-dimensional simulation of clastic and carbonate sedimentation, consolidation, subsidence, fluid flow, heat flow and solute transport during the formation of sedimentary basins,” *Comput. Geosci.*, 1999, doi: 10.1016/S0098-3004(98)00147-2.

[11] S. A. Bea, U. K. Mayer, and K. T. B. Macquarrie, “Reactive transport and thermo-hydro-mechanical coupling in deep sedimentary basins affected by glaciation cycles: Model development, verification, and illustrative example,” *Geofluids*, 2016, doi: 10.1111/gfl.12148.

[12] Y. Meshalkin, A. Shakirov, E. Popov, D. Koroteev, and I. Gurbatova, “Robust well-log based determination of rock thermal conductivity through machine learning,” *Geophys. J. Int.*, 2020, doi: 10.1093/gji/ggaa209.

[13] A. Rodríguez, P. Weis, J. M. Magnall, and S. A. Gleeson, “Hydrodynamic Constraints on Ore Formation by Basin-Scale Fluid Flow at Continental Margins: Modelling Zn Metallogenesis in the Devonian Selwyn Basin,” *Geochemistry, Geophys. Geosystems*, 2021, doi: 10.1029/2020GC009453.

CHAPTER 10

SUBSURFACE WATER AND FLUID FLOW IN SEDIMENTARY BASINS

Dr. Suman Paul, Associate Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,
Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - sumanpaul@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Sedimentary basins' geological processes and hydrological systems heavily depend on subsurface water and fluid movement. For a variety of applications, such as groundwater resource management, hydrocarbon exploration, and geological hazard assessments, it is crucial to comprehend the dynamics and behaviour of water and fluid movement within these basins. The main elements of subsurface water and fluid movement in sedimentary basins are summarised in this abstract. The importance of sedimentary basins as repositories for water resources, particularly aquifers, and as hosts for hydrocarbon reserves is highlighted in the abstract's first paragraph. It highlights the intricate interactions between geological features, sedimentary deposits, and fluid characteristics that govern the dynamics of subsurface water and fluid movement. The abstract emphasises the significance of comprehending fluid parameters, such as viscosity and density, in describing the behaviour of subsurface flow. It emphasises the need of using cutting-edge modelling tools to accurately depict the intricacies of fluid flow in sedimentary basins as well as the influence that geological heterogeneity and anisotropy have on flow routes.

KEYWORDS:

Formation Water, Meteoric Water, Porosity Permeability, Subsurface Water.

INTRODUCTION

Within sedimentary basins, geological and hydrological processes depend heavily on subsurface water and fluid movement. These sediment-filled basins, which were created over millions of years, act as significant storage areas for fluids that are found below the surface such as water and hydrocarbons. For a variety of applications, such as groundwater management, hydrocarbon exploration and production, and environmental research, it is crucial to comprehend the behaviour and dynamics of water and fluid flow within sedimentary basins. The main features and importance of subsurface water and fluid movement in sedimentary basins are briefly discussed in this introduction [1]–[3].

Formation and Structure of Sedimentary Basins:

Geologic depressions known as sedimentary basins are created as a result of tectonic, climatic, and erosional processes. Sediments that are accumulated over time and come from numerous sources, such as erosion, are what give them their distinctive characteristics. Geological formations such as faulted blocks, tilted strata, and folded formations may all be found in sedimentary basins. The basin's underlying water and fluid distribution and flow are influenced by these formations.

Importance of Subsurface Water and Fluid Flow:

Within sedimentary basins, subsurface water and fluid movement have a profound impact on both natural and human activity. Groundwater resources are significant supplies of freshwater for household, agricultural, and industrial uses. They are kept in the pore spaces of sedimentary rocks. Energy exploration and production depend on the flow of fluids, especially hydrocarbon fluids like oil and gas, which has a significant impact on the economic growth of many places. Furthermore, environmental studies, contaminant assessments, and remediation attempts all depend on a thorough knowledge of subsurface water and fluid movement.

Sedimentary basin hydrogeology:

Sedimentary basin hydrogeology focuses on the investigation of subsurface water transport and storage. It entails looking at the characteristics of aquifers, which are porous rock formations with water-storage and water-transmission capabilities. Groundwater flow and accessibility are influenced by the properties of aquifers in sedimentary basins, such as porosity, permeability, and hydraulic conductivity. Assessments of the sustainability and management of groundwater supplies within sedimentary basins are aided by hydrogeological research.

Fluid Flow and Reservoirs:

One of the most important aspects of finding and producing hydrocarbons is fluid movement within sedimentary basins. It is possible for hydrocarbons like oil and natural gas to accumulate and move around because reservoir rocks contain a lot of porosity and permeability. Hydrocarbon reservoir productivity and recoverability are governed by fluid flow characteristics such reservoir connectedness, permeability barriers, and trapping processes. Understanding the behaviour of fluid flow within reservoirs is essential for maximising resource extraction and production strategy optimisation.

Subsurface Fluid Flow Processes:

Pressure gradients, buoyancy effects, capillary forces, and geological structures are only a few of the mechanisms that have an impact on subsurface fluid flow in sedimentary basins. Through porous and fractured rocks, fluid flow may move both vertically and horizontally, driven by variations in fluid pressure and hydraulic gradients. The distribution and connection of subsurface fluids may be impacted by the existence of faults and fractures, which can function as conduits or barriers to fluid movement.

Fluid flow and subsurface water movement in sedimentary basins are dynamic phenomena with significant effects on geological, hydrological, and resource-related operations. Understanding the movement, storing, and distribution of groundwater and hydrocarbon fluids within these basins is made easier by the study of subsurface water and fluid dynamics. In sedimentary basin contexts, it plays a crucial part in groundwater management, hydrocarbon exploration, and environmental evaluations, supporting sustainable resource utilisation and efficient decision-making [4].

DISCUSSION

In sedimentary basins, water occupies the majority of the pore spaces. The majority of the knowledge we have on fluid flow in sedimentary basins is come from the makeup of water and the pressure gradients in the water phase, with oil and gas being the exceptions. Therefore, it's crucial to describe and comprehend the differences in these fluids' composition. While all porewater may be referred to as subsurface water, formation water or oil field brines are more often used to describe the water that is examined from exploration wells or created during oil production.

For a variety of useful applications, the subsurface water's composition may provide crucial information:

1. The water composition may provide details about the water's source and the basin's fluid flow pattern.
2. Variations in the composition of water with regard to salinity or isotopic content may provide crucial information on communication (permeability) over obstacles like faults or shale layers.
3. Information about the rock units from which the water is being drained may be found in the composition of the water generated along with the oil. The composition of the injected saltwater differs from that of the formation water when water injection is applied to a reservoir, and this may be utilised to assess if there has been a breakthrough of the injected water to the production well.
4. The density of the water column, which is necessary to understand and calibrate the fluid pressure data from wells, is determined by the water composition.
5. The calibration of well logs depends on the content and resistivity of the water. It is essential to know the resistivity in order to calculate the formation factor F, which is the ratio of the resistivity of the formation water to that of the whole fluid-saturated rock.

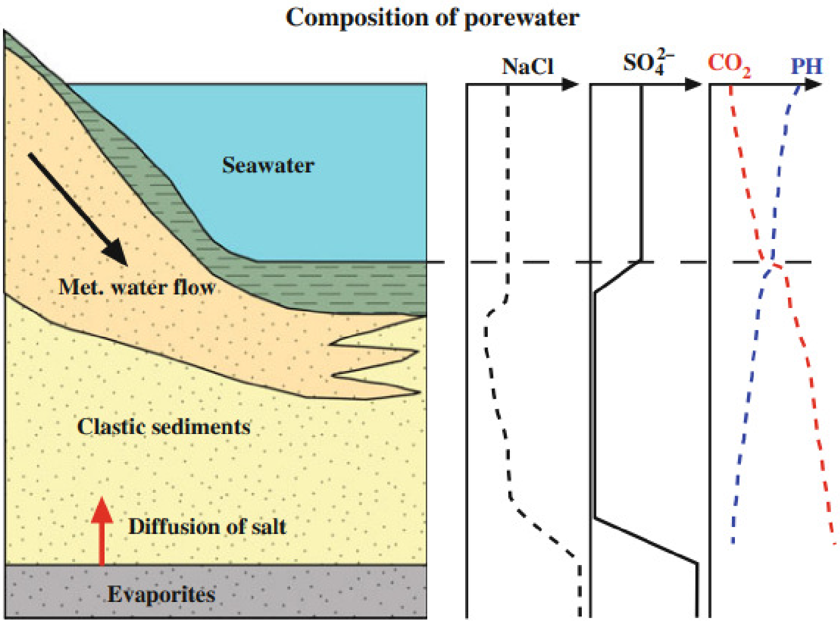


Figure 1: Simplified illustration of how the composition of porewater is influenced by reaction near the seafloor and supply of freshwater into sedimentary basins from land areas.

Long assumed to be the primordial saltwater, the water buried with the sediments is referred to as connate water. This is a bad word since the origin of this water is quite complicated, and it has been discovered that meteoric water has a considerably greater impact on sedimentary basins than previously thought [5]–[7]. Additionally, saltwater undergoes large compositional changes as soon as it is buried. The sulphate-reducing zone experiences the first important alteration, the removal of sulphate ions (Figures 1 and 2).

In general, subsurface waters come from:

1. Marine water that was buried with the sediments.
2. Meteoric water, a kind of groundwater (originally rainfall) that may travel from onshore to far offshore.
3. Water that is released when minerals, such as gypsum or clay minerals like smectite and kaolinite, dehydrate.
4. Water introduced by igneous activity that is hydrothermal. Additionally known as juvenile water.

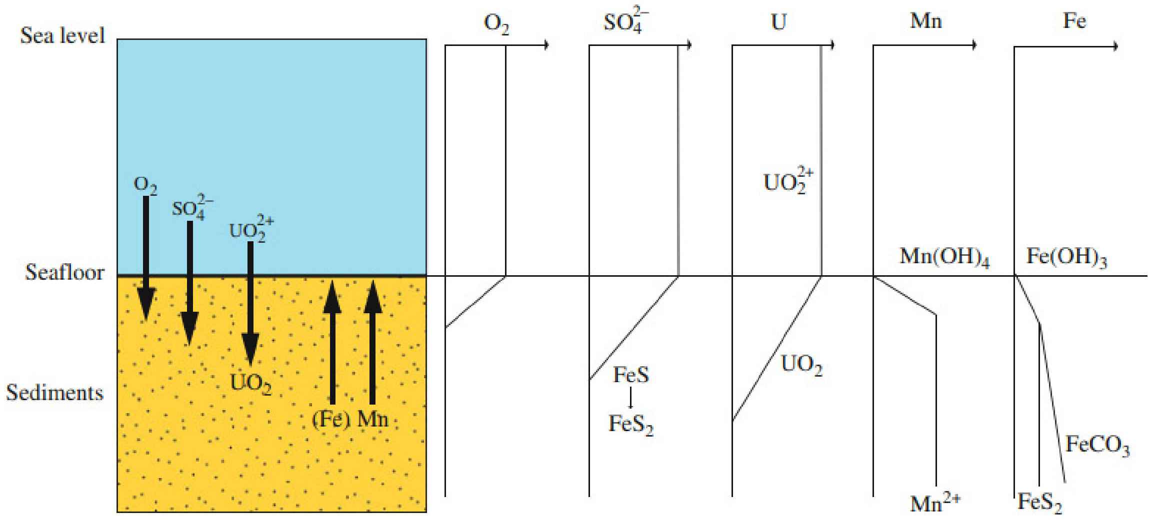


Figure 2: Only a few centimetres below the seafloor there are important reactions between the seawater, which is normally oxidising, and reducing porewater.

Composition of Formation Water

Water that is naturally present in the pore spaces of subterranean rock formations, often found in sedimentary basins, is referred to as "formation water." Due to its prolonged interaction with the rock matrix, it differs from other forms of water like surface water or groundwater. The geology of the formation, the depth at which it is found, and the processes that have shaped its chemistry may all have an impact on the composition of formation water. The following essential elements are often present in formation water:

Salinity:

Salinity, or the presence of dissolved salts and minerals, characterises formation water in most cases. In shallow freshwater-bearing formations, formation water has a relatively low salinity, whereas deeper formations have a higher salinity. Although calcium (Ca2+), magnesium

(Mg^{2+}), potassium (K^+), and bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) ions as well as chloride (Cl^-) and sodium (Na^+) are also sometimes found in formation water, they are less common [8]–[10].

Trace Elements:

Trace elements, which are present in minuscule amounts, may be found in formation water. These substances may have their origins in the formation's rocks and minerals as well as via chemical reactions and interactions with fluids throughout time. The trace elements iron (Fe), manganese (Mn), strontium (Sr), boron (B), and lithium (Li) are often discovered in formation water.

Dissolved Gases:

Dissolved gases may also be present in formation water; their composition and concentration will vary based on a number of circumstances. Methane (CH_4), carbon dioxide (CO_2), nitrogen (N_2), hydrogen sulphide (H_2S), and different hydrocarbon gases are typical gases found in formation water. These gas concentrations may be a sign of the existence of fossil fuel reserves or other geological processes.

pH and Alkalinity:

Depending on the regional geology and geochemical processes, formation water may have a pH that ranges from acidic to alkaline. The dissolved minerals and their capacity as buffers have an impact on alkalinity, which measures the water's ability to neutralise acids.

Isotopic Composition:

Certain elements in formation water have isotopic compositions that may provide information about the water's origin and past. For instance, the origin and mixing of water from various sources, such as meteoric water or prehistoric saltwater, may be determined using the isotopes of the elements hydrogen (D and ^1H) and oxygen (^{18}O and ^{16}O). It is crucial to keep in mind that within sedimentary basins, various formations, locations, and depths might have drastically varied formation water compositions. Understanding the chemical development of subsurface habitats, groundwater research, oil and gas exploration, and other sectors all depend on the ability to characterise the composition of formation water. The reservoir characteristics, geochemical processes, and possible interactions with other subsurface fluids may all be learned through a thorough examination of formation water.

Composition of Porewater in an Oil Field

Porewater, which is present in the oil field with the oil, may be analysed to learn more about fluid movement and oil migration. Salinity and chemical composition discrepancies within a reservoir's compartments may indicate a lack of diffusion and fluid movement between them. In addition to variations in the composition of the oil, the isotopic composition of the formation water may also serve to identify levels of communication in a reservoir. For this, strontium isotopes have been used. If there are significant variations in the composition of the oil across an oil field, this information may be used to track the contribution of the various components throughout production. Freshwater may be utilised for water injection into the reservoir during onshore production. Seawater is pumped off-shore, however it differs significantly in composition from the formation water.

Except in strongly salinized porewater near evaporites, the quantity of solids in solution are quite modest at any one moment. Since most silicates and carbonate minerals are not very soluble, the solid phases nearly entirely regulate the porewater composition of sedimentary basins. Porewater in sedimentary basins often demonstrates stratification in terms of salinity and isotopic content, which prevents porewater from being mixed thoroughly. Similar to how the composition of oil reveals information about the oil's source, the composition of formation water in reservoirs may provide important details about the source of the water and communication within the reservoir.

Fluid Flow in Sedimentary Basins

Because it affects how pore pressures in oil and gas as well as the aqueous phase are distributed, fluid flow in sedimentary basins is crucial. Drilling for wells might potentially be dangerous because of high pore pressure. Solids in solution as well as heat may be transported through fluid movement (advection) and diffusion in the fluid phases. The main distinction between these two forms of flow is that fluids may flow via fractures or through the pore network in the rock matrix. The chapter's discussion of the variables influencing fluid flow in sedimentary basins will take place here. The movement of fluids including water, hydrocarbons, and gases within the underlying rock formations of sedimentary basins is referred to as fluid flow in sedimentary basins. The distribution of resources, the movement of fluids, and the development of the basin are all impacted by this fluid flow, which is essential to many geological and hydrological processes. The following are some significant characteristics and processes of fluid movement in sedimentary basins:

Porosity and Permeability:

The reservoir rocks' characteristics, in particular their porosity and permeability, influence fluid flow in sedimentary basins. The quantity of pore space present in a rock is referred to as its porosity, whilst the capacity for fluid movement across linked pore spaces is referred to as its permeability. Sandstones and fractured rocks, which have high porosity and permeability, provide passageways for fluids, promoting fluid flow.

Pressure Gradients:

Pressure gradients, or variances in fluid pressure, are what cause fluid movement in sedimentary basins. Pressure gradients may be brought on by a number of things, such as tectonic forces, the compaction of sedimentary layers, and hydrostatic pressure. Within the basin, fluid flow channels are created when fluids prefer to go from places of greater pressure to areas of lower pressure.

Darcy's Law:

Darcy's law, which defines the flow of fluids through porous material, is used to describe fluid flow in sedimentary basins. Darcy's law states that the rate of fluid flow (Q) is inversely related to the fluid's viscosity () and is proportional to the permeability (k) and hydraulic gradient (h/l). This law offers a numerical comprehension of fluid flow rates and the variables that affect them.

Aquitards and Aquifers:

Aquifers, which are rock formations with high porosity and permeability that serve as groundwater reservoirs, are often found in sedimentary basins. Large amounts of water may be stored and moved across the basin because to aquifers. Aquitards, on the other hand, are low-permeability layers that obstruct fluid movement by serving as confining or barrier layers that divide and organise fluids within the basin.

Hydrocarbon Migration:

Since it is essential to the movement of hydrocarbons from source rocks to reservoirs, fluid flow is particularly significant in hydrocarbon exploration. Through coupled pore spaces and cracks, hydrocarbons may move as a result of pressure differences and buoyancy forces. To locate new reservoirs and improve exploration tactics, it is crucial to comprehend the processes and paths of hydrocarbon migration.

Fluid Interactions:

Complex interactions between various fluids, such as water, hydrocarbons, and gases, occur during fluid movement in sedimentary basins. These interactions may have an impact on the chemical processes, mineral precipitation, and mineral dissolution. The characteristics and make-up of the reservoir rocks may also change as a result of fluid-rock interactions, which can impact permeability and fluid flow patterns.

Geological Structures:

Faults, fractures, and folds in the earth's crust may all have a big effect on how fluid moves across sedimentary basins. By acting as conduits, faults and cracks allow liquids to pass through otherwise impermeable rock formations. Folds may alter how fluids accumulate and are distributed within a basin by acting as flow traps or obstructions. For a variety of purposes, such as groundwater management, hydrocarbon exploration and production, and environmental evaluations, it is essential to comprehend fluid movement in sedimentary basins. It aids in fluid behaviour prediction, reservoir identification, and extraction strategy optimisation. Geoscientists may learn more about the dynamic processes that create sedimentary basins and their resources by researching fluid flow mechanisms and patterns.

Fluid Potentials

Concepts related to fluid potentials are crucial in the investigation of fluid movement inside geological formations. They discuss the many energy or force factors that influence or govern how fluids travel through porous mediums. Understanding fluid potentials is essential for analysing and forecasting fluid flow behaviour in a variety of engineering and geological applications. Here are a few significant fluid potentials:

Potential Pressure:

The force that propels fluid flow is known as the pressure potential, commonly referred to as the hydraulic potential or fluid pressure. It has to do with the pressure of fluid in a porous material. The pressure gradient causes fluids to flow naturally from locations of greater pressure to areas of lower pressure. Using Darcy's law, the pressure potential is often used to determine the direction and rate of fluid flow.

Gravitational Potential:

The potential energy connected to the elevation or height differential of fluids inside a geological formation is referred to as the gravitational potential. Fluids travel vertically under the effect of gravity, flowing downhill due to the pull of gravity. In addition to the pressure potential, the gravitational potential may also influence the flow of fluids and is especially important in vertical or inclined formations.

Potential Capillary:

The surface tension and interfacial forces between fluids and porous media cause the capillary potential, also known as capillary pressure. It is especially important when two incompatible fluids, like water and oil, coexist in a porous material. The relative distribution and motion of the fluids are controlled by capillary potential, whereas fluid saturation and displacement are affected by capillary pressure.

Chemical Potential:

The concentration gradient of solutes or dissolved molecules inside a fluid is related to the chemical potential, also known as solute potential or concentration potential. It is crucial to the movement of solutes across porous media, including the flow of groundwater and the transfer of contaminants. The mobility and distribution of solutes are impacted by the chemical potential's effects on solute diffusion and advection.

Electrical Potential:

When fluids come into contact with charged particles or electrical fields, the electrical potential, also known as the electrostatic potential or electric potential, is important. It participates in electrokinetic processes that affect fluid flow and solute transport in certain geological formations, such as electroosmosis and electrophoresis.

For the purpose of analysing fluid flow behaviour and forecasting the movement and distribution of fluids within geological formations, it is crucial to comprehend and quantify these various fluid potentials. Scientists and engineers may more fully understand the variables affecting fluid flow, improve resource extraction techniques, and evaluate the environmental effects of fluid movement in diverse subsurface systems by taking into account the interaction between these potentials.

Meteoric Water Flow

The groundwater table, which is typically higher than the surface of the sea, determines the potentiometric head of meteoric water (freshwater). Thus, from the coasts, fresh porewater will flow into marine sedimentary basins (Figure 3). Freshwater lenses float atop more saline porewater along the coast and under islands like an iceberg in the water. The difference in density between freshwater and saltwater determines the depth to which freshwater will permeate.

The movement of water originating from precipitation, such as rain or snow, through the Earth's subsurface is referred to as meteoric water flow. It has a significant impact on groundwater recharge, aquifer replenishment, and the general flow of water within a specific area, contributing to the hydrological cycle. Some significant elements of meteoric water flow. When it rains, some of the water is caught by the plants, collected as puddles on the ground, or evaporates back into the atmosphere. But a significant amount of the water seeps through the soil and other porous subsurface materials and seeps into the earth. Infiltration rates are influenced by things like soil type, plant cover, slope gradient, and how much and how long it rains. The unsaturated zone, often referred to as the vadose zone, is where meteoric water enters after penetrating the earth. This area is made up of soil, sediment, and rock components that are not completely saturated with water and is situated between the land's surface and the water table. As a storage area for meteoric water, the unsaturated zone promotes additional percolation and downward motion.

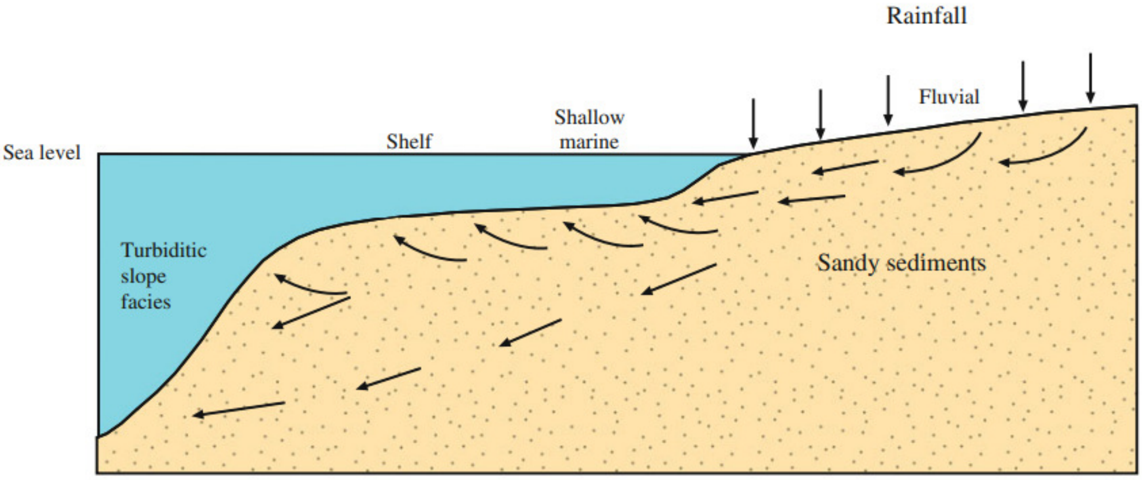


Figure 3: Flow of meteoric water into sedimentary basins.
The fluid flux will decrease away from the coastline.

The downward flow of meteoric water through the unsaturated zone is referred to as percolation. Because of gravity and the porosity and permeability of the geological materials, it happens when water infiltrates further into the subsurface. The process of replenishing groundwater resources occurs when percolated water enters the water table, raising its level and adding to the total groundwater supply. This process is referred to as recharge. The subterranean line between the saturated and unsaturated zones is known as the water table. It reflects the water saturation level at which the pore spaces of subsurface materials are completely filled. Evapotranspiration, groundwater exploitation, and fluctuations in meteoric water intake all cause changes in the water table. It is a crucial point of reference for comprehending the extent and accessibility of groundwater resources. Aquifers, which are porous rock or sediment layers with the capacity to store and transfer water, are where meteoric water flows after it reaches the saturation zone and enters the groundwater system. The hydraulic gradient (slope of the water table), aquifer characteristics (porosity and permeability), and geological features (faults, fractures) that may either promote or obstruct flow are all elements that affect groundwater flow.

When meteoric water infiltrates and transforms into groundwater, it may ultimately be released into a variety of surface water bodies, including rivers, lakes, streams, and the ocean. Natural springs, seepage into rivers, or baseflow all result from this discharge, which keeps streams flowing during dry spells.

The hydrological cycle depends on meteoric water flow, which helps ensure the sustainability and availability of water supplies. For managing water supplies, evaluating the sustainability of groundwater, and foreseeing the effects of climate change on regional water availability, it is crucial to comprehend meteoric water flow. In order to analyse meteoric water flow patterns, predict recharge rates, and assure sustainable water management practices, hydrogeological investigations and modelling methods are applied [11], [12].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, sedimentary basins' underlying water and fluid movement are essential to many geological and technical processes. Porosity, permeability, pressure gradients, and geological formations are some of the elements that affect how water and other fluids travel through the subsurface. For a variety of applications, such as groundwater management, hydrocarbon exploration and production, and environmental evaluations, understanding these processes is essential. Subsurface water flow includes groundwater flow inside porous rock formations, percolation into aquifers, and meteoric water movement across the unsaturated zone. A critical barrier that marks the change from the unsaturated to the saturated zone is the water table. Groundwater resources may be replenished by recharge from meteoric water, and groundwater flow can result in discharge into bodies of surface water.

In sedimentary basins, fluid flow may include the passage of gases, hydrocarbons, and water. Fluids move from locations of greater pressure to areas of lower pressure as a result of pressure differentials. A foundation for calculating fluid flow rates based on permeability and hydraulic gradients is provided by Darcy's law.

Faults and cracks in the earth's crust may have a big impact on the connectivity and flow paths of fluids. It is crucial to comprehend subterranean water and fluid flow in order to manage water resources, analyse the environmental effects of fluid movement, and optimise resource extraction tactics. Hydrogeological investigations, modelling strategies, and data analysis aid in fluid behaviour prediction, reservoir identification, and the adoption of sustainable water management practises. Overall, the study of subsurface water and fluid movement in sedimentary basins offers insightful knowledge into the dynamic processes forming the subsurface of our planet, enabling responsible and effective resource management.

REFERENCES

[1] K. Bjørlykke, “Subsurface water and fluid flow in sedimentary basins,” in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_10.

[2] R. E. B. Araújo *et al.*, “Structural and sedimentary discontinuities control the generation of karst dissolution cavities in a carbonate sequence, Potiguar Basin, Brazil,” *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2020.104753.

[3] C. BÖttner *et al.*, “Focused methane migration formed pipe structures in permeable sandstones: Insights from uncrewed aerial vehicle-based digital outcrop analysis in Varna, Bulgaria,” *Sedimentology*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/sed.12871.

[4] A. Zech, B. Zehner, O. Kolditz, and S. Attinger, “Impact of heterogeneous permeability distribution on the groundwater flow systems of a small sedimentary basin,” *J. Hydrol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.jhydrol.2015.11.030.

[5] M. Person, J. McIntosh, V. Bense, and V. H. Remenda, “Pleistocene hydrology of North America: The role of ice sheets in reorganizing groundwater flow systems,” *Rev. Geophys.*, 2007, doi: 10.1029/2006RG000206.

[6] M. R. Fleming, B. M. Adams, T. H. Kuehn, J. M. Bielicki, and M. O. Saar, "Increased Power Generation due to Exothermic Water Exsolution in CO2 Plume Geothermal (CPG) Power Plants," *Geothermics*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.geothermics.2020.101865.

[7] V. F. Bense, H. Kooi, G. Ferguson, and T. Read, "Permafrost degradation as a control on hydrogeological regime shifts in a warming climate," *J. Geophys. Res. Earth Surf.*, 2012, doi: 10.1029/2011JF002143.

[8] C. Berndt, "Focused fluid flow in passive continental margins," *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences.* 2005. doi: 10.1098/rsta.2005.1666.

[9] S. A. Flewelling and M. Sharma, "Constraints on upward migration of hydraulic fracturing fluid and brine," *Groundwater*, 2014, doi: 10.1111/gwat.12095.

[10] K. L. English *et al.*, "Remobilization of deep basin brine during exhumation of the Illizi Basin, Algeria," *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2016.08.016.

[11] E. R. Camp, T. E. Jordan, M. J. Hornbach, and C. A. Whealton, "A probabilistic application of oil and gas data for exploration stage geothermal reservoir assessment in the Appalachian Basin," *Geothermics*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.geothermics.2017.09.001.

[12] K. Kret, T. Tsuji, C. Chhun, and O. Takano, "Distributions of gas hydrate and free gas accumulations associated with upward fluid flow in the Sanriku-Oki forearc basin, northeast Japan," *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2020.104305.

CHAPTER 11

INTRODUCTION TO GEOMECHANICS: STRESS AND STRAININ SEDIMENTARY BASINS

Dr. Deepjyoti Mech, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - deepjyotimech@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Soft clays, loose silts, and sands are present at shallow depths in sedimentary basins, but at higher depths, diagenetic processes have changed these sediments into claystones, shales, siltstones, and sandstones. In addition to significant hydro-mechanical characteristics changing during burial, erosion, and uplift, sedimentary rocks constantly suffer physical and chemical changes as a function of burial depth, temperature, and time. Predicting the scope and distribution of sediment characteristics and stresses in the basin requires a knowledge of these processes.

The rock's reaction to changes in the stress field brought on by drilling and petroleum production depends on the in-situ stress situation. The major purpose of the development of soil and rock mechanics (geomechanics) was to address engineering issues related to landslides and surface and subsurface building. These are often far shallower than a petroleum reservoir would be. Here, we'll concentrate on a few geomechanics-related topics that are very important to petroleum geologists.

KEYWORDS:

Effective Stress, Horizontal Stress, Rocks Sediments, Stress Regime.

INTRODUCTION

The study of the mechanical behaviour of rocks and soils in response to applied stresses is known as geomechanics. Geomechanics focuses on comprehending the stress and strain distribution within the subsurface and its consequences for the behaviour of the rocks and fluids in the setting of sedimentary basins. Numerous geological processes, such as sedimentation, deformation, and fluid movement, depend heavily on stress and strain. An overview of stress and strain in sedimentary basins is given below:

1. Stress:

The force per unit area delivered to a material is referred to as stress. Stresses in sedimentary basins may come from tectonic forces, sediments below, and fluid pressure, among other things. In geomechanics, there are three primary forms of stress:

Compressive Stress:

When forces are used to compress or squeeze a material, compression stress results. Compressive stresses in sedimentary basins are often linked to tectonic processes such regional compression or converging plate borders.

Tensile Stress:

When pressures are used to stretch or tear apart a material, tensile tension results. Tensile strains often occur in extensional tectonic environments, such as rift zones or divergent plate borders.

Shear Stress:

When forces work parallel to a certain plane inside a material, shear stress results, causing one piece to move or deform in relation to another. Shear stresses may be caused by tectonic forces, gravity loads, or fluid movement, among other things.

2. **Strain:**

The term "strain" describes the deformation or shape change that results from applied stresses. Different forms of strain may be applied to rocks and sediments in sedimentary basins, including:

Elastic Strain:

When stresses are applied to a material within its elastic range, elastic strain, a reversible kind of deformation, results. The material returns to its normal form when the stress has been relieved. Understanding rock behaviour under temporary loading and unloading depends on elastic strain.

Plastic Strain:

Stresses that are greater than a material's elastic limit cause permanent deformation, which is referred to as plastic strain. Plastic strain in sedimentary basins is often linked to the compaction and distortion of sediments brought on by the weight of underlying layers.

Brittle Strain:

When rocks or sediments crack or shatter under severe loads, brittle strain develops. Rock failure and fracture zones, such as fault zones, exhibit brittle deformation.

Seismic interpretation, wellbore stability analysis, and reservoir characterization are just a few of the applications that depend on an understanding of stress and strain in sedimentary basins. It assists in making predictions about rock behaviour, spotting possible geohazards, and enhancing resource exploration and production methods. Geomechanical studies use methods including numerical modelling, field measurements, and laboratory testing to measure and analyse the stress and strain distributions within sedimentary basins [1], [2].

DISCUSSION

Consolidation is the term used in engineering literature to describe the loss of porosity (volumetric compaction) caused by rising effective stress over time, while secondary compression or creep is used to describe compaction caused by continuous effective stress. In contrast to shallow sediment compaction, deep sedimentary basin compaction has historically occurred across geologic time periods at relatively low strain rates and greater temperatures. As a result, there are significant impacts of mineral particle disintegration, precipitation, and cementation in addition to mechanical compaction. Chemical compaction is the method in question.

The quality of the petroleum reservoir depends on the porosity and permeability of the sediments, which are crucial inputs for basin modelling. Compaction influences the porosity, density, and permeability of the sediments. Sedimentary basins' physical characteristics are influenced by the processes of mechanical and chemical sediment compaction (diagenetic processes), which are also crucial for comprehending seismic velocity records and seismic features [3]–[5].

Subsurface Fluid Pressure and Effective Stress Condition

Geomechanics principles like subsurface fluid pressure and effective stress condition are crucial because they have a big impact on how rocks and sediments behave in sedimentary basins. For many geological and engineering applications, understanding the link between fluid pressure and effective stress is essential. Let's investigate these ideas in more detail:

Fluid Subsurface Pressure:

The pressure that fluids like water or hydrocarbons exert inside the pore spaces of rocks or sediments in the subsurface is referred to as subsurface fluid pressure. The depth of the formation, the fluid's density and viscosity, and the connectedness of the pore network are only a few examples of the variables that might affect fluid pressure. Fluid pressure in sedimentary basins is affected by a number of variables, such as sediment compaction, hydrocarbon production, and fluid intake from meteoric water.

Effective Stress:

Effective stress, which does not include the influence of pore fluid pressure, is the stress that is transmitted between the solid grains or particles that make up the skeleton of a rock or sediment. It stands in for the real force that controls how the material deforms and behaves mechanically. The difference between the total stress and the pore fluid pressure called the effective stress. It establishes the stability and tensile strength of rocks and sediments.

Pore Pressure:

The pressure that a fluid creates within a rock or sediment's pore spaces is known as pore pressure. It is the hydrostatic pressure brought on by the liquids' presence. Pore pressure may be the same as, lower than, or greater than the fluid's hydrostatic pressure depending on the fluid flow, interactions with the rock, and compaction of the sediment. The stability of geological formations may be greatly impacted by variations from hydrostatic pore pressure.

Overpressure:

When the pore pressure exceeds the hydrostatic pressure anticipated at a certain depth, overpressure, sometimes referred to as anomalous or excess pressure, takes place. In hydrocarbon systems, where fluid creation and retention may result in higher pore pressures, overpressure is often mentioned. Drilling operations may be impacted by overpressure, which can also change the characteristics of the rock and impair formation stability.

Geomechanics heavily relies on the connection between fluid pressure and effective stress. Fluid pressure variations may modify the effective stress state of rocks and sediments, affecting their permeability, deformation behaviour, and strength. Reduced effective stress may be caused by increased fluid pressure, which might result in mechanical instability and failure. On the other hand, drops in fluid pressure may boost effective stress and improve the toughness of rocks [6]–[8]. For several applications, such as wellbore stability studies, reservoir engineering, and geotechnical evaluations, it is crucial to comprehend the distribution of subsurface fluid pressure and effective stress. It aids in the prediction of rock behaviour, the detection of possible geohazards such subsidence or fault reactivation, and the optimisation of engineering layouts in sedimentary basins.

Overall, the interaction between effective stress conditions and subsurface fluid pressure is a key factor in geomechanics and affects the mechanical behaviour and stability of rocks and sediments within sedimentary basins.

Normally Consolidated Versus Overconsolidated Sediments

Normally Consolidated (NC) refers to a layer in a sediment sequence that has never throughout the layer's geological history been exposed to a greater vertical effective stress than it is now. The sediment is referred to as overconsolidated (OC) because it has been preloaded if, on the other hand, it has been subjected to higher effective stresses, such as those caused by previous glacial loading, higher overburden that has since been eroded, and/or historically lower pore pressures than those present. The overconsolidation ratio (OCR) is the proportion of the current stress to the previous maximum effective vertical stress.

In siliceous sediments, mechanical compaction mechanisms predominate over chemical compaction at relatively shallow depths in a sedimentary basin (less than 2–3 km, 70–90C). Chemical compaction techniques take control in managing the pace of compaction at greater temperatures (deeper burying). However, at shallow depths, carbonate sediments may overconsolidate and become cemented. Depending on the size of the OCR, the hydro-mechanical characteristics at shallow depths for a regularly consolidated sediment sequence and an overconsolidated one may be significantly different. The compressibility and permeability of the overconsolidated silt are often substantially lower, but the shear strength is noticeably greater. The lateral stresses in overconsolidated sediments may be greater than those in typically consolidated sediments, as will be detailed below.

Horizontal Stresses in Sedimentary Basins

Horizontal strains in sedimentary basins are a crucial part of geomechanical investigations and have a big impact on many different engineering and geological processes. For wellbore stability studies, hydraulic fracturing procedures, and the assessment of fault and fracture behaviour, it is essential to comprehend the distribution and magnitude of horizontal stresses. The following are significant elements regarding horizontal stresses in sedimentary basins:

Tectonic Forces:

Tectonic forces operating on the Earth's crust largely affect horizontal stresses in sedimentary basins. These forces may result from regional compression, extensional processes, or plate tectonics. Faults, folds, and other geological structures arise as a consequence of tectonic forces that cause the deformation and structural evolution of sedimentary basins.

Principal Stresses:

Principal stresses, which stand for the highest and lowest stress directions inside a rock or sediment, are often used to characterise horizontal stresses. The maximum horizontal stress (H) and the lowest horizontal stress (h) are common names for the main horizontal stresses in sedimentary basins. For a better understanding of rock behaviour and fracture propagation, consider the direction and amplitude of these stresses.

Stress Regimes: S

Depending on their tectonic context, sedimentary basins may undergo various stress regimes. The three basic types of stress that are experienced are:

Compressive Stress Regime:

The maximum horizontal stress (H) in compressive stress regimes, such those seen in collisional or convergent tectonic settings, is higher than the lowest horizontal stress (h). Within sedimentary basins, this stress regime may cause thrust faults, folding, and compressional deformation.

Extensional Stress Regime:

The lowest horizontal stress (h) in extensional stress regimes, such as those seen in rift zones or divergent plate borders, is larger than the maximum horizontal stress (H). Normal faults, graben formations, and stretching of the sedimentary basin result from this stress regime.

Strike-Slip Stress Regime:

The greatest and lowest horizontal stresses (H and h), which occur in strike-slip stress regimes such as those seen near transform plate borders, are about identical. Strike-slip faults, shearing, and lateral displacement of rocks are features of this stress regime.

Stress Magnitudes:

Horizontal strains may have different intensities based on tectonic activity, depth, lithology, and pore fluid pressures, among other things. Measurements like borehole breakout analyses, hydraulic fracturing testing, and in situ stress measurements are often used to assess horizontal stresses. For wellbore stability analyses and hydraulic fracturing design in hydrocarbon reservoirs, the amplitude of horizontal strains is critical.

Stress Anisotropy:

The magnitudes and orientations of horizontal stresses may display anisotropic behaviour, which means that they may change with depth and position within a sedimentary basin. The existence of pre-existing fractures or joints, changes in the lithology and mechanical characteristics, and stress perturbations brought on by faulting are a few examples of causes for anisotropic stress situations.

Numerous geological and engineering applications need an understanding of the distribution and characteristics of horizontal stresses in sedimentary basins. It aids in fault behaviour and seismicity evaluation, wellbore stability prediction and management, and hydraulic fracturing operation optimisation. In order to quantify and analyse the horizontal stress conditions in sedimentary basins, geomechanical investigations, computer modelling, and field measurements are utilised. These methods provide important insights into the mechanical behaviour and deformation patterns of rocks and sediments.

Field Measurements of Horizontal Stress

For understanding the stress regime, determining stress magnitudes, and evaluating the mechanical behaviour of rocks and sediments, field measurements of horizontal stress in sedimentary basins are essential. The measurement of horizontal stresses in the field makes use of a variety of methodologies and techniques. These popular field measuring methods are listed below:

Hydraulic Fracturing:

Hydraulic fracturing, sometimes referred to as stress measuring or stress testing, is the process of injecting fluid under high pressure into a borehole in order to fracture the underlying rock. The direction and size of the lowest and maximum horizontal stresses may be identified by carefully monitoring the injection pressure and evaluating the orientation and propagation of the generated fractures. The oil and gas sector often use this technique because it offers immediate measurements of the in situ stress condition.

Borehole Breakout Analysis:

Borehole breakout happens when the pressures on the borehole wall cause localised collapse. The direction of the largest horizontal stress may be deduced by examining the size and orientation of the breakout characteristics, such as elongated fractures or spalled rock. By carefully examining wellbore photos, borehole breakout analysis may provide important details about the stress regime.

Hydraulic Tests:

In hydraulic testing, the pressure response of fluids put into a wellbore or the pressure changes brought on by pumping operations are measured. The lowest and maximum horizontal strains may be calculated by examining the pressure response and comparing it to theoretical models. In geotechnical and geothermal applications, hydraulic tests are often employed to evaluate stress situations.

Overcoring and Anelastic Strain Recovery (ASR):

A cylindrical rock sample is taken from a drill and overcored, which is controlled loading done in a lab. The in situ stress state, including the horizontal stresses, may be determined by monitoring the produced strains and stress variations throughout the loading and unloading cycles. Anelastic Strain Recovery (ASR) is a specialised laboratory method that enables the replication of stress conditions that are similar to those seen in situ.

Downhole Monitoring:

Installing equipment in boreholes to continually measure and record different characteristics, such as pressure, strain, and temperature, is known as downhole monitoring. These measurements may provide important information on how rocks respond to external loads and how stress conditions vary over time. In geotechnical and geomechanical research, downhole monitoring is often employed to evaluate the long-term behaviour of rocks and sediments.

It is important to keep in mind that field measurements of horizontal stress may have limits due to factors including the impact of regional geological heterogeneities, ambiguities in the interpretation of the data, and measurement scale. Therefore, to acquire a thorough knowledge of the stress regime and mechanical behaviour in sedimentary basins, a combination of field observations, laboratory testing, and numerical modelling is often used.

Deformation Properties of Sedimentary Rocks

Understanding sedimentary rocks' mechanical behaviour and reactivity to applied loads depends heavily on their deformation characteristics. Under different geological circumstances, these characteristics control how sedimentary rocks deform, fracture, and experience strain. Sedimentary rocks include the following significant deformation characteristics:

Elasticity:

When imposed pressures are removed, a material's capacity to regain its original form is said to be elastic. Sedimentary rocks often behave elastically within their elastic limits, which means they deform reversibly when subjected to minor loads but return to their initial shape after the tension has been removed. The stiffness and deformation response of sedimentary rocks are characterised by the elastic modulus, such as Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio.

Plasticity:

The capacity of a substance to experience persistent deformation without breaking is referred to as plasticity. When stressed beyond their elastic limits or under strong confining pressures, sedimentary rocks may behave plastically. Usually, processes including grain flattening, grain rearrangement, and compaction cause plastic deformation. Sediment compaction and the formation of sedimentary structures are two processes that benefit from the flexible behaviour of sedimentary rocks.

Fracture and Failure:

When the applied stresses are greater than the rock's strength limitations, sedimentary rocks may fracture and fail. Rock composition, bedding orientation, and stress levels are only a few examples of the variables that affect the mode and patterns of fracture. Tensional (opening mode), shear (slide mode), and compressional fractures are common kinds of fractures in sedimentary rocks. Rock permeability, fluid flow, and reservoir behaviour are all impacted by fractures.

Rheology:

Rheology is the study of the flow and deformation properties of materials. Depending on variables including temperature, pressure, and strain rate, sedimentary rocks display a variety of rheological behaviours. Brittle behaviour, which is defined by abrupt failure and restricted deformation, and ductile behaviour, which involves continuous and dispersed deformation, are two examples of rheological qualities. In order to comprehend the deformation history and flow behaviour of sedimentary rocks, it is crucial to understand their rheological characteristics.

Anisotropy:

In sedimentary rocks, anisotropy is the directional dependence of the deformation characteristics. Because of things like the preferred orientation of the grains, bedding planes, or sedimentary formations, sedimentary rocks may display mechanical anisotropy. The strength, deformation behaviour, and fracture patterns of rocks may all be impacted by anisotropy, which affects how they react to applied stresses.

Laboratory testing, field observations, and numerical modelling are all used to explore the deformation characteristics of sedimentary rocks. On the mechanical characteristics of sedimentary rocks, methods including uniaxial and triaxial compression tests, shear tests, and rock strength measurements provide useful information. For many applications, such as reservoir engineering, geotechnical evaluations, and structural geology research, it is essential to comprehend the deformation characteristics of sedimentary rocks.

Compaction in Sedimentary Basins

In sedimentary basins, compaction is a key process that is essential to the production and development of sedimentary rocks. It alludes to the mechanical compression and volume decrease of sediments as a result of the pressure of underlying layers. The buildup of sedimentary layers, the ejection of fluids, and the rearranging of grains within the sediment matrix are some of the variables that contribute to compaction. An overview of compaction in sedimentary basins is given below:

Sediment Accumulation:

Erosion, transit, and deposition are only a few of the processes that lead to the deposit of sediments in sedimentary basins. Over time, as successive layers of silt build up, the weight of the underlying deposits rises. The underlying sediments get compacted as the weight increases.

Porosity Reduction:

The porosity of sediments, which is the proportion of the rock volume filled by pore spaces, decreases as a result of compaction. The pore spaces between grains narrow under the weight of the underlying sediments, increasing the density of the sediments. The rock's ability to store and move fluids is impacted by this drop in porosity.

Grain Reorganisation:

Grain rearrangement occurs during compaction inside the sediment matrix. When sediments first form, the grains may be very mobile and loosely packed. The grains are rearranged during compaction, increasing how tightly packed and interlaced they are. Grain realignment and fabrics in the rock brought on by compaction are the results of this process.

Diagenesis:

Diagenesis, or the physical and chemical alterations that take place in sedimentary rocks when they are buried and go through burial diagenesis, is closely related to compaction. Diagenesis includes procedures including cementation, dissolution, recrystallization, and changes in the composition of minerals. One of the main diagenetic processes that impact sedimentary rocks is compaction.

Overpressure:

Within sedimentary basins, compaction may result in the creation of overpressure. The evacuation of pore fluids is sometimes hampered when sediments become denser, leading to an increase in pore fluid pressure. The formation and migration of hydrocarbons as well as fluid flow and rock strength are all affected by overpressure [9], [10]. Understanding the compaction process is crucial for a variety of engineering and geological applications. It affects the quality of reservoirs, porosity-permeability relationships, and how sedimentary basins respond to tectonic pressures. Laboratory tests, core analysis, and numerical modelling are used by geologists and engineers to characterise rock qualities, anticipate reservoir behaviour, and improve hydrocarbon exploration and production methods. The basic process of compaction causes the compression and volume decrease of sediments in sedimentary basins. It has an impact on diagenesis, porosity, grain arrangement, and the production of overpressure. Interpreting the characteristics and behaviour of sedimentary rocks within basins requires a thorough understanding of compaction [11], [12].

CONCLUSION

Mechanical compaction, which is the dominant compaction process in sinking sedimentary basins and has a significant impact on the porosity and hydro-mechanical characteristics of the sediment down to depths of 2-2.5 km, is brought on by an increase in effective vertical stresses. Due of the effects of dissolution, precipitation, and cementation at deeper depths and higher temperatures (>70 °C), chemical compaction mostly contributes to volume change and hydro-mechanical characteristics. However, at deeper depths, chemical compaction may occur in carbonate rocks. Petroleum exploration, production, and reservoir management depend on the size and distribution of stresses in sedimentary basins. Understanding in-situ stress is crucial during drilling, especially when drilling horizontally and deviating from the straight line. The transmission and interpretation of seismic signals, notably the S-waves, through sedimentary rocks are influenced by the strength and direction of stresses.

The effective stress v in the solid grain structure and the pressure in the fluid phase (porewater or petroleum) both contribute to the total vertical stress (v) of a rock sequence. Effective stresses must be calculated using accurate predictions of the fluid pore pressure, which is often higher than hydrostatic (overpressure). Although accurate predictions of horizontal stresses rely on field measurements like hydraulic fracturing experiments, there are semi-empirical formulas for the ratio between horizontal and vertical effective stresses. Leak-off tests, a streamlined process that is often used in the petroleum sector, are used to ascertain the size and direction of the lowest horizontal stress.

The mechanical and chemical compaction that leads to the virgin (in-situ) distribution of stresses in sedimentary basins often occurs over geological time. The changes in stresses that occur while oil is extracted from a reservoir are mostly mechanical and considerably more transient. Chemical activities in a carbonate reservoir may occur so quickly that, on that time scale, chemical compaction may also become important.

REFERENCES

[1] C. M. Sayers and P. M. T. M. Schutjens, “An introduction to reservoir geomechanics,” *Lead. Edge (Tulsa, OK)*, 2007, doi: 10.1190/1.2737100.

[2] T. Finkbeiner and A. P. Bathija, “Introduction to this special section: Geomechanics,” *Leading Edge*. 2021. doi: 10.1190/tle40110792.1.

[3] J. P. Turner, D. Healy, R. R. Hillis, and M. J. Welch, “Geomechanics and geology: Introduction,” *Geological Society Special Publication*. 2017. doi: 10.1144/SP458.15.

[4] Y. Li, D. Foster, M. Sanchez-Nagel, M. Tingay, and J. Verdon, ‘Introduction to this special section: Geomechanics,” *Leading Edge*. 2018. doi: 10.1190/tle37050332.1.

[5] A. M. Puzrin, *Constitutive modelling in geomechanics: Introduction*. 2012. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-27395-7.

[6] C. M. Sayers and P. M. T. M. Schutjens, "Introduction to this special section: Geomechanics," *Leading Edge (Tulsa, OK)*. 2007. doi: 10.1190/1.2737097.

[7] N. D. Espinoza, *Introduction to Energy Geomechanics*. 2019.

[8] K. Bjørlykke, K. Høeg, and N. H. Mondol, "Introduction to geomechanics: Stress and strain in sedimentary basins," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_11.

[9] D. Lee and J. Adachi, "Mt Simon Geomechanics Modeling Review Illinois Basin - Decatur Project," *Schlumberger*, 2011.

[10] C. O'Sullivan, "Particle-Based Discrete Element Modeling: Geomechanics Perspective," *Int. J. Geomech.*, 2011, doi: 10.1061/(asce)gm.1943-5622.0000024.

[11] G. Beer, C. Duenser, and V. Mallardo, "Efficient and realistic 3-D boundary element simulations of underground construction using isogeometric analysis," *Comput. Geotech.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.compgeo.2021.104055.

[12] R. Charlier, A. Dizier, L. Laloui, and F. Collin, "Multi-physical processes in geomechanics: An introduction to constitutive modelling and coupling aspects," *Eur. J. Environ. Civ. Eng.*, 2009, doi: 10.1080/19648189.2009.9693157.

CHAPTER 12

STRUCTURE AND HYDROCARBON TRAPS OF SEDIMENTARY BASINS

Mr. Kalpajit Hazarika, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - kalpajithazarika@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

A crucial component of hydrocarbon exploration and production is understanding the structure and hydrocarbon traps inside sedimentary basins. An overview of the main components of sedimentary basin structure and hydrocarbon traps is given in this abstract. Sedimentary basin structure is a product of intricate geological processes and tectonic pressures. It is essential to comprehend the structural features of the basin, such as folds, faults, and fractures, in order to locate probable hydrocarbon traps. The buildup and retention of hydrocarbons may be enabled by these structural characteristics. Geological structures or arrangements known as "hydrocarbon traps" enable hydrocarbons to accumulate and get trapped inside a reservoir by preventing their upward movement. Hydrocarbon traps come in a variety of forms, such as structural, stratigraphic, and combination traps. Deformations in the rock strata, such as anticlines and fault traps, generate reservoirs where hydrocarbons may assemble in structural traps. Contrarily, stratigraphic traps are created by variations in the properties of sedimentary rocks, including pinch-outs, unconformities, and stratigraphic truncations, which may serve as obstructions and reservoirs for hydrocarbons. Combination traps combine stratigraphic and structural components.

KEYWORDS:

Basin System, Hydrocarbon Traps, Stratigraphic Traps, Sedimentary Basins.

INTRODUCTION

Sedimentary basins are important geological areas that have enormous hydrocarbon resources. It is essential for effective oil and gas exploration and production to have an understanding of the structure and hydrocarbon traps inside these basins. An overview of sedimentary basin structure and hydrocarbon traps is given in this introduction: Understanding the geological history, sedimentary architecture, and structural development of the basin is crucial for the identification and characterisation of hydrocarbon traps. The examination of subsurface data and the identification of prospective hydrocarbon traps include the use of methods including seismic interpretation, well logging, and core analysis. The efficacy, volume, and producibility of the trap are evaluated using geological models and reservoir simulations.A complex interaction of geological processes, including subsidence, tectonic activity, and sedimentation, results in sedimentary basins. These basins often develop when the Earth's crust is being stretched or compressed, which causes sediment to be deposited in places that are sinking. Sediment buildup throughout time creates the stratified sequences that make up the fill of the basin.

Different structural components that govern the distribution and trapping of hydrocarbons may be found in sedimentary basins. Anticlines, synclines, faults, and folds are some of these components. Synclines are downward-folding structures, while anticlines are upward-folding structures that may create hydrocarbon traps. Folds may increase the ability of reservoirs to hold particles, whereas faults can generate structural and stratigraphic traps [1], [2].

Sedimentary basins also include stratigraphic traps, which are differences in the rock's characteristics and sedimentary facies, in addition to structural traps. When lithology, porosity, or permeability changes result in barriers that trap hydrocarbons within the reservoir, this is when stratigraphic traps happen. Depositional settings, such as channel sands, reefs, or unconformities, may create these traps. Finding prospective reservoirs depends on having a thorough understanding of the mechanics and movement routes of hydrocarbons within sedimentary basins. Through permeable channels including faults, fractures, and porous rock layers, hydrocarbons may travel both vertically and laterally. For inhibiting upward movement and trapping hydrocarbons within reservoirs, sealing or cap rocks are necessary. Using a mix of geological, geophysical, and geochemical methods, prospective hydrocarbon traps within sedimentary basins are identified and characterised.

The main instruments utilised in exploration and production operations include seismic surveys, well drilling, and reservoir modelling. The quantity, nature, and producibility of hydrocarbon accumulations within the basin are all determined by reservoir characterisation. Sedimentary basins have a wide range of structures and hydrocarbon traps that are influenced by the tectonic processes, depositional conditions, and geological history of the basin. Understanding the architecture of the basin and locating probable hydrocarbon traps need a thorough investigation of subsurface data, including seismic data interpretation, well logs, and core samples. Exploration and exploitation of hydrocarbon resources depend heavily on the structure and hydrocarbon traps in sedimentary basins. Geoscientists and engineers may optimise exploration tactics and maximise the recovery of significant hydrocarbon reserves by comprehending the structural components of the basin, stratigraphic changes, and the mechanics of hydrocarbon migration.

DISCUSSION

Tectonic Regimes and Stress

Concepts that characterise the deformational forces and circumstances inside the Earth's lithosphere include tectonic regimes and stress. Understanding tectonic regimes and stress is crucial for understanding how sedimentary basins evolve structurally, how geological features arise, and how resources are distributed. An introduction to tectonic regimes and stress is given in this section:

1. Tectonic Regimes: In a given location, the predominant forms of deformational pressures and motions are referred to as a region's tectonic regimes. Compressional, extensional, and strike-slip tectonic regimes are the three basic tectonic regimes.

Compressional Regime: Tectonic forces shorten and thicken the lithosphere during a compressional regime. When two plates meet at convergent plate borders, this regime is present. Fold and thrust belts, reversal faults, and mountain development are all products of compressional regimes.

Extensional Regime: Tectonic forces work to stretch and thin the lithosphere during an extensional regime. Divergent plate boundaries, when two plates migrate apart, are linked to this regime. Grabens, normal faults, and rift basins are produced by extensional regimes.

Strike-Slip Regime: A horizontal displacement results when tectonic forces work parallel to a plate boundary in a strike-slip regime. Transform plate borders, where two plates pass one another, are linked to this regime. Strike-slip faults, like the San Andreas Fault in California, are produced by strike-slip regimes.

2. Stress: The forces per unit area operating inside the Earth's crust are referred to as stress. It serves as a gauge for the strength of the deformational forces in a certain area. Compressional stress, extensional stress, and shear stress are the three main forms of stress [3]–[5].

Compressional Stress: When forces work to shorten and squeeze rocks, compressional stress results. It results in the creation of thrust faults and folds and is linked to convergent plate boundaries.

Extensional Stress: When forces operate to extend and stretch rocks, extensional stress results. It causes normal faults and rift basins and is linked to divergent plate boundaries.

Shear Stress: Shear stress occurs when forces acting in opposing directions operate parallel to a surface. It causes strike-slip faults and is connected to the borders of transform plate.

3. Stress Distribution: A tectonic regime's stress distribution is not constant. Plate motion, the existence of faults, the characteristics of the rocks, and the lithosphere's shape are some of the variables that affect stress. At plate borders, fault zones, or locations of significant strain, stress concentrations may happen.

For a variety of geologic interpretations, it is essential to comprehend the tectonic regime and stress distribution in a sedimentary basin. It contributes to the understanding of how fault systems arise, how geological structures form, and where deformation occurs in the basin. Additionally, it affects reservoir stability, drilling and production strategy design, and the movement and trapping of hydrocarbons.

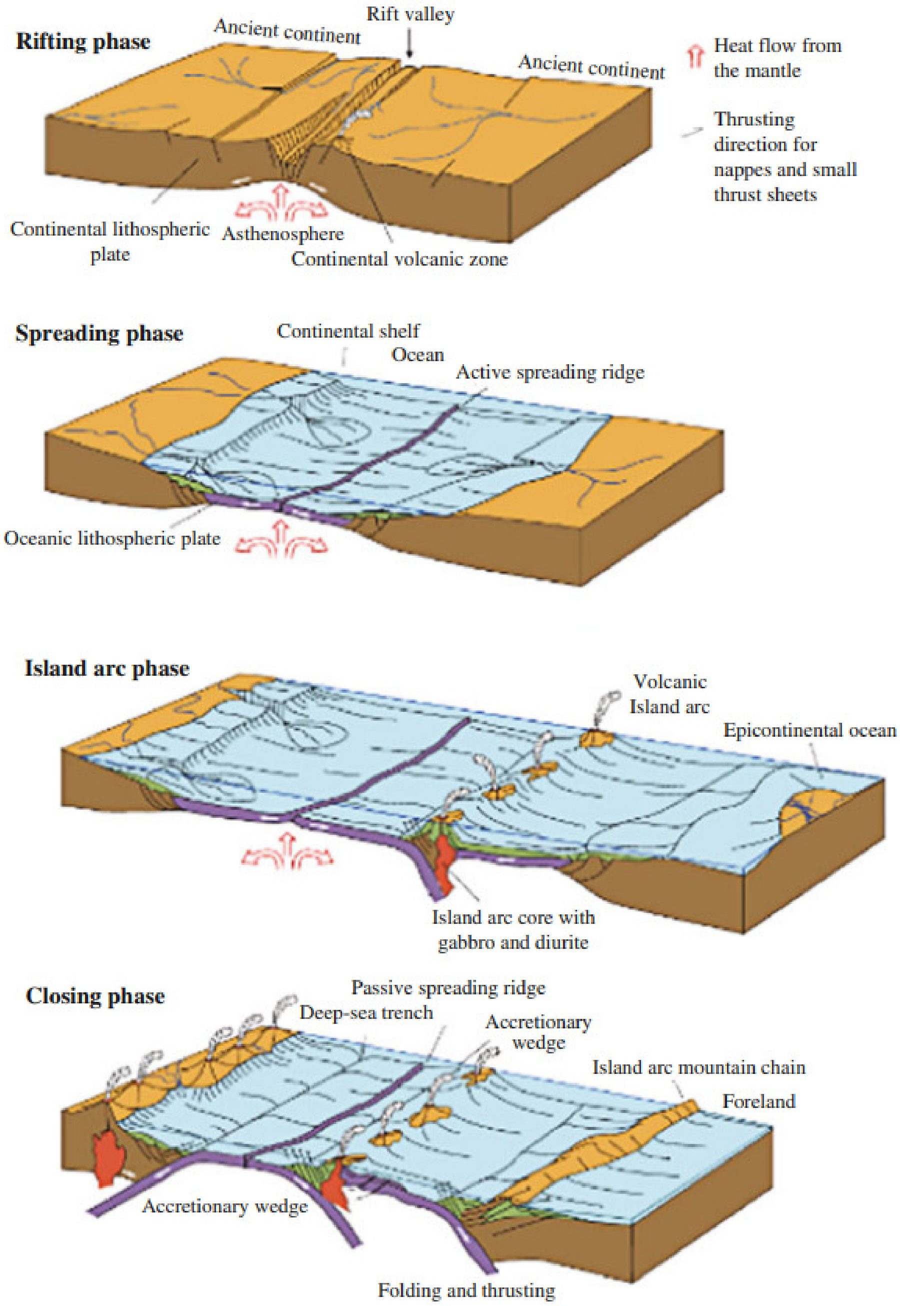
To sum up, the deformation and structural development of sedimentary basins are mostly under the influence of tectonic regimes and stress. The basin's geological characteristics are shaped by compressional, extensional, and strike-slip regimes, and the kind of stress that causes deformation in the rocks is determined by distinct forms of stress. Understanding these ideas offers important new perspectives on the geodynamic mechanisms at work in sedimentary basins and the tectonic history of those basins.

Petroleum Systems in Extensional Regimes

Extensional zones are related to horizontal divergent stress, and they may be found at active or passive plate borders as well as inside individual plates. Therefore, extensional stress regimes either describe active break-up of continents (along constructive or passive borders) or are related with subsidence and basin formation (in intra-plate settings). Although there may not be many favourable circumstances for the formation of petroleum systems in active spreading regions, the remains of the earlier phases of break-up that are currently found in passive margin settings meet all the criteria for productive petroleum provinces. This is due to the fact that such tectonic regimes have seen crustal thinning and related subsidence, which entails all the processes necessary for petroleum to be produced, trapped, and stored in large enough quantities and concentrations to constitute economically attractive petroleum fields. As a result, these environments usually exhibit an appealing distribution and mix of source, reservoir, and cap rocks, as well as structural and stratigraphic traps and the conditions for hydrocarbon maturation, ejection, migration, and accumulation [6]–[8].

Extensional Basins

The Wilson Cycle, which starts with the thinning, stretching, and rifting of the continental crust and ends with continental break-up and mid-oceanic spreading, may be seen as beginning with the development of extensional basins. The Wilson cycle theory states that this process may sometimes be reversed, leading to ocean closure, collision between nearby continental plates, and the subsequent formation of a mountain chain along the zone of impact (Figure 1).



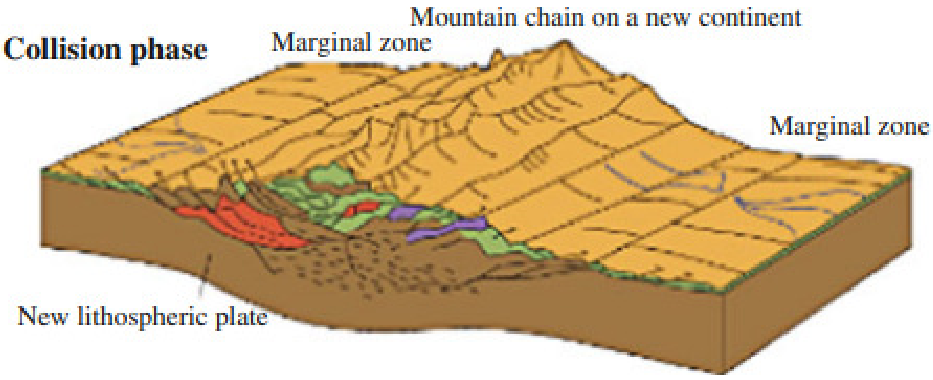


Figure 1: The major stages in the Wilson Cycle (from Nystuen in Ramberg et al. 2008). Reprinted with permission from the Norwegian Geological Society and the author

The suture separating the continental plates is defined by their intersection. If we take the current North Atlantic as an example, the extensional basin system that formed during continental break-up is located in a passive continental margin configuration, with the very hydrocarbon-rich northern North Sea basin system nearby. Iceland, on the other hand, is located near the top of the mid-oceanic spreading ridge, where petroleum resources are less plentiful. Although the Viking Graben, which emerged during the Jurassic and Cretaceous periods, is part of the northern North Sea basin system, an older (Permo-Triassic) basin system lies underneath it, according to a closer examination of the structural structure at depth (Figure 2). The Permo-Triassic basin system is then overlaid on the much earlier Caledonian suture, which later experienced gravitational collapse in the Devonian, marking the conclusion of a previous Wilson Cycle.

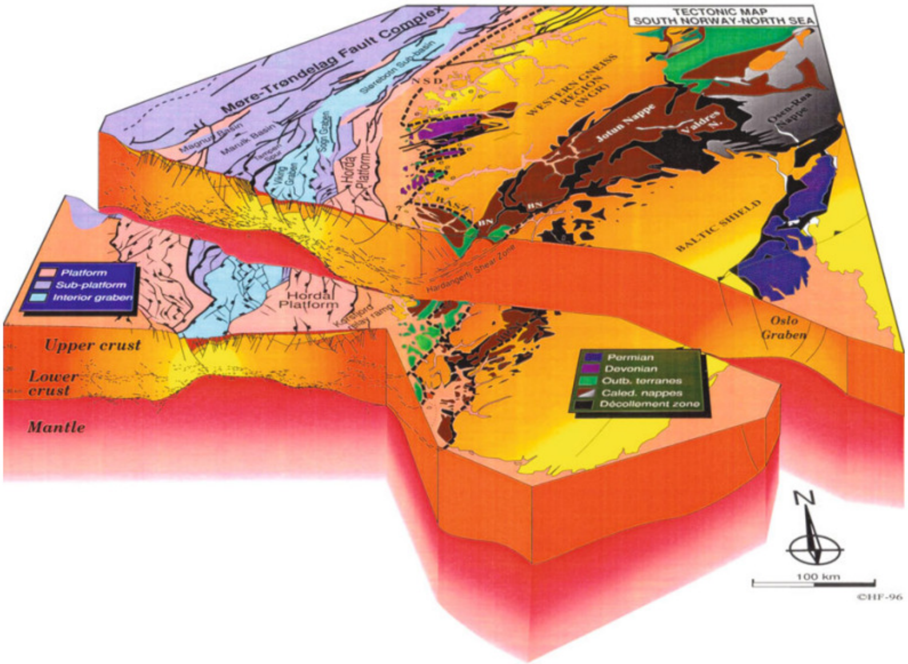


Figure 2: The architecture of the North Sea continental shelf. Note the deep structure, showing a Permo-Triassic rift system buried beneath the younger Jurassic.

Transition from a rift to a syn-rift. According to the pure-shear model, the shift from the syn- to the post-rift stage will be accompanied by a straightforward geometrical change in the shape of extensional basins. In this concept, the syn- to post-rift transition causes the boundaries of the relatively narrow, steep-walled rift, which holds the syn-rift sediments, to get overstepped. This suggests that during the subsequent post-rift period, the basin widens and the rate of subsidence declines asymptotically. Thus, the period at which the syn-rift faults go dormant and subsidence becomes mostly controlled by thermal contraction and sediment loading is referred to as the beginning of the post-rift evolution. Practically speaking, it is difficult to identify this stage of basin development since the transition is usually not synchronous across the basin and the criteria for doing so in reflection seismic data are frequently not adequately defined. To solve this issue, the syn-to-post-rift transition should really be defined as the period when net heat flow out of the system exceeds net heat flow in the system. It is acknowledged that there often exists a lateral heat flow gradient perpendicular to the basin axis. This suggests that near the conclusion of the syn-rift stage, the region of the basin showing the maximum heat flow is also the region that is closest to the basin axis, which also happens to be the region of greatest thinning. Accordingly, the post-rift stage will have the largest vertical contraction of the lithosphere under the middle portion of the basin. When sediments fill the basin, adding another stress and increasing overall compaction, the heightened sinking along the basin axis is further intensified. As a result, the change from syn- to post-rift development is accompanied by a change in the regional tilt, from fault block rotation away from the graben axis during the syn-rift stage to tilting oriented towards the basin axis during the post-rift development. The majority of the time, reflection seismic data makes it easy to discern this change, which results from the lithosphere's transition from bulk thermal expansion to bulk thermal contraction.

The simple-shear model for extensional basins proposes that extension is confined along one or multiple inclined fault zone(s) that effect the whole crust, which is in sharp geometrical and mechanical contrast to the pure-shear model for extensional basins. Even yet, the underlying concepts are comparable to those of the pure-shear model when it comes to thermo-tectonic and isostatic reactions. In 1981, Brian Wernicke developed the simple-shear model, which is based on data from the Basin-and-Range of North America. The lithosphere has expanded to the point that the lower crust, which is referred to as a metamorphic core complex, has been elevated and exposed in the basin's centre region, giving the Basinand-Range basin system a unique geometry. The pattern of isostatic reaction to extension is significantly influenced by the basin's asymmetrical structure. The upper mantle's/lithosphere's relative thickness is a significant influence. This is because there are often considerable disparities in differential subsidence and uplift throughout the basin since the lower crust is often heavier than the top astenosphere. On top of this are additional regional isostatic effects brought on by the geography of the basin and the differing thicknesses of strata with various densities. The primary basin phases and the circumstances for hydrocarbon formation and entrapment are the same for simpleshear basins because the same tectono-thermal principles that apply to pure-shear basins also apply to simpleshear basins. Even while the research of the Basin-and-Range basin system served as the model's inspiration, it has proven applicable to many other basins as well, indicating that simple shear is a common factor in the development of basins.

The simple- and pure-shear models may be combined to form the delamination model. In this instance, simple shearing expands the top and middle crust. The lower crust is thinned by pure shear as the master fault flattens and combines with it deeper in the earth. The configuration of the Viking Graben in the northern North Sea seems to suit the delamination paradigm. The thermomechanical pure-shear model is applicable in this situation as well, and with minor adjustments, it may be used to simulate basin growth. The lithosphere located above and below the delamination surface has experienced varying degrees of extension, which is a variable parameter that must be taken into consideration by the delamination model [9], [10].

CONCLUSION

Structural traps and stratigraphic traps are two different types of hydrocarbon traps that may be found in sedimentary basins. The bending and deformation of rocks produce structural traps, which are closures that catch hydrocarbons. By increasing these traps via faulting and folding, favourable circumstances for hydrocarbon accumulation are produced. On the other hand, stratigraphic traps are created by variations in the lithology, porosity, and permeability of the sedimentary succession. These differences serve as barriers that stop hydrocarbons from migrating upward and instead cause their entrapment.Sedimentary basin exploration and production depend on thorough geology and geophysical investigation, such as seismic surveys, well logging, and reservoir characterization. These methods support the detection of possible hydrocarbon traps, the assessment of reservoir characteristics, and the estimation of hydrocarbon reserves. In order to determine the most promising regions for hydrocarbon exploration, it is essential to have a grasp of the structural components and stratigraphic differences within sedimentary basins.

Furthermore, the formation of hydrocarbon traps is significantly influenced by the tectonic history and stress regimes present in sedimentary basins. The creation of structural features and the distribution of hydrocarbon traps are influenced by many tectonic regimes, including compressional, extensional, and strike-slip. Geoscientists and engineers can evaluate the structural development of basins and improve exploration techniques by having a solid grasp of tectonic forces and stress distribution.

REFERENCES

[1] C. M. Sayers and P. M. T. M. Schutjens, “An introduction to reservoir geomechanics,” *Lead. Edge (Tulsa, OK)*, 2007, doi: 10.1190/1.2737100.

[2] E. Aleksandrov, A. Bourmistrov, and G. Grossi, “Participatory budgeting as a form of dialogic accounting in Russia,” *Accounting, Audit. Account. J.*, vol. 31, no. 4, pp. 1098–1123, May 2018, doi: 10.1108/AAAJ-02-2016-2435.

[3] J. P. Turner, D. Healy, R. R. Hillis, and M. J. Welch, “Geomechanics and geology: Introduction,” *Geological Society Special Publication*. 2017. doi: 10.1144/SP458.15.

[4] Y. Li, D. Foster, M. Sanchez-Nagel, M. Tingay, and J. Verdon, “Introduction to this special section: Geomechanics,” *Leading Edge*. 2018. doi: 10.1190/tle37050332.1.

[5] A. M. Puzrin, *Constitutive modelling in geomechanics: Introduction*. 2012. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-27395-7.

[6] C. M. Sayers and P. M. T. M. Schutjens, “Introduction to this special section: Geomechanics,” *Leading Edge (Tulsa, OK)*. 2007. doi: 10.1190/1.2737097.

[7] N. D. Espinoza, *Introduction to Energy Geomechanics*. 2019.

[8] K. Bjørlykke, K. Høeg, and N. H. Mondol, "Introduction to geomechanics: Stress and strain in sedimentary basins," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_11.

[9] D. Lee and J. Adachi, "Mt Simon Geomechanics Modeling Review Illinois Basin - Decatur Project," *Schlumberger*, 2011.

[10] C. O'Sullivan, "Particle-Based Discrete Element Modeling: Geomechanics Perspective," *Int. J. Geomech.*, 2011, doi: 10.1061/(asce)gm.1943-5622.0000024.

CHAPTER 13

COMPACTION OF SEDIMENTARY ROCKS INCLUDING SHALES, SANDSTONES AND CARBONATES

Mr. Bhairab Gogoi, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - bhairabjyoti@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Shales, sandstones, and carbonates are all sedimentary rocks, and compaction is a critical component in this diagenesis. The term "compaction" describes how the weight of underlying sediments and the effects of lithostatic pressure reduce the amount of pore space and volume in sedimentary rocks. It is a crucial procedure that affects the mechanical and physical characteristics of rocks, the quality of reservoirs, and the exploration and production of hydrocarbons. Mechanical and chemical mechanisms are principally responsible for compaction in shales. Under the pressure of underlying sediments, mechanical compaction includes the rearranging and settling of clay minerals and fine-grained particles. Contrarily, diagenetic processes such as pressure solution, cementation, and authigenic clays are used in chemical compaction to cause the precipitation of minerals. Shales' porosity, permeability, and mechanical strength are all impacted by compaction, which impacts how well they can retain and transport fluids.

KEYWORDS:

Carbonate Rocks, Diagnetic Processes, Mudrock Shales, Sedimentary Rocks.

INTRODUCTION

Sandstones are mostly compacted by mechanical processes. The sandstone's grains compact closer together as the weight of the underlying sediments rises, lowering the amount of pore space and raising the density of the rock. Through procedures including pressure solution, cementation, and grain rearrangement, compaction in sandstones may cause the lowering of primary porosity and the creation of secondary porosity. The reservoir quality and permeability of sandstone reservoirs are influenced by the degree of compaction.

Due to their mineralogical makeup and diagenetic processes, carbonates have distinct compaction behaviour. Carbonate compaction is impacted by elements such particle size, shape, and mineralogy. The porosity and permeability of carbonates may be impacted by the dissolution and precipitation of minerals during compaction, including calcite and dolomite. Mechanical activities such grain reorganisation, fracture, and deformation also have an impact on carbonate compaction.

Shales, sandstones, and carbonates are examples of sedimentary rocks that go through a basic process known as compaction during burial and diagenetic evolution. It has a substantial impact on the structural and mechanical characteristics of these rocks and is essential in turning loose sediments into solid rocks. An overview of the compaction process in several kinds of sedimentary rocks is given in this introduction:

1. **Shales:**

Fine-grained sedimentary rocks called shale are mostly made of clay minerals. The clay particles reorganise and pack more firmly during compaction as a result of the weight of underlying sediments and the progressive elimination of pore water. Shale's initial porosity is decreased during the compaction process, increasing the shale's density and strength. Shale compaction is impacted by several elements, including burial depth, organic matter concentration, and clay mineral composition.

2. **Sandstones:**

Sand-sized grains, mostly quartz, as well as other minerals make up sandstones. Grain rearrangement and grain-to-grain contact are the main mechanisms by which sandstones are compacted. The sand grains' pore space decreases when sediments are buried because of compression caused by the weight of the underlying layers pressing down on them. Sandstones become more tightly packed, have less porosity, and have greater mechanical strength as a consequence of compaction. The compaction behaviour of sandstones is further influenced by the mineralogy, particle size, and cementation [1], [2].

3. **Carbonates:**

Calcium carbonate minerals make up the majority of carbonate rocks like dolomite and limestone. Chemical and mechanical techniques are also used in the compaction of carbonates. Grain rearrangement and pressure solution, where minerals dissolve at high stress locations and reprecipitate at lower stress places, cause mechanical compaction. New minerals, like calcite or dolomite, precipitate during chemical compression in pore spaces. Carbonates are compacted, which reduces porosity, increases rock density, and changes permeability.

Lithospheric characteristics, burial depth, sediment composition, and diagenetic processes are some of the variables that affect the compaction process in sedimentary rocks. It has an impact on crucial rock characteristics including porosity, permeability, and mechanical strength, which have an effect on fluid flow, the quality of hydrocarbon reservoirs, and geomechanical behaviour.

For a variety of purposes, it is essential to comprehend how sedimentary rocks are compacted. It helps with reservoir quality evaluation, subsurface fluid flow forecasting and modelling, and determining the economic feasibility of hydrocarbon exploration and production. Compaction studies also help us understand how sedimentary basins evolve, how geological structures arise, and how geological records are preserved.

To sum up, compaction is an essential process that turns loose particles into sedimentary rocks that are solid. It occurs in shales, sandstones, and carbonates and causes changes to the mechanical characteristics of the rock as well as decreased porosity and increased rock density. Numerous variables affect the compaction process, which has important ramifications for fluid flow, reservoir quality, and geological development. For a thorough knowledge of sedimentary rocks and their behaviour inside the Earth's subsurface, compaction must be understood.

DISCUSSION

The complicated geological process of compaction has a substantial impact on the mechanical and physical characteristics of sedimentary rocks, such as shales, sandstones, and carbonates. We may comprehend the causes, contributing variables, and consequences of this significant diagenetic process by discussing compaction in sedimentary rocks.

Mechanisms of Compaction:

Compaction happens when sedimentary strata are gradually buried under sediments on top of them or as a consequence of tectonic movements. Several methods contribute to compaction:

Grain rearrangement:

Rearrangements of sedimentary particles within the matrix of the rock may reduce pore space and raise rock density.

Pressure solution:

Minerals may dissolve at grain-to-grain contacts under high pressure and temperature conditions, causing compaction and cementation.

Mechanical deformation:

As a consequence of mechanical deformation brought on by stress, such as bending or fracture, sedimentary rocks may get compacted.

Factors Affecting Compaction:

The level and pace of compaction in sedimentary rocks is influenced by a number of factors:

Sediment Composition:

Compaction is influenced by the mineralogy and particle size distribution of sediments. Shales and other fine-grained sediments are often more prone to compaction than rocks with larger grains.

Sediment Thickness:

More considerable compaction results from deeper burial of thicker sedimentary sequences.

Overburden Pressure:

Underlying layers are put under strain by the weight of the sediments above them, which encourages compaction.

Fluid Content:

Fluids like water or hydrocarbons have an impact on the compaction process. Overburden pressure may be offset by fluid pressure, which prevents compaction.

Diagenetic Processes:

The porosity and permeability of rocks may be impacted by cementation and mineral precipitation that might happen during compaction.

Implications of Compaction:

Several significant consequences of sedimentary rock compaction include:

Porosity Reduction:

Rock's porosity decreases as a consequence of compaction because less pore space is present in the rock. The fluid storage and flow characteristics of reservoir rocks are impacted by this change in porosity.

Permeability Changes:

The permeability, which affects the rock's capacity for fluid movement, may be considerably decreased if pore spaces are crushed.

Overpressure Generation:

In certain lithologies, such as shales, compaction may produce overpressure zones where fluids are trapped and ejected as a result of decreased permeability.

Formation of Secondary Structures:

As a consequence of the redistribution of stress during compaction, secondary structures like stylolites or fractures may form.

Rock strength and deformation:

Rocks that have been compacted often have higher mechanical strengths and lower ductility, which affects how they behave during deformation and failure. For several applications, such as hydrocarbon exploration, reservoir characterisation, and geotechnical engineering, it is crucial to comprehend the compaction process in diverse kinds of sedimentary rocks. It supports the evaluation of subsurface formation stability, fluid flow behaviour prediction, and reservoir quality assessment.The mechanical and physical characteristics of sedimentary rocks are impacted by compaction, a basic diagenetic process. Depending on the kind of rock and how long it has been buried, many processes and variables may cause compaction. Changes in porosity, permeability, fluid pressure, and rock strength are all effects of compaction. To evaluate the behaviour of sedimentary rocks and make wise judgements in a variety of geological and technical applications, one must have a thorough grasp of compaction processes [3], [4].

Compaction of Mudrocks and Shales

Mudrocks and shales' mechanical, physical, and geotechnical qualities are greatly impacted by the compaction of these geological formations, which is a crucial diagenetic process. Fine-grained sedimentary rocks known as mudrocks and shales are predominantly made up of clay minerals and silt-sized particles. Interpreting these rocks' behaviour as reservoir seals, source rocks, and geotechnical materials requires an understanding of their compaction.

Mudrocks and shales are compacted by a number of methods, including:

1) Particle rearrangement: As pressure increases, rock matrix particles reorganise, reducing pore space and increasing rock density.
2) Pressure solution: Mudrock and shales' clay minerals are especially vulnerable to pressure solution. Minerals dissolve at grain-to-grain contacts under high pressure and temperature conditions, causing compaction and cementation.

3) Chemical compaction: When chemical processes, such as mineral precipitation and cementation, help to reduce porosity and consolidate the rock, this process is known as chemical compaction.

The compaction of mudrocks and shales is impacted by a number of variables, including:

1) Different clay minerals display varied levels of compaction, according on clay mineralogy. Clays that are rich in smectite tend to be more compressible than clays that are rich in illite or kaolinite.
2) Effective stress: Effective stress is a key factor in the compaction of mudrocks and shales since it takes into consideration both the overburden pressure and fluid pressure. Compaction is encouraged by higher effective stress.
3) Organic matter content: Due to the thermal maturation processes, the presence of organic matter in shales may have an impact on compaction by limiting permeability and raising pore pressure production.
4) Water content: The amount of water in mudrocks and shales affects how they compress. Higher water content might impede compaction and reduce effective stress.

Consequences of Compaction:

Mudrocks and shale compaction has substantial effects on a variety of applications:

1) Reduction in porosity: Compaction significantly reduces porosity, which makes mudrocks and shales less permeable and less able to store fluids like hydrocarbons.
2) Seal integrity: Mudrocks and shales that have been compacted often have poor permeabilities, making them good barriers or seals for fluid movement in underground reservoirs.
3) Geotechnical characteristics: Mudrocks and shale that have been compacted exhibit improved mechanical strength and decreased deformability, making them crucial geotechnical materials for engineering tasks like tunnelling or dam building.
4) Diagenetic processes: Diagenetic events, such as mineral cementation, stylolite formation, or fracture, may be triggered by compaction and further alter the characteristics and behaviour of the rock.

Mudrocks and shale compaction must be understood in order to properly determine the reservoir quality, forecast fluid flow behaviour, and gauge geomechanical reaction. This information is essential for maximising hydrocarbon reservoir exploration and production plans, assessing seal performance, and guaranteeing the stability of subsurface formations in geotechnical engineering projects. The intricate diagenetic process of mudrock and shale compaction has a considerable impact on their characteristics and behaviour. It makes use of techniques including chemical compaction, pressure solution, and particle rearrangement. The process of compaction is influenced by variables like clay mineralogy, effective stress, organic matter concentration, and water content. Porosity decrease, seal integrity, geotechnical qualities, and the start of diagenetic processes are all effects of compaction. Numerous geological and engineering applications need an understanding of compaction in mudrocks and shales.

Sandstones

Sand-sized grains, which are generally 0.0625 mm to 2 mm in diameter and make up the majority of sedimentary rocks called sandstones, are the dominant component. They are among the most prevalent kinds of sedimentary rocks and are crucial for several geological and technical uses. Interpreting sandstones' depositional settings, reservoir potential, and geomechanical behaviour requires an understanding of their properties and features.

1. Sandstones are largely made up of sand-sized grains, which may include quartz, feldspar, lithic pieces, carbonate grains, and other mineral kinds. Sandstones' physical and chemical characteristics, such as strength, porosity, and permeability, are influenced by its mineral makeup.
2. High-energy settings including beaches, river channels, deltas, and sand dunes are often indicated by the presence of sandstones. Sandstone's properties, such as grain size, sorting, and bedding patterns, provide important details about the habitats and depositional processes that led to its development.
3. Permeability refers to the capacity of fluids to pass through the rock, while porosity refers to the volume of pore spaces inside the rock. Sandstones are possible reservoir rocks for hydrocarbons, groundwater, and geothermal fluids because they often have greater porosity and permeability than other sedimentary rocks.
4. Diagenetic procedures like cementation and compaction may drastically change a sandstone's characteristics. Minerals precipitate within the pore spaces, filling them and lowering porosity, which causes cementation. By mechanically compressing the sediment, compaction reduces the amount of pore space and increases rock density.
5. Sandstones offer a variety of geomechanical characteristics that are significant for engineering applications. Strength, elasticity, deformability, and shear resistance are a few of them. Designing structures like foundations, tunnels, and reservoir formations requires a thorough understanding of the geomechanical behaviour of sandstones in order to determine their stability.
6. Sandstones with high porosity and permeability have the potential to be good reservoir rocks for geothermal, water, and hydrocarbon resources. Analysing the petrophysical parameters, fluid flow characteristics, and existence of trapping mechanisms helps determine the reservoir potential of sandstones.

Sandstones are typical sedimentary rocks made up of sand-sized particles. They play key roles in reservoir potential and geomechanical engineering applications, display substantial porosity and permeability, and provide useful information regarding depositional conditions. To properly analyse sedimentary basins and to successfully explore and exploit subsurface resources, it is crucial to comprehend the composition, depositional conditions, diagenesis, and geomechanical characteristics of sandstones.

Carbonate Compaction

Due to the weight of underlying sediments and the impacts of diagenetic processes, carbonate rocks experience a decrease in pore space and an increase in density, which is known as carbonate compaction. Carbonate minerals, generally calcium carbonate (CaCO3), make up the majority of carbonate rocks like limestone and dolomite.

1. **Processes of Compaction:** Several processes are involved in carbonate compaction.

Grain Rearrangement: As pressure builds, the carbonate rock's grains may move about, reducing pore space and increasing packing density.

Pressure Dissolution: When exposed to high pressures, carbonate minerals may dissolve at grain-to-grain contacts, which may aid in cementation and compaction.

Mechanical Deformation: In reaction to stress, carbonate rocks may experience mechanical deformation such as fracture or bending, which leads to compaction.

2. **Compaction-Producing variables:** A number of variables affect the amount and rate of compaction in carbonate rocks, including:

Mineralogy and Texture: The compaction behaviour of carbonate rocks depends on their mineralogy and texture. The sensitivity to compaction may be influenced by elements including grain size, grain shape, and mineral content.

Diagenetic processes may affect carbonate compaction by filling pore spaces or changing the mineral structure. Diagenetic processes include cementation, dissolution, and recrystallization.

Fluid Content: Fluids like water or hydrocarbons may have an impact on the compaction of carbonate rocks. Overburden pressure may be offset by fluid pressure, which prevents compaction[5], [6].

3. **Compaction's Consequences:** The compaction of carbonate rocks has a number of consequences, including:

Decreased Porosity: Carbonate rocks' pore space is significantly reduced as a consequence of compaction, which lowers their porosity. The fluid storage and flow characteristics of carbonate reservoirs are impacted by this change in porosity.

Modifications to Permeability: As pore spaces are compressed, permeability may be dramatically decreased, which may alter how well fluids may pass through the rock.

Diagenetic Alteration: Diagenetic processes, such as cementation and recrystallization, may be triggered by compaction and further change the characteristics of the rock and the quality of the reservoir.

Rock Deformation and Strength: Compacted carbonate rocks often have higher mechanical strengths and less deformability, which affects how they behave during deformation and failure. For a variety of applications, including hydrocarbon exploration, reservoir characterisation, and geotechnical engineering, it is essential to comprehend the compaction process in carbonate rocks. It supports the evaluation of subsurface formation stability, fluid flow behaviour prediction, and reservoir quality assessment.

The mechanical and physical characteristics of carbonate rocks are influenced by carbonate compaction, a significant diagenetic process. It makes use of phenomena including mechanical deformation, pressure dissolution, and grain rearrangement. The process of compaction is influenced by elements including mineralogy, diagenetic processes, and fluid content. Porosity decrease, permeability alterations, diagenetic modification, and adjustments in rock strength are all effects of carbonate compaction. Numerous geological and engineering applications need an understanding of compaction in carbonate rocks [7], [8].

CONCLUSION

Shales, sandstones, and carbonates all adhere to distinct compaction patterns and are primarily governed by various mechanisms. Up until chemical compaction takes control and subsequent compaction becomes mostly a function of temperature and time, both shales and sandstones compact mechanically as a function of effective stress. Both sandstones and mudstones (shales) have a highly significant initial mineralogical and textural composition. Although the temperature is less significant, carbonate sediments may chemically compact at extremely low temperatures and shallow depths. The process of compaction is governed by a complicated relationship between stress and chemical compaction. The primary concentration and distribution of aragonite, which promotes early cementation, is one of the key elements influencing compaction and rock characteristics in carbonates.

REFERENCES

[1] K. Bjorlykke, "Compaction of sedimentary rocks including shales, sandstones and carbonates," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics*, 2010. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-02332-3_13.

[2] BjØRlykke, Knut, "Abstract: Clastic Diagenesis and Porosity Prediction in Sedimentary Basins," *Am. Assoc. Pet. Geol. Bull.*, 1999, doi: 10.1306/e4fd4297-1732-11d7-8645000102c1865d.

[3] L. E. Gómez Peral, M. S. Raigemborn, and D. G. Poiré, "Petrología y Evolución Diagenética De Las Facies Silicoclásticas Del Grupo Sierras Bayas, Sistema De Tandilia, Argentina," *Lat. Am. J. Sedimentol. Basin Anal.*, 2011.

[4] J. W. Reinhardt, "Uppermost permian reefs and permo-triassic sedimentary facies from the southeastern margin of Sichuan Basin, China," *Facies*, 1988, doi: 10.1007/BF02536802.

[5] S. Henriksen, D. Roberts, and P. Å. Pedersen, "Turbidite and conglomerate successions in an ordovician back-arc basin, Mid-Norwegian caledonides: A result of long-term staging followed by catastrophic release of sediments," *Nor. J. Geol.*, 2018, doi: 10.17850/njg98-1-09.

[6] G. F. Acenolaza, "The Cambrian System in northwestern Argentina: Stratigraphical and palaeontological framework," *Geol. Acta*, 2003.

[7] L. E. Gómez Peral, M. S. Raigemborn, and D. G. Poiré, "Petrological analysis and diagenetic evolution of the siliciclastics facies of the Sierras Bayas Group, Tandilia System, Argentina," *Lat. Am. J. Sedimentol. Basin Anal.*, 2011.

[8] A. E. Milodowski *et al.*, *The Cheshire Basin: basin evolution, fluid movement and mineral resources in a Permo-Triassic rift setting*. 1999.

CHAPTER 14

SOURCE ROCKS AND PETROLEUM GEOCHEMISTRY

Dr. Suman Paul, Associate Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering,
Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - sumanpaul@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Hydrocarbon exploration and production are fundamentally based on source rocks and petroleum geochemistry. The main source of hydrocarbons in underground reservoirs are source rocks, sometimes called organic-rich sedimentary rocks. The study of the chemical makeup, source, transport, and alteration of hydrocarbons in the Earth's crust is known as petroleum geochemistry. An overview of source rocks and petroleum geochemistry is given in this abstract, emphasising their importance for discovering and comprehending hydrocarbon systems. Sedimentary rocks that are organically abundant and capable of producing hydrocarbons are called source rocks. They are often made up of several forms of organic material, including kerogen, and have high total organic carbon contents. Since source rocks are the main sources of oil and gas, they play a crucial part in hydrocarbon accumulation. Based on their depositional environment, organic content, and thermal maturity, source rocks may be categorised. Lacustrine mudstones, coal beds, and marine shales are a few typical forms of source rocks. When assessing a source rock's capacity to produce hydrocarbons, it is crucial to understand its nature and properties.

KEYWORDS:

Organic Material, Petroleum Geochemistry, Sedimentary Rocks, Thermal Maturation.

INTRODUCTION

Over the course of geologic time, source rocks undergo thermal maturation, which converts organic matter into hydrocarbons via a process known as hydrocarbon production. The kind and amount of hydrocarbons produced depend on the maturity stage. Petroleum geochemistry aids in determining the age of source rocks and foretells the kinds of hydrocarbons that may be produced. To understand the origins, accumulation, and transformation of hydrocarbon resources, source rocks and petroleum geochemistry are crucial. Sedimentary rocks known as "source rocks" are capable of producing and releasing large quantities of hydrocarbons, such as oil and gas. They are also rich in organic materials. Petroleum geochemistry is the study of the chemical make-up, characteristics, and sources of hydrocarbons, and it offers important information for the discovery and development of oil and gas resources [1]–[3].

Source Rocks:

The first places where hydrocarbons are produced and accumulated are source rocks. They are often fine-grained sedimentary rocks with adequate amounts of organic content, mainly in the form of kerogen, such as shales or organic-rich mudrocks. The organic material in source rocks comes from microbes and decayed marine or terrestrial plants that have been buried and preserved throughout geological time.

Hydrocarbon Generation:

The organic matter undergoes thermal maturation and transformation, which produces hydrocarbons, when source rocks reach the proper temperature and pressure levels during burial. Oil and gas are created as a consequence of the catagenesis or thermal cracking process. The content and maturity of the organic matter determine the kind and quantity of hydrocarbons produced.

Migration and Buildup:

Once produced, hydrocarbons may move through the subsurface under the influence of buoyancy and pressure differences until they find a suitable reservoir rock with enough porosity and permeability for storing and moving the hydrocarbons. Structures or stratigraphic features may act as traps to keep hydrocarbons from escaping and becoming commercially viable reserves.

Petroleum Geochemistry:

The study of the chemical and physical characteristics of hydrocarbons and their sources is known as petroleum geochemistry. Determine their origin, thermal maturity, and migratory routes by examining the composition, isotopic traces, and biomarkers contained in oils, gases, and source rocks. Understanding petroleum geochemistry may help with source rock quality, reservoir characterisation, and exploration tactics.

Exploration and Production:

For the effective exploration and production of hydrocarbons, it is essential to understand source rocks and petroleum geochemistry. By evaluating the existence of source rocks, their maturity, and the potential for hydrocarbon production, it aids in the identification of promising regions for exploration. Reservoir characterisation, oil and gas quality assessment, and estimation of the amount and distribution of hydrocarbons in subterranean formations are all aided by geochemical study of reservoir fluids.

Geoscientists may understand the intricate processes involved in hydrocarbon creation, migration, and accumulation by researching source rocks and petroleum geochemistry. This information is crucial for directing exploration activities, determining reservoir potential, and enhancing production tactics. Understanding the geochemical characteristics of hydrocarbons may also aid in the creation of sustainable energy alternatives and provide important insights into the effects of fossil fuel use on the environment and climate.

Source rocks and petroleum geochemistry are important aspects to consider while researching hydrocarbon resources. Hydrocarbons originate in source rocks, and petroleum geochemistry sheds light on their composition, place of origin, and movement. Understanding the environmental effects of using fossil fuels and conducting hydrocarbon exploration and reservoir characterisation both depend on this information [4].

DISCUSSION

Petroleum resources are formed and accumulated with the help of source rocks. They are sedimentary rocks rich in organic material, which is essential for the production and ejection of hydrocarbons. The study of the genesis, transport, and change of hydrocarbons inside the Earth's crust is known as petroleum geochemistry. For exploration and production efforts to be effective, it is crucial to comprehend the geochemical properties of source rocks and the mechanisms that control the creation of petroleum.

Organic Matter Preservation:

Organic material found in source rocks is the result of the accumulation and burial of marine or terrestrial organisms. The kind and amount of preserved organic materials in the rock affects its potential for petroleum. Organic matter is preserved by elements including sedimentation rate, oxygen availability, and water depth.

Petroleum Generation:

Over the course of geologic time, source rocks experience thermal maturation, which transforms organic materials into hydrocarbons. Under extreme heat and pressure, complex organic molecules are broken down in the process known as petroleum production. Thermal deterioration, pyrolysis, and cracking are a few of the mechanisms that lead to the transition [5], [6].

Hydrocarbon Migration:

Once produced, hydrocarbons move via pore spaces and cracks from the source rock to the reservoir rocks. Buoyancy and the pressure gradient in the subsurface control the migration. For the purpose of locating probable reservoirs and calculating hydrocarbon quantities, it is essential to comprehend the migratory patterns and time.

Geochemical Signatures:

To determine a source rock's potential for petroleum, it is possible to examine its unique geochemical signature. This includes the organic matter's makeup, such as the existence of certain biomarkers or kerogen types, which may provide details about the origin rock's kind and the environment where it was deposited.

Petroleum Systems:

A bigger petroleum system, which also consists of migratory routes, seal rocks, and reservoir rocks, contains source rocks. The identification and assessment of prospective petroleum systems is made possible by a knowledge of the geochemical properties of source rocks, which helps with exploration targeting and resource estimates.

Basin Modeling:

Basin models may be created using geochemical data from the source rocks together with geological and geophysical data. Basin modelling simulates the thermal maturation, hydrocarbon production, and burial history of a sedimentary basin. These models aid in predicting when and where petroleum will be produced and accumulated.

As was previously said, organic matter that gathers in sedimentary basins is what produces petroleum. In the photic zone of the ocean, only a tiny portion of the organic matter created is trapped in sediments (Figure 1). During upwelling, the majority of the organic material is oxidised in the water column or on the bottom, releasing nutrients into the water that are then made accessible for fresh organic production close to the surface. Black shales, such as the

Upper Jurassic Kimmeridge Clay and its analogues in the North Sea basin, make up the majority of source rocks (Figure 2). The organic material is converted into kerogen, a substance made up of extremely big, complicated molecules. Fresh organic material is not often referred to as kerogen; rather, we refer to material that has been buried to a depth of at least 100 m and is somewhat dehydrated. After deposition of precursor products such humus and humic and fulvic acids, kerogen is progressively generated within the top few hundred metres of the sediment column. The organic material may come from plants grown on land or from sea life, primarily algae.

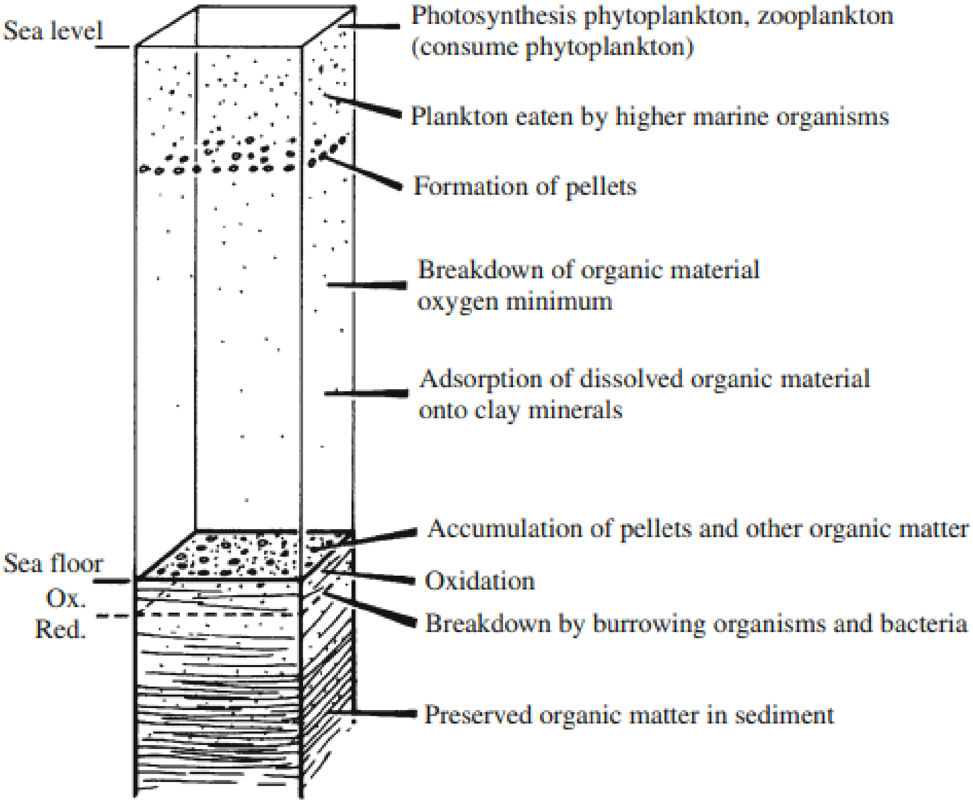


Figure 1: Formation of source rocks. Only a small fraction of the organic matter is preserved. The formation or organic-rich source rocks requires restricted water circulation and oxygen supply.

Transformation of Kerogen with Burial and Temperature Increase

A crucial step in the creation of hydrocarbons from organic-rich sedimentary rocks is the transition of kerogen with burial and temperature rise. Kerogen is the organic material found in sedimentary rocks and is mostly composed of microscopic and plant debris. Hydrocarbons are produced and altered as a result of different chemical and physical processes that take place inside the kerogen when these rocks are buried and heated.

1. Thermal Maturation

The sedimentary rocks' temperature rises as burial depth increases. The thermal maturity of kerogen is caused by this rise in temperature, sometimes referred to as a geothermal gradient. Complex organic compounds are broken down and converted into more straightforward hydrocarbon molecules during thermal maturation. Utilising variables like vitrinite reflectance or Tmax, the degree of thermal maturation is often measured.

2. Types of Hydrocarbon Generation

Different kinds of hydrocarbons may be produced as a consequence of kerogen's transition during thermal maturation:

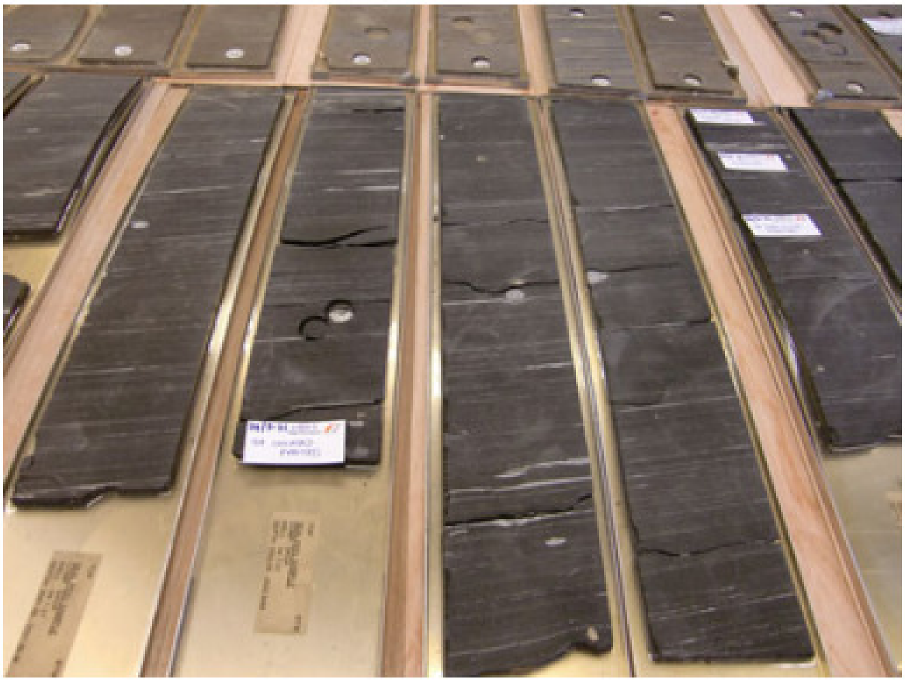


Figure 2: Draupne shale (Kimmeridge shale) cores from northern North Sea (Block 34/7).

Oil Generation:

Kerogen may undergo thermal cracking at low pressures and temperatures, producing the liquid hydrocarbons we know as oil. This procedure is connected to the production of crude oil and normally takes place between 60 and 150 degrees Celsius.

Gas Generation:

Kerogen may undergo further thermal degradation at greater pressures and temperatures, releasing gaseous hydrocarbons including methane (CH_4) and other light hydrocarbon gases. This procedure, referred to as "gas generation," is connected to the production of natural gas and takes place at temperatures between 150 and 200 degrees Celsius.

3. Chemical Changes

Kerogen undergoes a number of chemical modifications during transformation, including:

Decarboxylation:

Carbon dioxide (CO_2) loss from organic molecules during thermal maturation may result in the formation of hydrocarbon chains.

Dehydrogenation:

Kerogen is capable of dehydrogenation, in which the organic molecules' hydrogen atoms are removed, giving rise to unsaturated hydrocarbons.

Polymerization and Condensation:

Organic molecules may experience condensation and polymerization processes during thermal maturity, creating more complex hydrocarbons.

4. Hydrocarbon Migration

Gradients in pressure and temperature may cause hydrocarbons to migrate through the pore spaces in the rock after they have been produced. Migration happens in the direction of areas with better permeability or lower pressure, finally collecting in reservoir rocks where they may be economically recovered. A key step in the production of hydrocarbon resources is the transformation of kerogen with burial and temperature rise. For evaluating the hydrocarbon potential of sedimentary basins, forecasting the kind and grade of hydrocarbons produced, and identifying viable reservoirs for exploration and production operations, it is essential to comprehend the kinetics and processes involved in thermal maturation.

kerogen undergoes thermal maturation, which leads to the production and modification of hydrocarbons, when kerogen-rich sedimentary rocks are buried and the temperature rises. Complex organic chemicals must be broken down and converted into simpler hydrocarbon molecules via this process in order to produce oil and gas. During this transition, chemical alterations such decarboxylation, dehydrogenation, and condensation take place. For determining the hydrocarbon potential and directing exploration and production activities in sedimentary basins, it is essential to comprehend how kerogen changes as a result of burial and rising temperatures.

Factors Influence the Maturation of Kerogen

The degree to which kerogen is thermally transformed into hydrocarbons, and finally into gas and graphite, is referred to as "maturity" in this context. Chemical reactions that transform kerogen into hydrocarbons have activation energies of around 50–60 kcal/mol. In order for smaller hydrocarbon molecules to develop, it is necessary to use this energy to break the chemical bonds in the kerogen, which is made up of extremely big molecules (polymers). According to conventional wisdom, the production of oil is a first order process with an exponential time-rate function. It is really interesting to understand the variables that affect how quickly this response occurs. According to four theories, these include:

1. Temperature
2. Pressure
3. Time
4. Minerals or other substances that either speed up or slow down processes (catalysts or inhibitors), respectively.

The production of hydrocarbons from kerogen by heating it (pyrolysis) may be done experimentally. Temperature is undoubtedly the most crucial aspect. Because of the time-dependent character of this process, very high temperatures (350–550°C) must be employed in pyrolysis research in the lab, where time is more constrained than it is in the natural world. Although pressure doesn't seem to matter much, Le Chatelier's rule states that raising pressure should slow the reaction down since it creates more hydrocarbons in a given volume. Although oil is lighter than kerogen, there is only a tiny volume gain when kerogen transforms into oil. This is because the residue (coke) is still intact. There is a noticeable volume increase when kerogen is transformed into gas either directly or from oil that has already formed. This ought to slow down response rates in a closed system under high pressure and delay gas formation. The production of petroleum, especially gas, may aid in the development of overpressure, but in a sedimentary basin, the flow of water, which is the predominant fluid component, will primarily regulate pressure.

However, in the source rock, overpressure is likely to form, leading to hydrofracturing, which aids in the release of the produced petroleum. However, not only the increase in fluid volume but also the conversion of solids into fluids is the primary cause of overpressuring. The ratio between the solid phase and the fluid phase changes as solid kerogen transforms into fluid oil or gas, as shown by the porosity and void ratio. However, the most crucial element influencing the production of petroleum is temperature. Minerals, especially clay minerals, have long been thought to have the potential to influence the pace at which hydrocarbons are produced. Kerogen has been combined with other minerals in a variety of laboratory trials, but the results have not been clear-cut. Given the extended geological epoch, biological matter starts to convert about 70–80°C. The transition of kerogen occurs relatively slowly between 60 and 90 C, and considerable quantities are only produced in old, organic-rich strata. Between 100 and 150 C is where most of the maturation process takes place [7]–[9]. The degree of kerogen transformation in this instance also depends on time. Accordingly, rocks that have been exposed to 100 °C for 50 million years are more developed than those that have been exposed to it for just 10 million years. It is typical for the temperature of the organic-rich material (source rock), which is buried in a sedimentary basin, to rise as the depth of burial increases. We can determine the temperature as a function of time if we know the stratigraphy of the underlying sediment sequence, the geothermal gradient, and the subsidence curve. Alkenes (olefins) and cykloalkenes (naphtenes), which have high H/C ratios, are more prevalent at lower degrees of maturity than aromates and polyaromates, which have a lower percentage at higher degrees of maturity. Consequently, when oil matures, its gas content increases. Water and molecules rich in oxygen are released first during this transformation of organic matter, followed by compounds rich in hydrogen. As a consequence of this conversion, the carbon is enriched, and the pale yellow hue of the leftover kerogen becomes orange, brown, and eventually black. The easiest way to record these gradations is to measure how much light fossil pollen and spores (palynomorphs) absorb. Other fossil types, such conodonts, may also have their colour changes studied.

Rock-Eval Analyses

To assess the hydrocarbon potential of sedimentary rocks, the area of petroleum geology and organic geochemistry often uses the Rock-Eval analysis method. It offers important details on the thermal maturity, organic content, and potential for hydrocarbon generation of source rocks. Under carefully regulated settings, a rock sample is heated for the analysis, and the emitted gases and other factors are measured. Key components of Rock-Eval analysis include the following:

Organic Matter Content:

Rock-Eval analysis measures a rock sample's total organic carbon (TOC) content. For the purpose of assessing the rock's hydrocarbon potential, this measurement offers an indication of the quantity of organic material that is present.

Hydrocarbon Generation Potential:

By quantifying the hydrocarbons released from the rock during heating, the research sheds light on the possibility of hydrocarbon creation. This involves figuring out the S1 peak, which shows how much free hydrocarbons were produced during the thermal cracking of kerogen.

Thermal Maturity Assessment:

The thermal maturity of source rocks is often determined using the Rock-Eval analysis. It measures variables such the Tmax value, which relates to the temperature at which the organic matter attained its maximum potential for producing hydrocarbons, and the S2 peak, which reflects the volume of hydrocarbons produced by thermal cracking of kerogen. These variables serve as markers for the source rock's thermal history and degree of maturity.

Hydrocarbon Type:

The kind of hydrocarbons produced by the source rock may be determined via rock-eval analysis. The existence of oil- or gas-prone source rocks may be determined by examining the composition of the hydrocarbon gases emitted after heating.

Source Rock Evaluation:

Rock-Eval data is used to assess the calibre and potential for hydrocarbon production of source rocks. For the appraisal of resources and the discovery of petroleum, this information is essential. When combined with additional geological and geochemical information, the results from Rock-Eval analysis may be used to evaluate the prospectivity of sedimentary basins and pinpoint regions with a high hydrocarbon potential.

The organic composition, thermal maturity, and hydrocarbon production potential of sedimentary rocks are all usefully revealed by rock-eval investigations. The information gleaned from these examinations is useful for the petroleum industry's exploration methods, hydrocarbon prospectivity evaluation, and identification and characterisation of source rocks.

Composition of Petroleum

The term "biodegradation" describes the natural process in which microorganisms break down organic materials into simpler molecules. When referring to biodegradation in the context of petroleum, we mean the microbial breakdown of hydrocarbons found in crude oil or other petroleum products.

Some microbes may use hydrocarbons as a source of energy and carbon when petroleum is released into the environment, whether via natural seepage or human activity. These bacteria, sometimes referred to as hydrocarbon-degrading microorganisms, have the ability to metabolise and disassemble hydrocarbon molecules into simpler chemicals. Temperature, the presence of nutrients, oxygen levels, and the makeup of the petroleum are some of the variables that affect the biodegradation process. Hydrocarbon-degrading bacteria may flourish and start the biodegradation process under the right circumstances.

Petroleum generally degrades over time in phases. The microbes first devour the more readily biodegradable hydrocarbons, such as light fractions and volatile molecules. As a consequence, the chemical makeup of the petroleum may change, changing its physical characteristics, such as increasing viscosity and decreasing volatility. The bacteria target the increasingly complicated and less soluble hydrocarbons as the biodegradation process advances. As a consequence, the hydrocarbons may partially break down, forming intermediate molecules and producing metabolic waste products such organic acids and carbon dioxide. Depending on the microbial activity and environmental factors, biodegradation may range in intensity from moderate to severe.

While biodegradation may naturally help lessen the negative effects of oil spills or releases on the environment, it can also affect how oil is recovered and processed. Petroleum may sometimes lose part of its economic value and become harder to extract or refine as a result of substantial biodegradation. Overall, biodegradation is a significant natural process that affects how petroleum behaves in the environment and determines its destiny. For environmental evaluation, rehabilitation activities, and the management of petroleum resources, it is crucial to comprehend the processes driving biodegradation and its consequences on the composition and characteristics of petroleum [10]–[12].

CONCLUSION

Source rocks are essential to the development and agglomeration of petroleum resources. They are sedimentary rocks rich in organic material that have the capacity to produce and release hydrocarbons under certain geological circumstances. The thermal maturity, composition, and geochemical study of source rocks reveals important information about their capacity to produce hydrocarbons. Organic material coming from terrestrial or marine sources accumulates in source rocks. The kind and quantity of organic materials affect the rocks' capability for storing hydrocarbons.

The alteration of organic materials in source rocks by thermal maturation results in the production of hydrocarbons. Temperature, pressure, and the make-up of the organic matter are only a few examples of the variables that affect how much hydrocarbon is produced. Hydrocarbons make up the majority of petroleum, with varied amounts of paraffins, naphthenes, and aromatics. The source rock and other geological variables affect the unique composition of petroleum, which affects its chemical and physical characteristics.

The thermal maturity of the source rocks may be determined using geochemical analysis, which also sheds light on how much hydrocarbon is produced there. Thermal maturity is assessed using variables such total organic carbon (TOC), vitrinite reflectance, and Rock-Eval analyses.

Through porous and permeable routes, petroleum produced in source rocks migrates and builds up in reservoir rocks. Finding and evaluating petroleum resources depend on having a thorough understanding of migratory routes and trapping processes. Petroleum and source rocks may be geochemically analysed to provide signals that can be used to pinpoint the source and age of hydrocarbons, gauge the level of biodegradation, and identify the kind of petroleum (oil vs. gas). Petroleum exploration and resource evaluation depend heavily on petroleum geochemistry. It assists in locating possible source rocks, analysing their ability to produce hydrocarbons, and determining the amount and quality of available petroleum resources. In general, source rocks and petroleum geochemistry are essential for understanding how hydrocarbon resources are formed, composed, and distributed. Geochemical analysis allows scientists and petroleum geologists to make well-informed choices on the oil and gas industry's exploration and production plans, resource evaluations, and environmental impact analyses.

REFERENCES

[1] K. McCarthy, K. Rojas, M. Niemann, D. Palrnowski, K. Peters, and A. Stankiewicz, "Basic petroleum geochemistry for source rock evaluation," *Oilf. Rev.*, 2011.

[2] A. R. Rabbani and M. R. Kamali, "Source rock evaluation and petroleum geochemistry, offshore SW Iran," *J. Pet. Geol.*, 2005, doi: 10.1111/j.1747-5457.2005.tb00091.x.

[3] S. Larter, "Some pragmatic perspectives in source rock geochemistry," *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 1988, doi: 10.1016/0264-8172(88)90001-3.

[4] K. Bjørlykke, "Subsurface water and fluid flow in sedimentary basins," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_10.

[5] E. Lafargue, F. Marquis, and D. Pillot, "Rock-Eval 6 applications in hydrocarbon exploration, production, and soil contamination studies," *Revue de l'Institut Francais du Petrole*. 1998. doi: 10.2516/ogst:1998036.

[6] H. I. Petersen, J. Andsbjerg, J. A. Bojesen-Koefoed, and H. P. Nytoft, "Coal-generated oil: Source rock evaluation and petroleum geochemistry of the Lulita oilfield, Danish North Sea," *J. Pet. Geol.*, 2000, doi: 10.1111/j.1747-5457.2000.tb00484.x.

[7] A. S. Komacki, "Petroleum geology and geochemistry of miocene source rocks and heavy petroleum samples from Huasna Basin, California," *AAPG Mem.*, 1996, doi: 10.1306/m66606c32.

[8] S. Yang and B. Horsfield, "Critical review of the uncertainty of Tmax in revealing the thermal maturity of organic matter in sedimentary rocks," *International Journal of Coal Geology*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.coal.2020.103500.

[9] M. L. N. Kagya, "The source rock and petroleum geochemistry of the Early Jurassic Poolowanna Formation, Eromanga Basin," *Thesis*, 1997.

[10] O. M. C. de Oliveira *et al.*, "Environmental disaster in the northeast coast of Brazil: Forensic geochemistry in the identification of the source of the oily material," *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.marpolbul.2020.111597.

[11] H. I. Petersen and T. Brekke, "Source rock analysis and petroleum geochemistry of the Trym discovery, Norwegian North Sea: A middle Jurassic coal-sourced petroleum system," *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2001, doi: 10.1016/S0264-8172(01)00033-2.

[12] T. G. Powell, "Petroleum geochemistry and depositional setting of lacustrine source rocks," *Marine and Petroleum Geology*. 1986. doi: 10.1016/0264-8172(86)90045-0.

CHAPTER 15

A BREIF DISCUSSION ON PETROLEUM MIGRATION

Dr. Deepjyoti Mech, Assistant Professor,
Department of Petroleum Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India.
Email Id: - deepjyotimech@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

In sedimentary basins, hydrocarbon resources accumulate and are distributed via a complicated process called petroleum migration. For oil and gas exploration and production to be effective, it is crucial to understand the processes and variables that affect petroleum migration. The transfer of hydrocarbons from source rocks, where they are produced, to reservoir rocks, where they accumulate, is referred to as petroleum migration. Buoyancy, pressure differences, and underlying geological formations all play a role in the migratory process. Numerous geological features, including as faults, fractures, and porous rock layers, may be used as migratory paths. The formation and outflow of hydrocarbons are influenced by the type and composition of the source rock, including its organic content, thermal maturity, and porosity.

KEYWORDS:

Fluid Phase, Fluid Fracture, Oil Gas, Reservoir Rocks, Source Rock.

INTRODUCTION

For the movement and buildup of hydrocarbons, reservoir rocks that are porous and permeable are necessary. Petroleum is transported through and stored in reservoir rocks. Seals or caprocks, which are impermeable rock layers, are essential for capturing and keeping migrating hydrocarbons within reservoirs. These seals stop hydrocarbons from escaping upward. Petroleum is moved by differences in fluid pressure between source rocks and migration paths. While hydrodynamic factors may affect the direction and amount of migration, overpressure in the source rocks might promote it. Faults and folds in the earth's crust may operate as conduits or obstructions for the movement of petroleum. Favourable structural components may improve migration routes and capture hydrocarbons. The distribution and accumulation of hydrocarbons may be influenced by the timing of hydrocarbon formation, migration, and structural events across the basin's geological history.

Locating prospective reservoirs and determining the amount and quality of hydrocarbon resources depend on having a thorough understanding of the migratory history of petroleum. The distribution of hydrocarbons in sedimentary basins is predicted using computational modelling, geochemical analysis, seismic imaging, well logging, and other methods.A key step in the creation and development of oil and gas reservoirs is petroleum migration. It describes how hydrocarbons migrate from the rocks that serve as their sources to the rocks that serve as their reservoirs, where they build up and may be retrieved. Buoyancy forces, pressure differences, and underlying geological features all work together to cause petroleum to migrate.

Hydrocarbons are produced as a consequence of the transformation of organic materials during the burial and thermal maturation of source rocks. The hydrocarbons begin to move away from the source rocks as they are produced. The existence of porous and permeable channels in the subsurface, such as fractures, faults, and permeable sedimentary layers, facilitates the migratory process [1]–[3]. Because hydrocarbons are buoyant and are lighter than the surrounding formation fluids, petroleum migrates as a result. The hydrocarbons produced go upward through the subsoil in search of low-pressure regions. The differential in hydrostatic pressure between the source rocks and the prospective reservoir rocks is what drives migration. Migration paths may vary in complexity and involve lateral migration within porous and permeable reservoir rocks as well as vertical migration via faults or fractures. Geological features like anticlines or fault traps, which may serve as barriers or conduits for the transport of hydrocarbons, have an impact on the migration process as well.

The migratory hydrocarbons may come into contact with various geological formations and trapping processes as they travel into the subsurface. These traps may take the form of stratigraphic traps generated by changes in reservoir rock qualities, such as variations in porosity and permeability, as well as structural traps like anticlines or fault traps. For effective petroleum exploration and resource evaluation, it is crucial to comprehend petroleum migration. Geoscientists can pinpoint regions with ideal circumstances for the movement and accumulation of hydrocarbons by examining the geological and structural features of a region as well as the characteristics of the source rocks and prospective reservoir rocks.

The process by which hydrocarbons travel from source rocks to reservoir rocks is known as petroleum migration. It moves over porous, permeable routes in the subsurface and is propelled by buoyancy forces and pressure differences. Geoscientists can better forecast the distribution and buildup of oil and gas resources by studying petroleum migration, which will benefit in the search for and production of hydrocarbons.

DISCUSSION

Migration describes the movement of oil from the source rock to the reservoir rocks. In order to forecast the direction of petroleum migration and trapping, it is crucial to comprehend this process. In the past, a variety of ideas have been put out, but it is now evident that petroleum is mostly carried as a distinct phase and that the process is primarily fueled by the buoyancy of petroleum compared to water. For most substances, there is relatively little oil that can be dissolved in water. Gas, in particular methane, is significantly more soluble in oil and water, and its solubility rises with pressure as well. However, there is also relatively little flow for the transportation of petroleum in sedimentary basins. If the pressure is decreased as a result of uplift or as a result of pressure drop in a reservoir during production, significant volumes of gas may bubble out of water or oil [4], [5].

Primary Migration

Primary migration describes the movement of petroleum from a source rock into nearby rocks. Kerogen, a solid compound of extremely big molecules (polymers) produced from organic materials, may appear as laminae in a claystone or as distributed particles in the sediments. Before it produces petroleum, kerogen may be load-bearing and capable of transferring stress. As the kerogen develops, a large portion of this solid material disintegrates to produce oil or gas and is then converted into fluid phases. When compared to the initial volume of the solid phase in the source rock, this process increases the volume of the fluid phase (porosity) if the fluids are not quickly ejected. The void ratio, or Vr, is the relationship between the volume of the fluid phase (porosity) and the solid phase: Vr = /(1). During maturation, not all kerogen is converted to fluids. Coke is a solid byproduct that is left behind. Due to the possibility that the density of the oil, gas, and residual solids in the kerogen may be lower than the density of the initial kerogen, a volume expansion during kerogen maturation has often been expected to occur. In the case of oil generation, this growth may not necessarily be particularly significant.

Since the major impact is the change in void ratio when solid kerogen is transformed to fluid petroleum, the creation of oil would still contribute to the buildup of overpressure even if there was no overall volume growth. We may use the example of peering at frozen ground via winter-formed ice lenses to demonstrate this concept. Ice is a solid that can support the weight of the overburden, but when it melts in the spring, it turns into a fluid and, unless it is released, becomes a component of the porosity. Despite the fact that the volume of the fluid changes from ice to water through a decrease rather than an expansion, overpressure still occurs and minor mud volcanoes may sometimes emerge. Thin layers of sandstone or siltstone that are found in source rocks may act as conduits for the petroleum fluids produced by the kerogen. But if these more permeable layers aren't present, the permeability of the shale matrix is often too low to prevent fluid pressure from building up where petroleum is produced until fracture pressure is met.

If the source rock is made up of kerogen in a fine-grained clay-rich matrix, both the extremely high capillary pressures and the limited permeability will prevent oil from flowing out of the source rock. In such circumstances, oil cannot pass through the matrix and leave the source rocks. When the fluid pressure in the source rock reaches the fracture pressure, very thin open fractures that enable the evacuation of petroleum will form. The horizontal stress (h), which is typically less than the overburden stress (v), regulates the fracture pressure. In the source rocks, the kerogen is often not spread uniformly. Lack of bioturbation causes organic-rich mud produced under reducing circumstances to be thinly layered, and certain laminae may be virtually entirely made of kerogen (Figure 1). This fluid phase would have had to maintain the complete overburden tension (v) if these layers of kerogen later evolved into petroleum that was not ejected.

However, before the overburden stress (v) is achieved, the fracture pressure corresponding to (h) is surpassed. This allows petroleum to escape via vertical cracks (perpendicular to the direction of least stress). The production of fluid petroleum increases the amount of the fluid phase even if the kerogen is dispersed more evenly in the source rock. 20 percent of the volume is made up of source rock layers with a 10% TOC by weight. If ejection did not take place, maturation and fluidisation of 50% of the kerogen would raise the fluid content (porosity) by 100% if the water content of the source rock was 10%. Due to the high porosity of the shale, surplus fluid must be released during maturation in order to prevent the oil from being squeezed out by mechanical compaction.

Since the rate of petroleum production controls the main migration, the process seems to be quite unproblematic. The petroleum may either migrate out via the rock matrix in the source rocks, or hydrofracturing can produce enough permeability for the main ejection. A significant portion of the petroleum produced may be kept by the source rock if it is very lean, but in the case of richer source rocks, a sizable portion of the oil produced will be evacuated. However, nothing is known about the exact proportion of petroleum released from source rocks. Due to the poor permeabilities, it is often impossible to produce the petroleum that is still present in the source rock by digging wells.

However, it can have a lot of gas in it that will flow. Shale gas production has significantly increased recently, especially in North American Devonian and Carboniferous shales like the Barnett Shale (Mississippian). Horizontal drilling and artificially fracturing the shales increase production. Without mining the shale, it is often impossible to produce the residual oil. Most oil shales are source rocks that have not been sufficiently submerged to develop and release petroleum. They may be mined and the petroleum produced by heating the kerogen to roughly 500°C in ovens if they have been elevated and exposed [6]–[8].

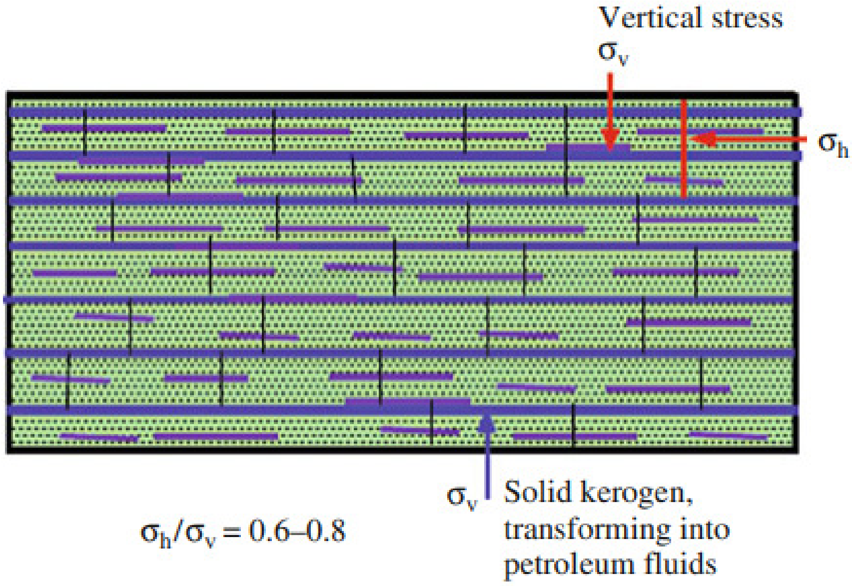


Figure 1: Schematic illustration of a source rock.

Secondary Migration of Petroleum

Secondary migration, or flow in two or three phases, is the phrase used to describe the movement of petroleum from source rocks to reservoir rocks. The relative permeability for petrol or oil becomes crucial at this point. In water with little oil or gas saturation, hydrocarbons only exist as tiny droplets that do not flow due to capillary resistance and a negligibly weak buoyancy impact. The relative permeability for hydrocarbon is thus extremely low, limiting the amount of migration that may take place. The migration of a distinct hydrocarbon phase is constrained by the capillary forces opposing movement via narrow pore throats. Oil droplets are held back by capillary forces in the fluid phase, but if there is a pressure gradient, water will flow through them. On the other hand, asphalt-rich oil, which may result from biodegradation, adheres to the grain surfaces that are obviously oil-wet and allows water to pass through the pores.

A sedimentary basin will always have low average oil saturation on a much greater scale. Since water is the only continuous component at this size, regional fluid pressure variations in sedimentary basins will only cause water to migrate. Following the original ejection from the source rock, the oil and gas phases will travel upward along paths where the petroleum is concentrated, propelled by buoyancy. In this manner, localised high oil saturation is possible, enhancing relative permeability. Petroleum may be trapped in both local and large scale dead ends (micro-traps) when flow is impeded by high capillary entry pressure or poor permeability. Secondary migration necessitates the establishment of a continuous channel with high petroleum saturation. The flow of water is often absent when oil or gas rises and gathers in traps. Due to the cap rock's limited permeability, the trap is effectively a hydrodynamic "dead end" until it has cracked. The permeability with regard to water flow is further diminished if an oil or gas lag begins to build up close to the top of the structure. While capillary forces may hinder the movement of oil, if permeability to water is nonetheless not zero, water may sometimes slowly seep through the cap rock even if the permeability is extremely low (Teige et al. 2005). Large amounts of gas may be drawn out of solution in the water or oil phase and accumulate as distinct gas accumulations when overburden pressure is reduced as a result of uplift and erosion. The oil may then migrate to the surface or into a shallower trap as a result of this gas filling the structures and pushing the oil out of the traps.

The amount of oil that migrates along a continuous channel relies on the size of the pore throats. Therefore, rather than the radius of the pores themselves, the tiniest pore throats are crucial for migration. It is possible to experimentally measure the capillary forces by calculating the pressure needed to push oil and water through sandstone. According to Schowalter (1997, the pressure recorded corresponds to oil columns 0.3 to 3 metres high. The displacement pressure is much larger in siltstones and corresponds to hundreds of metres or even kilometres of oil column in mudstones and shales. In the lab, controlling the surface characteristics of oils is challenging.

Mercury works better in experiments as a displacing fluid, and mercury injection curves are the accepted method for analysing the effective pore size distribution in reservoir rocks. Since the surface tension is known, it is possible to compute the critical pore throat radius (R). With increased cementation and the resulting loss of porosity and permeability in sandstones, displacement pressure rises. However, even sandstones that are quite well cemented are not often obstacles to oil migration. Well-cemented carbonate layers, thin clay layers, and stylolites may all work well as migration seals. The primary issue is often not migration across sandstones, but rather migration through shales from one body of sandstone to the next. Clay smears on faults in sandstones may decrease permeability and raise capillary entry pressure. While rocks are more brittle (overconsolidated) and fractures and faults may be more open during uplift, faults and fractures typically are not open conduits for fluid movement during progressive burial. Shales and mudstones with a depth of more than 3 km have significant capillary entry pressure and relatively poor porosity and permeability.

The depth (3-5 km) at which oil is produced as well as the depth of the reservoir restrict the vertical extension of oil columns. Oil has not displaced water in the shales, according to fluid extractions from shales that are in close proximity to oil and condensate reservoirs (Olstad et al., 1997). Although they permeate through shales at relatively modest rates, gas molecules, and notably methane, are significantly smaller than those that make up oils. The Darcy Law (F = P • k/) governs the flow of water and oil, respectively. The permeability k, the potentiometric gradient (P), and the viscosity () all influence the flow. The size of the connections between the holes along the flow channel determines the permeability in the case of a single fluid phase.

The permeability of one fluid phase depends on the relative abundance of the other fluid phase when two fluid phases, such as water and oil, are present. In a water-wet rock, there is a coating of water around each grain, lowering the cross-section of the pore throats open to oil flow. Oil can only flow through the portion of the fluid phase that is filled with oil. Oil saturation, or the proportion of oil in the pore space relative to the total fluid volume, affects the permeability of oil in the presence of water. In a similar way, the cross sections of the water-filled portions of the pores between grains determine the permeability with regard to water flow. The permeability of a fluid phase in the presence of another fluid phase is compared to the permeability in the same rock when only one fluid is present to determine the relative permeability. The relative permeability of oil is so low that it will travel extremely slowly or not at all in comparison to water if the proportion of oil in the pores is less than 20–30%. When pore networks are filled with water, oil, and gas, we must take 3-phase flow into account. Shales often have poor water permeability and considerably lower oil permeability compared to water. Shales act as a barrier to the movement of oil both because of their limited permeability and the capillary forces that oppose the flow.

Migration in Sandstones

The routes with the lowest capillary entrance pressures are used for migration. The majority of the time, they are sandstones or open cracks. Due to the buoyancy of oil in water, the migration mostly follows the higher portions of sandstone strata. The migration seldom passes vertically through sandstones. Therefore, it is crucial to consider how the permeable sandstones and the underlying shales transition. Maximum permeability occurs towards the top of the sequence, just under the shale, in a sandstone that is coarsening upward (Figure 2). Sandstones deposited in shallow marine settings (shoreface, beach, and delta-front successions) have this characteristic. These highest beds have significant porosity and permeability when they are poorly cemented, which results in high oil saturation and relative permeability. The permeability and capillary entry pressure in fining-upward units such river sandstones and turbidites decrease upward.

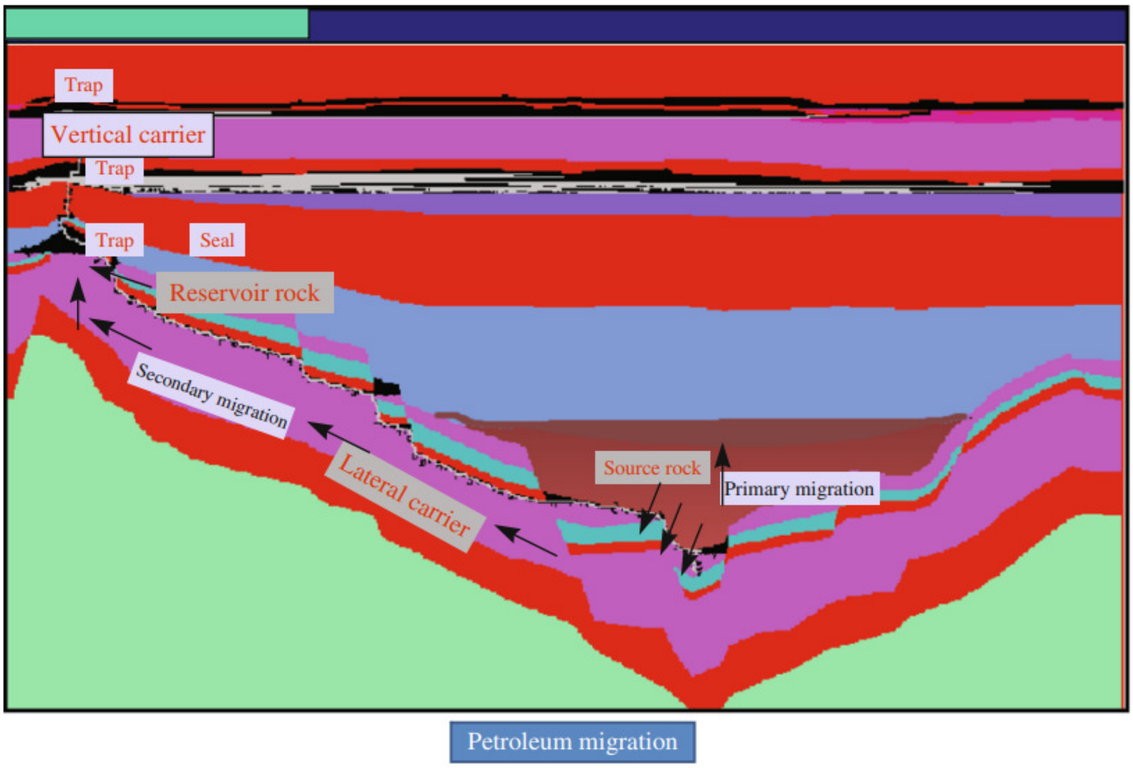


Figure 2: Petroleum migration in a sedimentary basin.

Oil will flow against the mudstones or shales that lie above sandstone or siltstone strata due to its buoyancy. In this case, siltstones and poorly sorted sandstones will have lower permeability and oil saturation, and flow rate and oil saturation will be lower compared to cleaner sands. Laminae that act as barriers for oil may be found in sedimentary formations like cross-bedding because of their very high capillary entry pressure. This might create tiny traps for the gas and oil during migration, increasing the loss. The direction of migration is upward, and this may be predicted using 3D seismic data for normal planar sand sheets that have the potential to fold. However, the sandstone geometry also influences the direction of migration in elongate sandstone entities like river channels and certain underwater bars. Abandoned channels might develop into individual traps, and synsedimentary faults (also known as growth faults) could catch evaporating oil and gas.

Migration of Oil through Shales

Since linking sandstone bodies from the source rock to the reservoir are seldom continuous, petroleum must move via shales. Different processes may cause fluid to flow through shales:

1. Intergranular flow under matrix control
2. Flow in hydro-fractured fractures (mainly microfractures) caused by overpressure
3. Flow through macrofractures caused by tectonic activity

The pore size distribution and diagenetic changes affect the capillary entry pressure and permeability in the case of matrix-controlled flow. The usual pore diameters in shales range from a few hundred to fewer. At depths of 3–4 km and less than 10–km, respectively, the pore diameter on the Gulf Coast may be smaller than 25 (Leonard 1993).

However, the permeability will depend on the dimensions of the biggest pores and the connections between them. If the biggest connecting pore size is under 50, crude oil's asphaltenes are around the same size (Tissot and Welte 1978, p. 170). If the pore throats are below this threshold, a sieving effect should be seen in relation to the size of the organic molecules. Oil migration likely only occurs along cracks and not through the shale matrix in low permeability shales. When the shales are fragile, tectonic uplift and extension may cause fractures to occur. Because the horizontal pressures attempting to repair the fractures are often minimal, quite significant fractures may result. This is a typical reason why reservoirs leak gas and oil. However, almost all onshore reservoirs and many offshore reservoirs have undergone some uplift from their maximum burial depth and as a result are overconsolidated and are likely to be brittle in a rock mechanical sense.

Tectonic shear causes cracks during ductile deformation, which makes them no more permeable than the matrix during basin subsidence. Oil fields are often under extreme pressure, and many of them leak petroleum at the crack pressure at the top of the structure. This indicates that the rocks' tensional strength and horizontal stress are what regulate the pressure. It is implied that faults are no longer used as channels for fluid movement when pressures are near to those at which rocks can fracture and allow oil to pass through. Fluid pressure ought to have stayed below fracture pressure if faults were a zone of weakness. The top of the structure will often correspond with a fault in the case of traps created by rotating fault blocks. Even if there is gas leaking from the reservoir's top, seismic data does not always show that it is occurring along the fault since the cap rock will fracture in about the same location.

Migration Through Tectonically Fractured Rocks

Although both processes may co-occur, a precise difference must be established between various forms of tectonic fracturing and hydrofracturing. It's crucial to differentiate between faults created by subsidence and faults created by uplift. Some of the reported cracks may have developed as a result of soft sediment deformation immediately after deposition or may be linked to growth faulting, and as such are unrelated to tectonic stress. The stress direction may have changed multiple times during subsidence and elevation, resulting in fractures with various orientations. Therefore, we cannot assume that all of the fractures opened or closed simultaneously. The majority of late-stage uplift-produced fractures are anticipated to be open, although they don't really matter for the circumstances of oil migration. However, the deformation of the rocks that are now exposed often dates back a considerable time. Numerous research have been done on the fracturing patterns in land outcrops to function as analogies for subsurface fracture patterns that are difficult to trace from seismic or core data. This has therefore been used as the foundation for complex fluid modelling and how oil migration is affected by it, assuming that in some circumstances the fractures are open and more permeable than the matrix and that in other cases they are closed and less permeable than the matrix.

Trapping of Petroleum Below a Cap Rock

If the flow into the trap is greater than the flow out of the trap, a cap rock catches petroleum. Petroleum may leak from a trap via the matrix of the seal or through cracks caused by tectonic movement or overpressure.

If there is leaking through a shale's matrix, it is because the capillary forces are insufficient to counteract the petroleum's buoyancy. As we have seen, the capillary forces depend on the wetting angle and pore size, whereas the buoyancy forces depend on the petroleum's density and the column's thickness. The reservoir's shale could thus support an oil or gas column with a maximum thickness (Schowalter 1979). Despite this, there is a lot of evidence that fine-grained shales buried 3–4 km below have more than enough capillary force to support an oil column of several hundred metres. Gas has a lower density than solids, which results in more buoyancy, but it also has a larger interfacial tension.

Additionally, gas may much more thoroughly dissolve in aqueous phase and seep through cap rock. Given that the fracture pressure is achieved sooner, it may appear logical to think that the additional pressure brought on by the petroleum's buoyancy may be crucial for fracturing. The additional pressure of the petroleum column is balanced by capillary forces, however, and does not affect the water pressure needed to achieve fracture pressure (Bjrkum et al. 1998). A little above the top of the petroleum column, the fracture pressure may also be achieved in the cap rock. The pressure in the petroleum phase will resist the horizontal stress and control when the fractures open and shut after hydrofracturing has begun and petroleum has become the continuous phase in the cracks.

Practically speaking, this may not matter since if there isn't enough horizontal water or oil leaking, pressure will continue to build within the building until it reaches the fracture pressure, which will then cause the structure to leak. Thus, a cap rock acts as a valve that gradually lets water or oil in while keeping the pressure constant at the fracture pressure. Because a high flow rate would reduce the pressure and seal the fissures, the flow is not likely to be extremely episodic [9]–[11].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the creation and buildup of oil and gas reservoirs depend on the crucial process of petroleum migration. After hydrocarbons are produced by the thermal maturation of organic materials in source rocks, petroleum migration takes place. The produced hydrocarbons look for routes to leave the source rocks. For effective petroleum exploration and resource evaluation, it is essential to comprehend petroleum migration. Geoscientists may increase the likelihood of finding commercially viable oil and gas reserves by identifying locations with favourable migratory paths and trapping conditions by researching the geological and structural features of a region. Overall, petroleum migration is a dynamic process where hydrocarbons move from source rocks to prospective reservoir rocks under the influence of buoyancy and pressure differences.

To locate and assess prospective hydrocarbon reserves, it is crucial to research migratory routes and trapping processes. Geoscientists may decide on exploration tactics, reservoir characterisation, and resource estimate in the petroleum business by thoroughly comprehending petroleum migration.

REFERENCES

[1] F. Hao, H. Zou, and Z. Gong, "Preferential petroleum migration pathways and prediction of petroleum occurrence in sedimentary basins: A review," *Petroleum Science*. 2010. doi: 10.1007/s12182-010-0001-4.

[2] F. Hao, H. Zou, Z. Gong, and Y. Deng, "Petroleum migration and accumulation in the Bozhong sub-basin, Bohai Bay basin, China: Significance of preferential petroleum migration pathways (PPMP) for the formation of large oilfields in lacustrine fault basins," *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2007, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2006.10.007.

[3] J. Zeng *et al.*, "Petroleum Migration Characteristics in the Northeastern Part of the Baiyun Depression, Pearl River Mouth Basin, South China Sea," *Acta Geol. Sin. (English Ed.*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/1755-6724.14623.

[4] S. Xu, F. Hao, C. Xu, H. Zou, and Y. Quan, "Oil migration through preferential petroleum migration pathway (PPMP) and polycyclic faults: A case study from the Shijiutuo Uplift, Bohai Bay basin, China," *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2016.03.025.

[5] F. Baur and B. Katz, "Some practical guidance for petroleum migration modeling," *Mar. Pet. Geol.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.marpetgeo.2018.03.003.

[6] L. Zhang, Y. Wang, M. W. Li, Q. Z. Yin, and W. Zhang, "Relative sorption coefficient: Key to tracing petroleum migration and other subsurface fluids," *Sci. Rep.*, 2019, doi: 10.1038/s41598-019-52259-6.

[7] D. H. Welte, T. Hantschel, B. P. Wygrala, K. S. Weissenburger, and D. Carruthers, "Aspects of petroleum migration modelling," *J. Geochemical Explor.*, 2000, doi: 10.1016/S0375-6742(00)00105-9.

[8] C. Wang *et al.*, "Origin, migration, and characterization of petroleum in the Perdido Fold Belt, Gulf of Mexico basin," *J. Pet. Sci. Eng.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.petrol.2020.107843.

[9] S. Borazjani, D. Kulikowski, K. Amrouch, and P. Bedrikovetsky, “Composition changes of hydrocarbons during secondary petroleum migration (case study in cooper basin, Australia),” *Geosci.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/geosciences9020078.

[10] J. Song *et al.*, “Petroleum migration and accumulation in the Liuchu area of Raoyang Sag, Bohai Bay Basin, China,” *J. Pet. Sci. Eng.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.petrol.2020.107276.

[11] B. M. Krooss, L. Brothers, and M. H. Engel, “Geochromatography in petroleum migration: A review,” *Geol. Soc. Spec. Publ.*, 1991, doi: 10.1144/GSL.SP.1991.059.01.11.

CHAPTER 16

WELL LOGS: A BRIEF INTRODUCTION

Shreya Banerjee, Assistant Professor
ISDI - School of Design & Innovation, ATLAS SkillTech University, Mumbai, India
Email Id- shreya.maulik@atlasuniversity.edu.in

ABSTRACT:

Well logs are crucial instruments in petroleum geoscience for analysing the potential of hydrocarbon reservoirs and evaluating underlying rock formations. The significance, varieties, and uses of well logs in petroleum exploration and production are briefly discussed in this abstract. Measurements taken during drilling are known as well logs, and they may be used to learn important details about the lithology, porosity, permeability, fluid content, and other characteristics of the underlying rocks. They are an essential source of information for describing reservoirs, comprehending the characteristics of rocks, and making defensible choices for drilling operations.

KEYWORDS:

Drilling Mud, Fluid Saturation, Geoscientists, Gamma Ray.

INTRODUCTION

Numerous well logs, including electrical, acoustic, radioactive, and electromagnetic logs, are often utilised. Each kind of log measures certain physical characteristics and provides distinct information about underlying formations. Information on fluid saturation, lithology, and permeability may be found in electrical logs like as resistivity and conductivity logs. Acoustic logs help assess the mechanical strength and porosity of rocks by measuring the length of time sound waves take to travel through the rock. While electromagnetic logs aid in the identification of hydrocarbon-bearing formations and the evaluation of reservoir productivity, nuclear logs use radioactive sources to examine the characteristics of rock and fluid.

Well logs are used at different phases of the petroleum exploration and production process. They support prospect identification, reservoir boundary delineation, and reservoir quality evaluation during exploration. Well logs are a crucial resource throughout the development phase for well location, production method optimisation, and reservoir potential assessment. Additionally, well logs are essential for monitoring and managing reservoirs since they may be used to monitor fluid flow, spot changes in reservoir characteristics, and assess production performance over time.

Integration of various log observations, calibration against core samples and seismic data, and application of mathematical models and statistical methods are all required for the interpretation of well logs. Geoscientists may create thorough subsurface models using this interpretation method, as well as assess reservoir attributes and forecast reservoir behaviour and production potential. Well logs are essential in the study of petroleum geology because they provide important details about the characteristics of underlying rock formations. Geoscientists and engineers rely heavily on these logs to describe and assess oil and gas resources.Measurements made during drilling are recorded in well logs, usually using specialised equipment known as logging tools. These instruments are dropped into the wellbore and used to gauge different aspects of the fluids and rocks in the area. The data is then visually shown as a log, thus the term "well log." The geological formations that were found when digging a well are detailed in well logs. They provide information on the lithology of the rocks, their porosity, permeability, fluid saturation, and other crucial factors. This information is essential for characterisation of the reservoir, appraisal of the formation, and decision-making for drilling, completion, and production activities [1]–[3]. Numerous well log types are often employed in petroleum geology. Among the logs that are most commonly used are:

Gamma Ray (GR) Logs:

The gamma radiation that the rocks naturally release is measured by these logs. They aid in lithology identification and facilitate the differentiation of strata such as limestone, sandstone, and shale.

Resistivity Logs:

These logs measure the rocks' electrical resistivity. They can distinguish between water- and hydrocarbon-bearing zones and offer information on fluid saturation.

Porosity Logs:

The potential for fluid storage is shown by these logs' estimates of the pore space inside the rocks. They are essential for estimating the quantity of hydrocarbons present and for evaluating the quality of the reservoir.

Density Logs:

These logs measure rock density, which may be used to determine mineral composition, porosity, and bulk density. They help differentiate between various rock kinds and determine lithology.

Sonic Logs:

These logs track how long sound waves take to pass through the rocks. They aid in determining the mechanical, porosity, and permeability characteristics of rocks.

Geoscientists may get a complete knowledge of underlying formations by examining and interpreting well logs. They may use this information to decide wisely on the potential of the reservoir, the best location for the well, drilling tactics, and production methods. For maximising the economic feasibility and effective exploitation of hydrocarbon resources, well logs are essential instruments.

Well logs are crucial instruments in petroleum geology for assessing subsurface formations, to sum up. They provide important details on lithology, porosity, permeability, fluid saturation, and other important factors. Geoscientists are able to successfully explore, develop, and produce oil and gas resources by using well log analysis to influence their choices [4], [5].

DISCUSSION

Logging is a method of capturing the physical characteristics of the rocks that a well has drilled through. Although logging began with crude electric logs that measured the electrical conductivity of rocks, it is today a very complex and refined technique. In this article, just the fundamental ideas will be covered; nevertheless, there are various specialty textbooks on well logging. The water pressure in the formation and any discovered gas or oil are both balanced using drilling mud. Additionally, it is utilised to carry drill bit-produced rock shavings. Readings may be significantly impacted by drilling mud that has seeped into the formation or is coating the hole (the mudcake).

One benefit is the ability to continuously capture downhole data, which gives a clear picture of both gradual and sudden changes in physical qualities from one bed to the next. Typically, just a few of the reservoir rocks are cored, and samples of cuttings from the other portions of the well only provide a broad understanding of the lithology. The whole drilling sequence can only be adequately shown by the well logs. The additional benefit of logging is that it can quantify in-situ rock qualities that are impossible to evaluate in a lab from either core samples or cuttings [6]–[8].

After the drilling equipment has been removed from the well, a probe equipped with measuring tools is sent down to record the borehole. The data is processed close to the well on land, or on the platform in the case of offshore wells, using measurements taken by the instruments in the logging tool at intervals of between 3 and 15 cm. Specialised businesses that do well logging under contract for the oil industry. While drilling, some logging and seismic analysis may also take place.

Except for radioactive logs, most logs need direct contact with the rock through the well's walls and must be run after each stage of drilling before the steel casing is fitted in the well. Modern logging equipment are incorporated inside a long steel pipe that is just 10 cm in diameter and can capture many sorts of data simultaneously.

The most significant log kinds are as follows:

1. Self-potential, resistivity, and conductivity logs for electric systems. Electric logs were the first kind used in petroleum exploration since the measurements were very easy to produce.
2. This required measuring the self-potential (SP), or the current set up between the drilling mud and the porewater in the rock (formation), as well as the electric resistance (R) (resistivity).
3. Gamma logs track the naturally occurring gamma ray emissions from the well's bedrock. Using a neutron source to emit radiation into the rocks yields a neutron log. Then, the absorption of water and hydrocarbons primarily by hydrogen atoms is measured.
4. Acoustic (sonic) logs - these instruments measure the speed at which sound moves through rocks, and they in particular reveal the porosity of the rocks. Additionally, it shows if a liquid or gas phase is present in the pore spaces.

Both qualitative and quantitative data are gathered from well records. In terms of quality, the distinctive responses from various kinds of rocks are employed for stratigraphic correlation, sedimentary facies identification, etc.

On the basis of logs, it is feasible to quantitatively assess the porosity and, if necessary, the water and oil saturation of the rock. The most crucial source of information for comparing sequences in a sedimentary basin and assessing the characteristics of reservoir rocks and their fluid content for production is well log data.

Knowing the kind of drilling mud that was used is crucial since it has a significant impact on the information that appears on the logs. The salinity of the mud will affect the resistivity whether they are freshwater or saltwater muds. The usage of oil-based mud has increased recently as well. The pressure in the drilling mud must be greater than the water pressure in the formation because else the mud wouldn't be forced into the formation. Because the solid mud particles are concentrated there when the fluid permeates the formation, a mudcake will line the borehole wall (Figure 1). There will be a flushed zone further inside the formation where virtually all of the main pore fluids are replaced with drilling mud fluids. Beyond this, there will be a region where drilling fluids will partly replace the principal pore fluids. The zone that has been invaded is this. Flushing and invasion will be relatively restricted in rocks with poor permeability, such as shales, tight sandstones, and mudstones. However, drilling mud and fluid may penetrate porous sandstones considerably more deeply, affecting the formation's electrical and other characteristics (Figure 1).

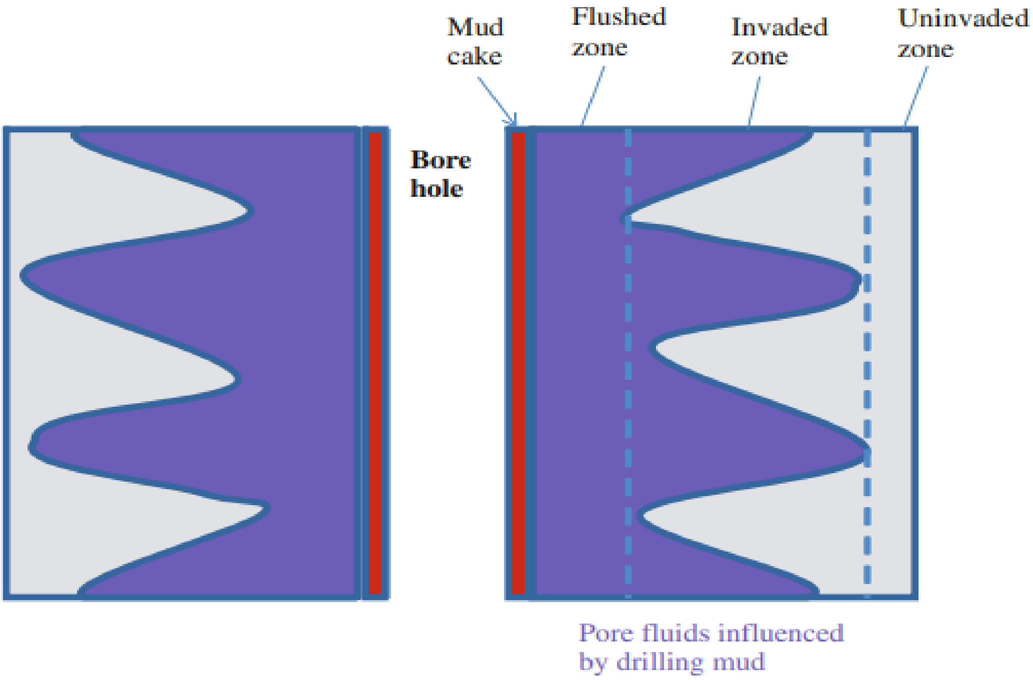


Figure 1: The drilling mud will invade the formation to different degrees.

Resistivity Logs

The electrical resistivity of rocks and fluids encountered in a wellbore is measured using resistivity logs, a form of well log used in petroleum geology. They aid in identifying fluid types, calculating fluid saturation, and assessing reservoir attributes in addition to provide useful information on the formation's electrical conductivity. The fundamental idea underlying resistivity logs is that various fluids and rock types have variable electrical conductivities. The logs measure the resistance that an electric current encounters as it travels through the rocks, and the findings are often expressed in ohm-meters (m) or other pertinent units.

Several methods and technologies may be used to generate resistivity logs, including:

Induction Logs:

A transmitter coil is used by induction logs to create an alternating current in the nearby rocks. The electrical conductivity of the formation affects how the secondary coils detect the voltage response. The information gathered may be used to calculate resistivity and distinguish between various fluids, including water and hydrocarbons.

Laterologs:

Laterologs are made up of several electrode pairs that are pressed up against the borehole wall. These electrodes are connected by an electrical current, and the voltage is monitored. The depth of the examination is based on the distance between the electrodes. Geoscientists may assess fluid saturation and the formation resistivity by analysing the voltage response.

Microresistivity Logs:

Small electrodes used in microresistivity logs make touch with the borehole wall. These electrodes give high-resolution data while measuring the resistivity of thin rock layers. For assessing thinly laminated strata and locating hydrocarbon-bearing zones within complicated reservoirs, microresistivity logs are very helpful.

Array Resistivity Logs:

Array resistivity logs make use of several data taken at various investigational depths. The investigation of resistivity changes with depth is made possible by these logs, which offer resistivity data at different depths within the formation. In complicated reservoirs, array resistivity logs are often used to evaluate fluid distribution and identify possible conduits or flow obstacles.

Geoscientists may derive a variety of interpretations and assessments from the resistivity log data, including:

1. Based on the resistivity characteristics of various rock types (such as sandstone, shale, and limestone), distinguish between them.
2. Based on lower resistivity values than formations with water, locate hydrocarbon-bearing zones.
3. Calculate reservoir fluid distribution and water saturation levels.
4. Identify the porosity of the rock and infer a permeability estimate.
5. Examine variations in resistivity to detect drilling fluid invasion or borehole stability problems.

A crucial tool for evaluating a formation and characterising a reservoir is a resistivity log. Geoscientists may more effectively site wells, comprehend subsurface formations, and make judgements about reservoir development and production methods by combining resistivity log data with other well logs and geological information.

Spontaneous Self-potential Logs (SP Logs)

One of the earliest measures employed in the oil business, these logs measure the currents produced naturally in the rocks by the differences in the composition of the pore fluids. The electric potential that forms between a moving electrode that travels up and down the well and a stationary electrode that is close to the surface is measured by self-potential logs. Due to the variations in electrolyte concentrations between the liquid phases, an electric current is produced. The relative changes in the spontaneous self-potential are what we are most interested in.

As a result, the SP log is calibrated such that the background value, also known as the shale baseline, is given by the self-potential in shale in the relevant geological sequences. Readings typically fall within a 100 mV range, with sandstones producing greater negative readings (to the left) than shale. Additionally, negative readings will be obtained for porewater that has a lower resistivity than drilling mud. The readings provide a decent idea of a sandstone's degree of sorting or clay content, or how pure it is. The obviously visible coarsening- and fining-upward sequences on SP logs make them ideal for evaluating sedimentary facies. A SP log are often employed to represent the permeability and sorting of clastic sediments, which once again regulate conductivity. Less negative readings will be recorded in sandstones with reasonably fresh porewater.

Because there is less of a difference between marine porewater and fresh formation water compared to mud filtrate, the readings will be positive. Readings using SP logs cannot be produced while using an oil-based mud. Due to poor water phase conductivity, sandstones with significant oil or gas saturation will exhibit low SP response. Beds that are more permeable than shale will trigger an SP log response, but only if the porewater has a different resistivity than the mud filtrate. The SP value may be used to calculate the water resistance in porous sandstones.

Depending on porosity, readings from limestones often fall between those that correspond to a shale and a well-sorted sandstone. In certain depth ranges, porewater generates self-potential, thus SP logs often do not provide the finest bed resolution. SP logs are often replaced with gamma-ray logs, which provide essentially the same information with greater bed resolution, in part because of this.

Radioactive Logs

1. Gamma Logs

Gamma-ray logs quantify the naturally occurring radioactivity created in the rock. The elements potassium, thorium, and uranium are responsible for significant gamma radiation in common sedimentary rocks. 1 ppm uranium equates to 3.65 ppm thorium and 2.70% potassium in terms of relative contribution to the total observed radiation. The majority of these elements are often found in shale, and shale typically has a higher gamma score than sandstones. The gamma log will provide results that are mostly a function of the sand/shale ratio, despite the fact that the potassium concentration of clay minerals varies considerably and that sandstones also contain potassium. As a result, it and the SP log are fairly similar.

In comparison to purer, quartzose sandstones, sandstones with a high amount of feldspar and mica will have a correspondingly higher gamma intensity. Due to their high mica and K-feldspar concentration, the Jurassic sandstones from the North Sea exhibit quite exceptionally high gamma values. Due to the potassium concentration, glauconite will also have a strong gamma ray reaction. There are certain sandstones that contain a lot of uranium or thorium. The gamma log, on the other hand, often provides a reliable indicator of the sand/shale ratio and will exhibit patterns that are comparable to those seen in SP logs.

Black shales, in particular, generate noticeable responses on the gamma log because to their high organic content. They often contain more uranium than other types of shales. The North Sea's Kimmeridge (Upper Jurassic) shale has 2–10 ppm of uranium, making it a significant source of gamma radiation. As a result, it is often referred to as "hot shale".

Typically, shales contain less than 1 ppm of uranium but 10–12 ppm of thorium, which accounts for around 50% of the total radioactivity. The intensity of a standard radiation source (micrograms of radium per tonne) may be used to calibrate the scale used to detect gamma radiation, which ranges from 1 to 200 in API units. Limestones emit relatively little gamma radiation and have very low U, Th, and K contents. Gamma logs, however, are particularly sensitive markers of potassium salts in evaporite sequences.

A scintillation counter that can distinguish between various gamma radiation energy levels (expressed in MeV from rock) has recently been added to the gamma-ray logging tool. This allows it to differentiate between the relative contributions of K (1.46 MeV), U (1.76 MeV), and Th (2.62 MeV). Because the concentration of thorium in shales changes less than that of uranium and potassium, it is sometimes feasible to acquire a better approximation of the shale composition by utilising simply the Th log, for example.

Such logs are known as spectral gamma-ray logs. The minimal gamma ray measurements in clean sand are used to determine the gamma ray index. The highest reading found in the shales is noted. After that, the shale percentage (Vsh) may be determined. Source rocks are sometimes referred to as "hot shales" and typically have rather high uranium contents. This is due to the reduction and concentration of uranium on organic materials in oxidised saltwater.

Neutron Logs

A probe that emits neutrons rapidly is the foundation of the neutron log technique. They are neutron rays. Rock, and in particular the water within the rock, absorbs energy. The absorption of the neutron radiation is essentially a function of hydrogen atom concentrations (Hydrogen Index), and this is caused by collisions with atomic nuclei. The decrease in neutron radiation may then be monitored at a given distance from the neutron source. The secondary X-ray radiation produced by the neutron radiation's absorption may also be used to track the neutron collision frequency. Since water makes up the majority of the hydrogen in rocks, neutron logs may represent a sediment's water content and, therefore, its porosity.

Although clay minerals also include hydrogen in their structure, neutron logs are especially effective for figuring out how porous shale is. The neutron log response is not permeability-dependent, unlike SP logs and resistivity logs. Gas has a lower hydrogen index than water and oil because it is less dense and contains fewer hydrogen atoms per unit volume. Therefore, gas may be detected and distinguished from oil using neutron logs. Low porosity (low water content) rocks will absorb less radiation and hence have a high reaction on the neutron log.

In contrast, porous sandstones have minimal reaction (Fig. 16.2). When the pores are filled with oil and gas because they contain less hydrogen per unit volume compared to water, neutron porosity calculations provide inappropriately low porosity estimates. The gas effect is what is meant by this. Because clay minerals, which are the solid phase, also contain hydrogen, neutron logs show greater porosity in sandstones and shales with high clay concentration. The shale effect is particularly noticeable in mudstones with a high concentration of smectite and kaolinite as opposed to those with a preponderance of illite and chlorite. However, since carbonate minerals contain minimal hydrogen, limestones provide fairly accurate porosity readings.

Coal and other kerogens, which are organic materials, have high hydrogen indices. The best logging instrument for figuring out the porosities of reservoir rocks is a neutron log, which can be used to transform the hydrogen index of limestones and sandstones into neutron porosity units. The form of neutron porosity might be PHIN, NPHI, or N. After taking into account any anomalies in the borehole, compensated neutron logs (CNT or CN) provide the porosities in percent.

Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) records may be used to differentiate between free water in the pore space and H2O and OH groups in minerals. Additionally, the NMR signal of bound water on mineral surfaces differs.

Sonic or Acoustic Logs

In petroleum geology, sonic or acoustic logs are a particular kind of well log that are used to gauge how quickly sound waves move through rocks. These logs include useful details on the lithology, porosity, and mechanical characteristics of subsurface formations encountered in a wellbore.

The fundamental idea underlying sonic logs is that the density, elastic characteristics, and fluid content of rocks all have an impact on how quickly sound waves move through them. Geoscientists may deduce a number of formation features by monitoring the time it takes for sound waves to travel.

There are two main kinds of sonic logs that are often used:

Compressional or P-wave Sonic Logs:

Rocks' resistance to compressional or P-waves is measured by compressional sonic logs. The quickest waves, known as P-waves, may pass through both solids and fluids. These logs include details on the rocks' compressional velocities (Vp), which are principally determined by their density and elastic modulus. The units used to express P-wave velocity are commonly feet per second (ft/s) or kilometres per second (km/s).

Shear or S-wave Sonic Logs:

Shear or S-waves' passage through rocks is measured using shear sonic logs. S-waves can only go through solids and move more slowly than P-waves. These logs include details on the shear velocity (Vs) of the rocks, which is principally determined by the shear modulus of the rocks. Additionally, shear velocities are given in feet per second (ft/s) or kilometres per second (km/s) units. Geoscientists may evaluate and assess the acoustic log data and calculated velocities in a number of ways:

Lithology Identification:

The wellbore's lithological changes may be detected with the use of sonic logs. Shale, sandstone, limestone, and other formations may be distinguished from one another because various rock kinds have distinctive sonic velocities.

Porosity Estimation:

To calculate formation porosity, sonic logs are often employed. The porosity of the rocks has an inverse relationship with the sound wave velocity. Lower porosity produces greater sonic velocities, whereas larger porosity often produces lower velocities.

Fluid Saturation Evaluation:

Geoscientists may determine the fluid saturation of the rocks by comparing compressional and shear velocities. The velocities may be impacted by the presence of hydrocarbons or other fluids, and variations from the predicted velocities may indicate fluid-filled gaps.

Mechanical Properties:

Sonic logs may provide light on a rock's mechanical characteristics, such as its elastic moduli. These characteristics are critical for determining the rock's fluid transmission capability, estimating rock strength, and evaluating reservoir quality. To develop a thorough understanding of underground formations, sonic logs are often combined with other well log data, including as resistivity, gamma ray, and density logs, as well as geology and engineering knowledge. By combining several log measures, geoscientists can characterise reservoirs more accurately and choose where to drill wells and how to best maximise output. Sonic or acoustic logs are essential instruments in petroleum geology for identifying lithology, estimating porosity, determining fluid saturation, and evaluating mechanical qualities. Their analysis, along with that of other well log data, is crucial for comprehending reservoir characteristics, optimising drilling operations, and boosting the general success of oil and gas exploration and production activities [9], [10].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, well logs are an essential instrument in petroleum geology that aid in the discovery, development, and production of oil and gas reservoirs by providing important information on subsurface formations. Well logging is the process of taking notes during the digging of a well in order to analyse the geologic features of the surrounding rock formations. The lithology (rock type), porosity (pore spaces inside the rock), permeability (ability of fluids to pass through the rock), water saturation (% of pore space filled with water), and hydrocarbon content (presence and distribution of oil and gas) are all variables that may be revealed by well logs. Geologists and petroleum engineers may use this data to make well-informed choices about the potential of reservoirs, where to drill wells, and how to best maximise output. Different well log types are utilised to gather certain data. Gamma-ray, resistivity, density, neutron, and acoustic logs are a few examples of typical well logs. Each log measures a separate rock's physical characteristic and offers information about the rock's composition and fluid content.

Analysing the log answers and contrasting them with well-known rock features and reservoir parameters is the process of interpreting well logs. Cross-plots, correlations, and other methods are used by geologists to map the reservoir architecture, determine fluid content, determine lithology, and calculate porosity and permeability. By using this data, drilling and completion operations may be made more efficient and the economic feasibility of a reservoir can be determined.When conducting integrated analyses using additional subsurface data, such as seismic data and core samples, well logs are very helpful. Integrating these variables improves the precision of reservoir models and forecasts and enables a more thorough knowledge of the underlying geology.

REFERENCES

[1] A. Nazeer, S. A. Abbasi, and S. H. Solangi, "Sedimentary facies interpretation of Gamma Ray (GR) log as basic well logs in Central and Lower Indus Basin of Pakistan," *Geod. Geodyn.*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.geog.2016.06.006.

[2] K. Bjorlykke, "Well logs: A brief introduction," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics*, 2010. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-02332-3_16.

[3] V. Sandoz *et al.*, "Improving mental health and physiological stress responses in mothers following traumatic childbirth and in their infants: Study protocol for the Swiss TrAumatic biRth Trial (START)," *BMJ Open*, 2019, doi: 10.1136/bmjopen-2019-032469.

[4] C. Pellegrini, S. Patruno, W. Helland-Hansen, R. J. Steel, and F. Trincardi, "Clinoforms and clinothems: Fundamental elements of basin infill," *Basin Res.*, 2020, doi: 10.1111/bre.12446.

[5] M. Landekić, A. Gajšek, G. Seletković, and M. Šporčić, "The role of ecological certification in the context of sustainable forest management in the Republic of Croatia," *Sumarski List*. 2021. doi: 10.31298/sl.145.7-8.8.

[6] C. V. Camp and J. E. Outlaw, "Constructing subsurface profiles using GIS," *Adv. Eng. Softw.*, 1993, doi: 10.1016/0965-9978(93)90069-6.

[7] K. Bostrom *et al.*, "Digital self-management in support of patients living with chronic pain: Feasibility pilot study," *JMIR Form. Res.*, 2020, doi: 10.2196/23893.

[8] A. Hossain *et al.*, "Household food insecurity, income loss, and symptoms of psychological distress among adults following the Cyclone Amphan in coastal Bangladesh," *PLoS One*, 2021, doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0259098.

[9] J. Nzinga *et al.*, "Implementation experience during an eighteen month intervention to improve paediatric and newborn care in Kenyan district hospitals," *Implement. Sci.*, 2009, doi: 10.1186/1748-5908-4-45.

[10] B. B. Gupta and S. A. Harish, "A risk transfer based DDoS mitigation framework for cloud environment," in *Communications in Computer and Information Science*, 2019. doi: 10.1007/978-981-15-1384-8_10.

CHAPTER 17

A STUDY ON SEISMIC EXPLORATION

Shreya Banerjee, Assistant Professor
ISDI - School of Design & Innovation, ATLAS SkillTech University, Mumbai, India
Email Id- shreya.maulik@atlasuniversity.edu.in

ABSTRACT:

In geophysics and petroleum geology, seismic exploration is a key method used to examine the subsurface structure and locate probable hydrocarbon sources. An overview of seismic exploration's concepts and uses in the oil and gas sector is given in this abstract. The process of seismic exploration entails creating and capturing synthetic vibrations, often with the use of controlled explosions or seismic sources. Reflections, refractions, and diffractions are produced as a result of how these vibrations interact with various rock strata as they move through the subsurface. These signals are captured by seismic sensors known as geophones or hydrophones, which then transform them into digital data. Advanced algorithms and processing methods are then used to the obtained seismic data to improve signal quality, reduce noise, and provide seismic pictures of the subsurface. Seismic sections or profiles, as these pictures are often known, provide important details on the geological features, such as faults, folds, and stratigraphic strata.

KEYWORDS:

Energy Resources, Gas Sector, Seismic Data Seismic Exploration.

INTRODUCTION

A key method used in geophysics and petroleum geology to investigate and characterise subsurface structures, including oil and gas reserves, is seismic exploration. It includes the creation of precise photographs of the Earth's subsurface using seismic waves produced by controlled energy sources. Integration of geological knowledge, well log data, and other geophysical data is necessary for the interpretation of seismic data. To locate prospective hydrocarbon traps, gauge reservoir attributes like thickness and depth, and evaluate the overall subsurface structure, geologists and geophysicists analyse seismic pictures. Numerous uses for seismic exploration may be found in the oil and gas sector. It is essential for exploring and finding new hydrocarbon reserves, for optimising drilling sites, and for determining the potential of reservoirs and production plans.

Additionally, improved oil recovery (EOR) approaches are planned using seismic data to track fluid motions, evaluate reservoir performance, and monitor reservoir performance. The precision and resolution of subsurface imaging have been greatly enhanced by developments in seismic collection and processing technologies, such as 3D and 4D seismic surveys. Seismic data integration with other geophysical techniques, such as electromagnetic and gravity surveys, has improved subsurface characterisation and decreased exploration risks. Seismic exploration aims to learn more about the underlying geology, including if prospective hydrocarbon reserves are there and if so, how big and how they are shaped. Making choices on exploration and production activities in the oil and gas sector requires knowledge of this information.

The first step in seismic exploration is seismic data collecting, which entails placing seismic sensors, also known as geophones, on the surface of the Earth in a precisely calculated grid pattern. When energy sources like vibrating vehicles or explosions produce seismic waves, these sensors are able to identify and capture such waves. As the seismic waves travel into the subsurface, they bounce off various rock formations and geological structures [1].

Following acquisition, the seismic data is processed in order to improve its quality and extract valuable information. These processing phases include, among others, data filtering, noise reduction, deconvolution, and migration. Geoscientists then evaluate the processed seismic data to produce subsurface models and maps. Seismic interpretation is examining the seismic data to spot probable hydrocarbon traps as well as subsurface features including faults, folds, and stratigraphic layers. Geoscientists may deduce the rock attributes, such as lithology, porosity, and fluid content, which are essential for assessing reservoir potential, by analysing the reflection patterns and amplitudes of the seismic waves.

Geology, geophysics, and engineering knowledge are all combined in the interdisciplinary process of seismic exploration. By locating locations with the greatest hydrocarbon potential, it lowers exploration risks and offers useful insights into underlying structures. Decisions on the placement of exploratory wells, development plans, and reservoir management are guided by this information. The resolution and precision of subsurface imaging have recently been enhanced by improvements in seismic acquisition technology, such as 3D and 4D seismic. These methods provide geoscientists the ability to more clearly visualise and examine the subsurface, which leads to more accurate reservoir characterisation and improved exploration and production processes. Seismic exploration has, overall, transformed the oil and gas business by offering a non-intrusive and affordable way to image and comprehend the Earth's subsurface. It still plays a crucial role in the discovery and exploitation of hydrocarbon resources, aiding in the efficient and long-term expansion of energy supplies.

DISCUSSION

Seismic surveying is without a doubt the most crucial of all geophysical exploration techniques, mainly because it is able to identify both large- and small-scale subsurface structures. Seismic techniques, to put it simply, require estimating, from the returns of sound waves that have travelled through the Earth, the forms and physical characteristics of the underlying strata. By drilling enormous creases (anticlines) in exposed rocks and natural oil seeps, early wildcatters discovered oil [2], [3].

Geologists used seismic surveys to locate less evident oil and gas traps after these early oil discoveries and drillings. Since the early 1900s, seismic technology has been used to measure sea depths and locate icebergs. In 1924, seismic data were utilised for the first time in the finding of an oil well in Texas (Milligan 2004). The fundamentals of seismic data gathering, processing, and interpretation are covered in a number of basic and advanced textbooks (e.g., Telford et al. 1990, Sheriff and Geldart 1995, Yilmaz 2001). In this chapter, the essential ideas used in seismic exploration are reviewed.

In general, there are two different kinds of seismic methods (reflection and refraction), with reflection seismic being the way most often utilised for oil exploration. This method creates a two- or three-dimensional (2D or 3D) picture of the subsurface (Figure 1). The process of creating, capturing, and analysing sound waves that move through the Earth (also known as seismic waves) results in the subsurface seismic pictures. The density and velocity variations between the rocks reflect the waves back to the surface, and the rate and intensity of this reflection reveals what is underneath. There are three techniques to create seismic pulses for exploratory surveys: using an air pistol, a vibrating device, or dynamite. For maritime acquisition, an air-gun source is employed, while vibrator and dynamite are the usual sources for terrestrial seismic surveys. The intensity of the pulses generated by various seismic surveys varies, based on site-specific elements like the kinds of rocks, the depth at which the survey must image the source, and others.

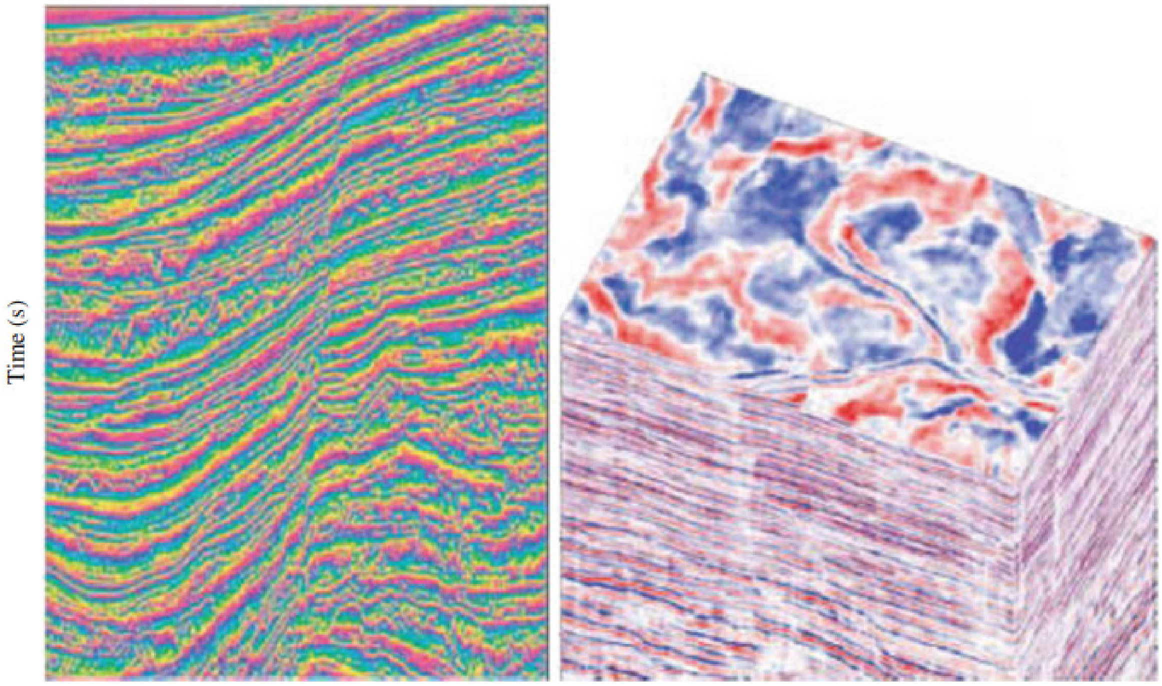


Figure 1: Subsurface imaging by 2D (left) and 3D (right) seismic reflection data.

Basic Principles

Data collection is the initial phase in seismic exploration, and is often done from the surface. Reviewing the basic concepts that control how seismic waves pass through layered medium is required in order to comprehend the seismic data. Four distinct seismic wave types flow through the Earth's strata from any seismic source: compressional (P-wave), shear (S-wave), Rayleigh (ground roll), and love waves (Figure 2). There will be a distinct density and velocity for each stratum. Surface waves, such as Rayleigh and Love waves, move roughly parallel to the Earth's surface. Although surface waves go deep into the Earth, their relevance for oil and gas exploration is restricted since they do not travel straight into the planet's interior. P- and S-waves, on the other hand, are sometimes referred to as body waves because they radiate outward in all directions from the source, travel into the Earth's interior, and are very important in seismic research. Swaves travel more slowly than P-waves. The force is delivered in the direction the P-wave is going, making it a longitudinal wave.

The earth has to advance in such manner. Since the ground or Earth cannot be compressed, energy is transported rather rapidly. In the S-wave, the medium is transversely displaced (up and down relative to the line of travel), and in order to shear and transmit the wave, the medium must move away from the material immediately next to it. The S-wave travels more slowly than the P-wave during seismic occurrences because this requires more time. Fluids do not allow for the shearing of S-waves, hence they cannot pass through them.

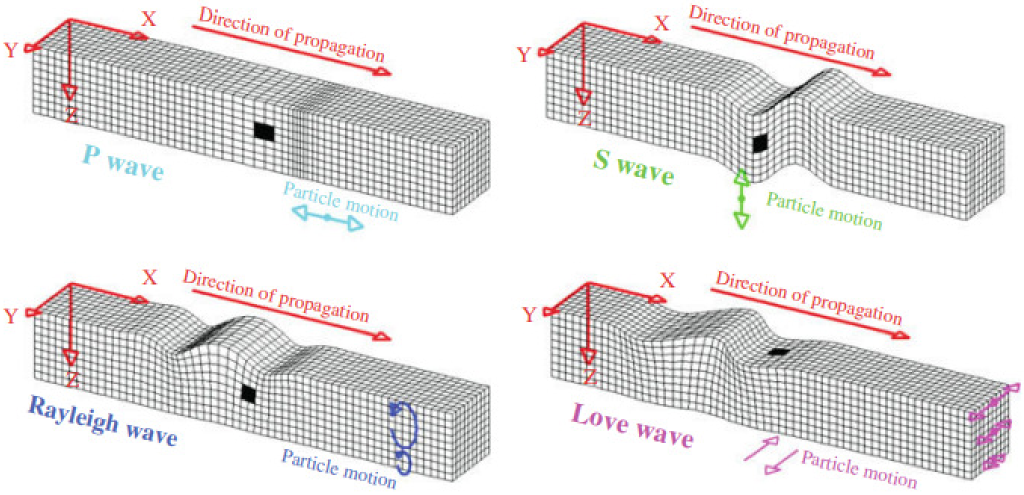


Figure 2: Propagation of body (P and S) and surface (Rayleigh and Love) waves as a Function of particle motions.

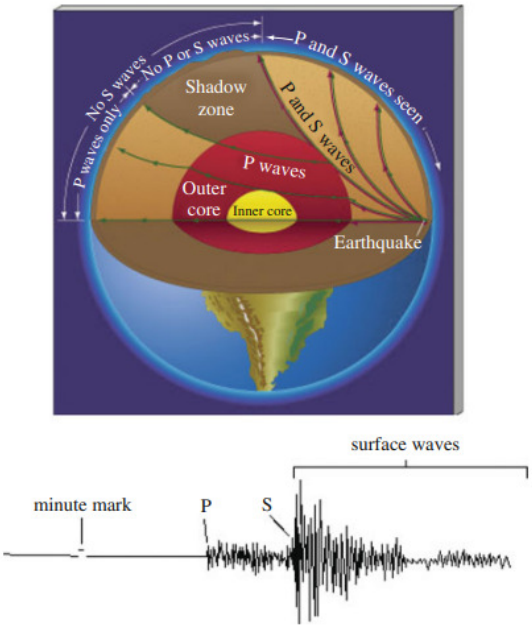


Figure 3: A cross-section of the Earth with earthquake wave paths defined and their shadow zones highlighted (top). A typical seismogram (bottom) shows the fastest P-waves.

Seismic Sources and Reservoirs

At this stage, it is crucial to comprehend the fundamentals of seismology. Seismology is founded on the idea that the crustal rocks transmit sound waves. Seismographs (receivers) on the opposite side of the Earth may pick up pressure waves (natural sources of seismic waves) that are produced by powerful earthquakes (Figure 3). However, the petroleum geologist uses artificially produced pulses (seismic sources) while doing seismic investigation. The basic idea is that acoustic energy is transmitted into the Earth by an impulse source. When this energy comes into contact with barriers between two layers, it is reflected and refracted in a variety of ways. Acoustic energy that is reflected or refracted is measured by sensors (seismic receivers) that are positioned on the surface. Despite being significantly weaker than the natural seismic source (earthquake), these artificial sources are more concentrated on regions of particular stratigraphic relevance.

Seismic Sources

In land and marine acquisitions, many seismic sources are often employed. In coastal conditions, seismic energy is often produced using arrays of air cannons, but on land, explosives or vibrators are frequently used. An air-gun is a tool that shoots highly compressed air into the water around it (usually at 2,000–5,000 psi) (Figure 4). A vibrator is a mechanical source that may be adjusted to transmit seismic vibrations into the earth (Figure 4). A controlled-frequency sweep is broadcast into the ground via a vibrator source. To create a signal that may be used, the collected data are then convolved with the first sweep. As a seismic source, dynamite—an explosive and detonator—is used. The explosives are helped to ignite by the detonator. A shock wave that is produced when dynamite explodes travels at a rate of 3,000–10,000 m/s. It offers a burst of impulsive energy that may be used to create ground motion. Before firing, a hole is often drilled to pack dynamite and then filled with thick mud. A broad range of seismic energy may be captured by the bandwidth and useable signal intensities produced by dynamite. In order to adapt to geological and climatic circumstances, it uses a range of energy sources with different explosive output characteristics [4].

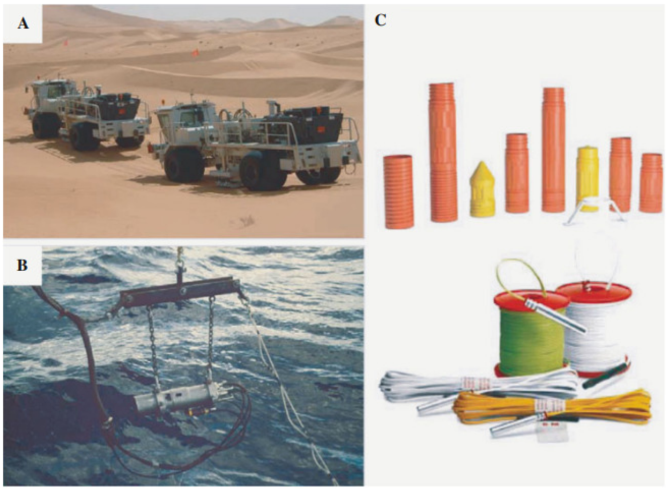


Figure 4: (a) Seismic acquisition in a desert where vibrator is the most common source of seismic energy. (b) An air-gun before deployment in the water. It releases compressed air into the water during marine seismic survey.

Seismic Acquisition

A crucial stage in the seismic exploration process is seismic acquisition. In order to gather information about the underlying geology and possible hydrocarbon resources, it entails the deployment of energy sources and seismic sensors. To produce subsurface models and maps, the seismic data is next analysed and interpreted. The installation of seismic sensors, commonly referred to as geophones or hydrophones, on the Earth's surface is the first step in the seismic acquisition process. To provide proper coverage and data gathering, these sensors are carefully placed in a grid pattern. Hydrophones are placed in the water and used in maritime situations to record seismic waves.

Energy sources under control are utilised to produce seismic waves. These sources may be vibrating vehicles, explosive charges, or specialised equipment known as seismic vibrators in land seismic collection. Air cannons or marine vibrators are often utilised as energy sources in maritime seismic collection. These sources produce pressure waves or vibrations that go through the subsoil[5], [6].

Different rock layers and structural features are encountered by seismic waves as they go through the subsurface. A complicated pattern of wave energy distribution is produced as a consequence of the reflection, refraction, and diffracting that these contacts create in the waves. These waves are picked up by the seismic sensors, which then transform them into electrical signals that may be recorded and analysed further. Seismic trace refers to the information gathered by the seismic sensors. Each seismic trace depicts the subsurface's reaction to seismic waves at a specific point. The sensors concurrently record several seismic traces while the energy source is moved along a specified route in order to get high-quality data.

Operations for seismic acquisition must be carefully planned and coordinated. When constructing the collection programme, variables including topography, access, environmental concerns, and survey goals are taken into account. To guarantee precise and dependable data capture, a number of factors, including source-receiver separation, recording intervals, and shot intervals, are optimised. Following acquisition, the seismic data is processed in order to improve its quality and extract valuable information. These processing phases include, among others, data filtering, noise reduction, deconvolution, and migration. Geoscientists use the processed seismic data to detect subsurface features, assess reservoir potential, and make defensible choices about exploration and production operations.

Data quality and resolution have significantly improved as a result of developments in seismic collection methods. The accuracy and comprehension of subsurface structures and reservoir behaviour have been improved by methods like 3D seismic acquisition, where data is gathered from several angles and orientations, and 4D seismic acquisition, which incorporates repeated surveys over time.

The oil and gas sector depends heavily on seismic collection because it offers important information about the underlying geology and lowers the risks associated with exploration. Geoscientists and engineers are able to build effective production plans, choose drilling sites, and optimise exploration techniques, all of which contribute to more efficient and productive operations in the hunt for hydrocarbon resources[3], [7].

Seismic Processing

In the last several decades, seismic technology has accomplished incredible accomplishments in exploration and production. Raw seismic data is what we capture during the collection phase and it includes true signals as well as noise and multiples. To get better pictures of the subsurface from this raw data, sophisticated techniques in signal processing and wave theory must be used. The main goal of the processing step is to strengthen the signal and reduce multiples and coherent and noncoherent sounds. Unwanted seismic energy that maintains phase from one seismic trace to the next is called coherent noise. This might include ground roll that moves through the top of the surface layer, also known as the weathering layer, and waves that move through the air at extremely low speeds, such as airwaves or air blast. Multiples, another kind of coherent energy that is confined within a layer, is energy. Multiples are internal reflections inside a layer that develop when there are unusually high reflection coefficients. The water-bottom multiples often predominate in marine seismic. Nonseismic noise, such as that produced by wind, moving cars, overhead power lines or high-voltage pickup, petrol fires and water injection facilities, is a common example of noncoherent energy. Seismic processing, as previously mentioned, is the modification of seismic data to reduce noise, improve signal, and relocate seismic events to the proper position in space. Better interpretation is made possible by seismic processing because underlying features and reflection geometries are more readily seen. The standard seismic acquisition sample rate is 2 ms.

It is guaranteed that the recorded signal and noise are correctly sampled and are hence unaliased when the incoming wavefield is digitally captured at widely separated receiver sites. The ambiguity that results from inadequate sampling is known as aliasing. When the signal is sampled less than twice its cycle, it happens. The Nyquist frequency, which is equal to the inverse of 2t, where t is the sampling interval, is the greatest frequency that a sampling interval may determine. The Nyquist frequency will cause frequencies above it to be folded back. A finer spatial sampling that is at least twice the waveform's Nyquist frequency may prevent aliasing in the noise-free situation [8], [9].

CONCLUSION

Seismic exploration, in both geophysics and petroleum geology, is a critical method for comprehending the underlying geology and locating probable hydrocarbon sources. To produce in-depth depictions and models of the Earth's subsurface, seismic data must be collected, processed, and interpreted. Seismic exploration permits the development and detection of seismic waves that travel through the subsurface via the use of energy sources and seismic sensors. The gathered data offers important knowledge regarding stratigraphic layers, faults, and other subsurface features. Geoscientists may determine the characteristics of rocks and assess the existence and potential of hydrocarbon resources by examining the patterns and amplitudes of seismic wave reflection. In order to achieve accurate and dependable data gathering, seismic acquisition activities need rigorous planning and optimisation. Technology advancements like 3D and 4D seismic collection have greatly increased the resolution and accuracy of subsurface imaging, allowing geoscientists to more clearly see and analyse the subsurface.

Geoscientists analyse the processed seismic data, analysing and combining the data to produce subsurface models and maps. These models aid in the selection of exploratory well locations, reservoir characterisation, and production optimisation strategies. By offering a non-invasive and affordable method of photographing and comprehending the subsurface, seismic exploration has revolutionised the oil and gas sector. By locating locations with the greatest hydrocarbon potential, it lowers the risks associated with exploration and promotes the efficient and long-term exploitation of energy resources. In general, seismic investigation is essential for discovering and exploiting hydrocarbon deposits. It aids in the effective development of oil and gas fields, enhanced reservoir management, and optimal resource utilisation. As technology continues to grow, seismic exploration also develops, offering more precise and thorough data to help energy sector decision-making processes.

REFERENCES

[1] B. Wang *Et Al.*, “Supercritical Co2 Source For Underground Seismic Exploration,” *J. King Saud Univ. - Sci.*, 2020, Doi: 10.1016/J.Jksus.2020.01.010.

[2] C. Wang *Et Al.*, “Origin, Migration, And Characterization Of Petroleum In The Perdido Fold Belt, Gulf Of Mexico Basin,” *J. Pet. Sci. Eng.*, 2020, Doi: 10.1016/J.Petrol.2020.107843.

[3] A. Al-Shuhail And S. Al-Dossary, “Introduction To Seismic Exploration,” *Advances In Oil And Gas Exploration And Production.* 2020. Doi: 10.1007/978-3-030-32948-8_1.

[4] Z. Yin, Y. Zhou, And Y. Li, “Seismic Exploration Wireless Sensor System Based On Wi-Fi And Lte,” *Sensors (Switzerland)*, 2020, Doi: 10.3390/S20041018.

[5] Z. Zhong And H. Li, “Analysis And Simulation Of Morphology Algorithm For Fiber Optic Hydrophone Array In Marine Seismic Exploration,” *J. Coast. Res.*, 2019, Doi: 10.2112/Si94-029.1.

[6] J. C. Joroenson, J. M. Ver Hoef, And M. T. Jorgenson, “Long-Term Recovery Patterns Of Arctic Tundra After Winter Seismic Exploration,” *Ecol. Appl.*, 2010, Doi: 10.1890/08-1856.1.

[7] H. Yu, K. Song, J. Yang, C. Wu, K. Zhong, And W. Lv, “Modeling And Research On Power System Of Distributed Sensor Networks For Long Streamers In Marine Seismic Exploration,” *Sensors (Switzerland)*, 2020, Doi: 10.3390/S20010028.

[8] J. A. Hildebrand, “Anthropogenic And Natural Sources Of Ambient Noise In The Ocean,” *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 2009, Doi: 10.3354/Meps08353.

[9] I. Gafych, I. Solodkyi, S. Iareshchenko, And Y. Renkas, “New Technologies Of Seismic Exploration In Ukraine,” *Ukr. Geol.*, 2021, Doi: 10.53087/Ug.2021.1-2(44-45).238890.

CHAPTER 18

EXPLORATIONAL ROCK PHYSICS THE LINK BETWEEN GEOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND GEOPHYSICAL OBSERVABLES

Aditya Gupte, Assistant Professor
ISDI - School of Design & Innovation, ATLAS SkillTech University, Mumbai, India
Email Id- aditya.gupte@atlasuniversity.edu.in

ABSTRACT:

In the realm of subsurface exploration, the relationship between geological processes and geophysical observables is crucially facilitated by explorational rock physics. In order to comprehend the connections between rock qualities and seismic, electromagnetic, or other geophysical data, it includes the study of the physical characteristics and behaviours of rocks and integrates geological knowledge with quantitative analysis. Explorational rock physics allows for a greater comprehension of subsurface structures, reservoir characteristics, and fluid distribution by examining the connections between geological processes and geophysical measurements. It offers a framework for analysing geophysical data in terms of the underlying geological characteristics, such as fluid content, lithology, porosity, and permeability.

Quantifying rock qualities, their spatial changes, and how they affect the spread of seismic waves or other geophysical signals are the core tenets of rock physics. In order to create empirical correlations and mathematical descriptions that connect geophysical observables to geological parameters, a variety of laboratory experiments, field observations, and theoretical models are put to use. In order to characterise reservoirs, estimate fluid saturation, and forecast rock parameters in unknown places, explorational rock physics is essential to the search for hydrocarbons. It helps with zone identification that may contain hydrocarbons, drilling and production strategy optimisation, and exploration risk reduction.

KEYWORDS:

Explorational Rock, Geological Process, Geophysical Observables, Seismic Interpretation.

INTRODUCTION

Explorational rock physics offers important insights into the characteristics and behaviour of rocks below the surface by acting as a link between geological processes and geophysical observables. It entails the investigation of the effects of rock characteristics on seismic and other geophysical responses, including mineral composition, porosity, and fluid content [1], [2]. Subsurface rocks' characteristics are shaped by geological processes such deposition, compaction, diagenesis, and fluid movement. Understanding the connections between these geological processes and the geophysical observations made using seismic surveys, well logs, and other geophysical methods is the goal of exploration rock physics.Geoscientists can analyse geophysical data and derive valuable information about the subsurface by looking at the physical and chemical characteristics of rocks. It offers a numerical framework for connecting the visible geophysical characteristics to the underlying geological characteristics. The investigation of elastic characteristics, including as seismic velocities and elastic moduli, is a crucial component of explorational rock physics. Knowledge the propagation of seismic waves and the ensuing seismic reactions requires a knowledge of the link between the mechanical behaviour of rocks and their elastic characteristics. Rock physics models may aid in the prediction of the seismic signatures of subterranean formations by characterising the elastic characteristics of rocks under various situations.

Explorational rock physics also looks at how fluid saturation and presence affect rock characteristics and geophysical reactions. The behaviour of fluids in the pore spaces of rocks, including water, oil, and gas, has a big influence on the elastic and electrical characteristics of the rock. Rock physics models may support the identification of hydrocarbon reserves and the estimation of fluid content by characterising the fluid-rock interactions. Additionally, rock physics offers a useful tool for characterisation and monitoring of reservoirs. Rock physics models may help in forecasting reservoir parameters, evaluating reservoir quality, and optimising production methods by fusing geology data, well logs, and geophysical data.

The improvement of reservoir management and the need for a deeper comprehension of underground formations are the driving forces behind the development of explorational rock physics. To understand the intricate connections between geological processes and geophysical measurements, it blends geological, physics, and engineering ideas. Explorational rock physics is crucial in bridging the gap between geological processes and geophysical observables. Our knowledge of the subsurface is improved, and data interpretation is made easier by quantifying the connections between rock qualities and geophysical responses. The identification and characterization of hydrocarbon resources, the optimisation of exploration and production operations, and the advancement of our general understanding of the Earth's subsurface all benefit from this information [3], [4].

DISCUSSION

The connection between qualitative geological factors and quantitative geophysical data is represented by the area of rock physics. Rock physics stands out as a significant technology in petroleum geophysics and has been an increasingly important component of quantitative seismic interpretation during the last ten years. In the end, the use of rock physics techniques in the petroleum sector may lower exploration risk and enhance reservoir predictions. This chapter discusses fundamental concepts in rock physics as well as field-tested techniques. It is shown how crucial it is to relate rock physics to geological processes, such as depositional and compactional trends. It has also been shown that, when predicting seismic reservoirs, lithology substitution may be just as important as fluid substitution. Extrapolating from existing wells is crucial for exploration and evaluation because it allows researchers to consider trends in burial depth as well as changes in the depositional environment.

In understudied peripheral fields, in satellite regions, or in new frontiers, rock physics may therefore more effectively restrict the geophysical inversion and classification issue. The best-practice process is then shown using real-world examples and case studies, along with any related drawbacks and difficulties. To forecast reservoir geology and fluids using seismic amplitudes, rock physics models are integrated with well log and pre-stack seismic data, sedimentological data, inputs from basin modelling, and statistical approaches [5].

Quantitative Seismic Interpretation Using Rock Physics

Seismic reflection data from traditional, qualitative seismic interpretation is used to identify and map geological features and/or stratigraphic patterns. Frequently, the definition of and drilling for hydrocarbon prospects has been done solely on the basis of this qualitative data. However, nowadays, the oil sector often uses quantitative seismic interpretation methods to characterise reservoirs and evaluate prospects. The post-stack amplitude analysis (brightspot and dim-spot analysis), offset-dependent amplitude analysis (AVO-analysis), acoustic and elastic impedance inversion, and forward seismic modelling are the most crucial of these approaches. If appropriately used, these approaches may provide the seismic interpreter with fresh insights into the underlying rocks and the pore fluids that make up those rocks. They aim to extract more information from the reflection amplitudes.

Seismic amplitudes include information regarding lithology, porosity, pore fluid type and saturation, as well as pore pressure, which cannot be learned via standard seismic interpretation. They largely reflect disparities in elastic characteristics between specific strata. Maps of seismic amplitude are becoming more and more crucial for determining reservoir boundaries and prospect appraisal. The amplitude patterns often provide a strong insight into depositional patterns, as demonstrated in Figure 1. The identification of subtle traps that are difficult to see through traditional (i.e., stratigraphic and structural) seismic interpretation may be done extremely well using seismic amplitude maps.

However, a quantitative relationship between the geological parameters and the rock physics characteristics is required to ensure that we comprehend the significance of the seismic amplitudes. Contrasts in elastic characteristics, which are used to scientifically explain seismic reflections, may be connected to geological factors using rock physics models. As a result, the use of rock physics models (e.g., Mavko et al. 2009, Avseth et al. 2005) may direct and enhance the qualitative interpretation. Additionally, by comprehending the relationship between geological factors and rock physics characteristics, we may steer clear of certain misunderstandings in seismic interpretation, notably those involving fluid/lithology, sand/shale, and porosity/saturation. It is quite usual to assume that the rock type and porosity remain constant throughout fluid substitution, omitting the potential that the lithology may shift from the brine zone to the hydrocarbon zone. Our ability to execute lithology substitution from rock types seen at a specific well site to rock types presumed to be present nearby is made possible by the relationship between rock physics and different geological characteristics, including cement content, clay volume, and degree of sorting. As a result, we are able to analyse the sensitivity of the reservoir quality as well as fluid types during the quantitative seismic interpretation of a reservoir [6], [7].

Also studied is the use of regional geological trends to limit rock physics models. Compactional trends and depositional trends are the two types of geological trends. Our capacity to forecast hydrocarbons will improve if we can forecast the predicted change in seismic response as a function of depositional environment or burial depth, particularly in regions with little or no well log data. The range of anticipated variability in rock characteristics is reduced by being aware of the geological limits in an exploration region, which also minimises the uncertainty in seismic reservoir prediction. This issue is seen in Figure 2, where the shallow interval at the shelf edge is the only well log control we have. Understanding the local rock physics trends is crucial before expanding the investigation into deeper-buried zones or farther-off deep-water situations.

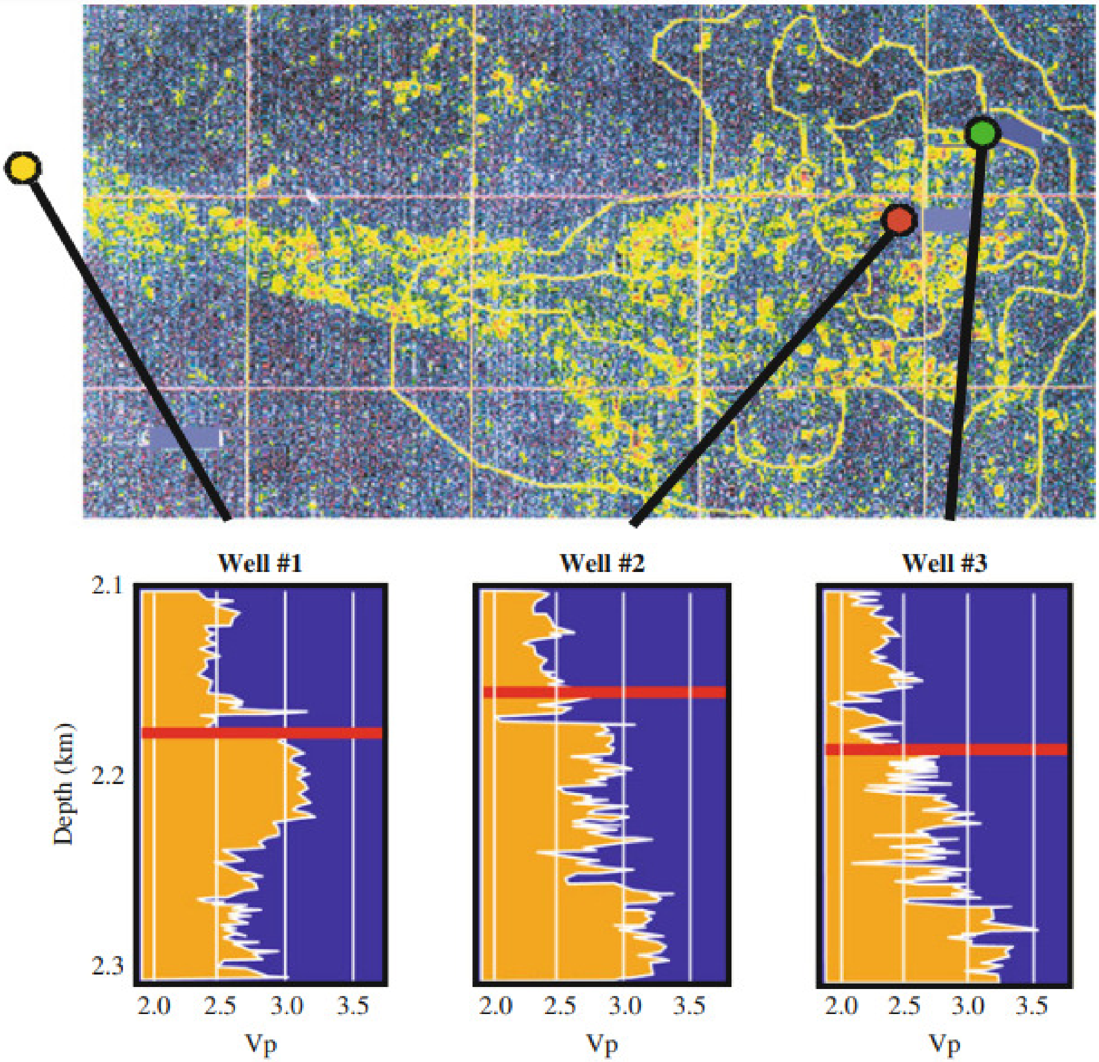


Figure 1: Seismic amplitude map from the Glitne Field, with sonic well log data for three wells penetrating a submarine fan system at different locations.

In order to evaluate the microstructure of rocks based on their physical and mechanical characteristics, rock physics models provide a useful framework. By establishing connections between microstructural features and geophysical observables, these models allow geoscientists to deduce crucial details about the subsurface. Studying the positioning, make-up, and connection of mineral grains, pore spaces, fractures, and other microscopic characteristics inside rocks is known as microstructure interpretation in the field of rock physics. Understanding how rocks behave under diverse settings depends on how these microstructural components affect the elastic and transport characteristics of rocks.

Solid mechanics and materials science ideas are often included into rock physics models for microstructure interpretation. These models take into account elements including porosity, pore size, shape, and mineralogy, as well as cementation and the existence of fractures or fissures. They seek to establish quantitative correlations between these geophysical characteristics such as seismic velocity, electrical resistivity, and permeability and these microstructural parameters.

The effective medium hypothesis is a popular rock physics concept for interpreting microstructure.

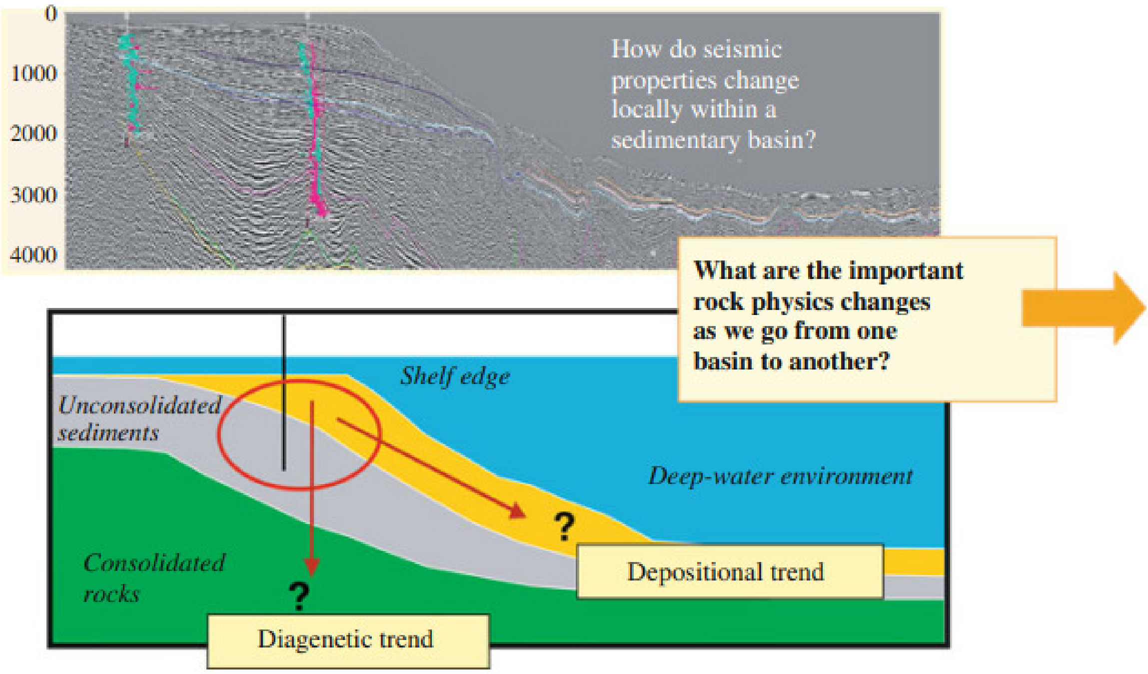


Figure 2: Rock physics properties change with depositional environment and burial depth.

Rock Physics Models for Microstructure Interpretation

According to this idea, rocks are composite materials made up of several phases, including minerals and fluids. The effective medium hypothesis calculates the total elastic properties of the rock by examining the mechanical characteristics and volume fractions of various phases. This data may then be used to estimate microstructural properties like porosity or mineralogy based on geophysical measurements like as seismic velocities.

The use of rock physics templates is another method for microstructure interpretation. These templates connect certain microstructural characteristics to geophysical data using empirical or theoretical correlations. For instance, a rock physics template can tie the electrical resistivity or seismic amplitude to the pore aspect ratio or connectedness. Following that, depending on geophysical data, geoscientists may estimate or anticipate microstructural features using these templates. Other sophisticated modelling methods, such numerical simulations and machine learning algorithms, are being used to understand microstructure in addition to the effective medium theory and rock physics templates. These approaches take into account more intricate microstructural configurations and interactions, resulting in more precise and thorough forecasts of geophysical reactions.

Rock physics models may be used to understand microstructure for a variety of practical purposes. By calculating characteristics like porosity, permeability, and fluid saturation, it aids in characterising reservoir rocks. Planning wells, optimising production, and modelling reservoirs all depend on this data. Understanding rock deformation and fracture propagation, which are crucial for determining reservoir stability and optimising hydraulic fracturing operations, is also made possible by microstructure interpretation.

Rock physics models significantly contribute to the understanding of microstructures by connecting microstructural characteristics to geophysical observables. These models enable geoscientists to gather important data about the subsurface, including fluid content, mineralogy, and porosity. We can learn more about the microscale properties of rocks and advance our knowledge of subsurface processes and reservoir behaviour by merging rock physics models with geophysical data. Crossplots are the most popular way to depict how rock physics relates seismic qualities to geological factors. Figure 3 is an example of a rock physics model plotted as porosity vs an elastic modulus (i.e., bulk or shear modulus).

It is crucial to include these geological elements in the rock physics analysis because reservoir heterogeneity and sandstone microstructure have a significant impact on the pore fluid and stress sensitivity in reservoir sandstones. If we know the porosity and related elastic modulus of a sandstone, we may infer or diagnose its rock texture using the rock physics models in Figure 3. The numerous models include the unconsolidated sand model, the contact cement model, and the continuous cement model (Dvorkin and Nur 1996, Avseth et al. 2000) among others. See Avseth et al. (2005) for further information and the equations that underlie these models. In order to analyse rocks, a variety of models may be utilised, and each model has benefits and disadvantages (Mavko et al. 2009; Draege 2009). Box's (1976) renowned adage, "All models are wrong, but some are useful," must be kept in mind.

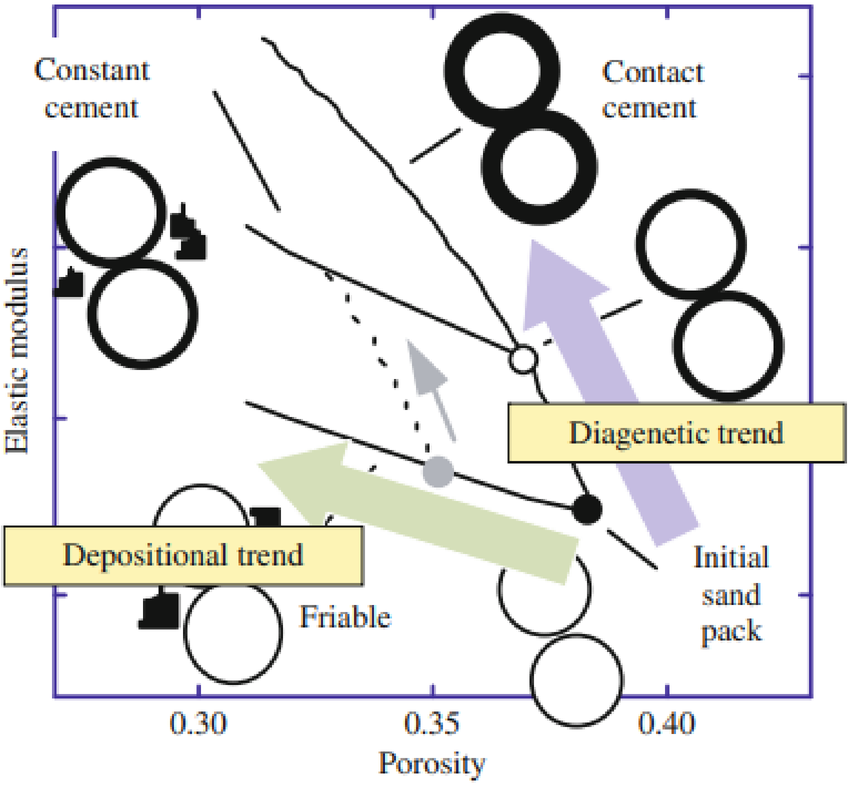


Figure 3: Rock physics models link rock microstructure to elastic properties.

Rock Physics and Depositional Trends

The study of sedimentary rocks and their physical characteristics includes elements of both rock physics and depositional patterns. The link between depositional processes, sedimentary settings, and the resultant rock characteristics may be understood using a framework provided by rock physics. In numerous depositional settings, including fluvial, deltaic, shallow, deep, and turbidite systems, depositional trends relate to the consistent fluctuations in sediment characteristics and rock properties. The kinds of transported sediment, the mechanics of deposition, and the ensuing diagenetic processes are influenced by elements including sediment supply, energy regime, water depth, and climate, which drive these patterns.

Rock physics focuses on the elastic and transport characteristics of rocks as well as its physical characteristics and behaviour under diverse settings. The interpretation of rock characteristics based on their depositional contexts is made possible by an understanding of rock physics in the context of depositional trends, which may be useful in subsurface exploration and reservoir characterisation. For instance, one important feature impacted by depositional processes is the grain size distribution. Due to the high-energy flow present in fluvial systems, coarser material has a tendency to predominate, producing rocks with a comparatively high porosity and permeability. Deep marine habitats, on the other hand, often deposit finer-grained sediment, resulting in rocks that are less porous and permeable.

Similar to this, lithology differences across various depositional settings are explained by rock physics. Sediment source, transit distance, and energy regime are a few examples of variables that affect the mineral content and sorting of sediments. Because of this, rocks that were deposited in certain settings have unique mineralogical traits that may be connected to their depositional patterns.

Seismic interpretation also requires an understanding of how rock mechanics and depositional patterns are related. Seismic data may be used to identify and map various depositional environments by revealing details about the underlying structures and rock qualities. Geoscientists may estimate the lithology, porosity, and fluid content of subterranean rocks by combining seismic measurements with rock physics models, which helps with reservoir characterisation and exploration operations. In addition, reservoir behaviour prediction and production strategy optimisation depend greatly on rock physics. Engineers can estimate the elastic characteristics, porosity, and permeability of reservoir rocks, offering insights into fluid flow and reservoir performance by integrating knowledge of depositional patterns with rock physics models [8], [9].

CONCLUSION

In this chapter, we've shown how to use techniques from rock physics to connect geological parameters and trends to seismic properties, allowing us to extrapolate information about rock and fluid properties from seismic amplitude data. The process for quantitative seismic interpretation during petroleum exploration has been the main topic of this chapter. Rock physics ultimately acts as a toolkit for lithology and fluid substitution, allowing us to extrapolate to specific projected "what if" situations in terms of depositional or compactional trends or changes in pore fluids. The models may be used to forecast or categorise reservoir properties based on seismic and sonic data. On well log and seismic data from the Palaeocene period of the North Sea, where turbidite sands are subject to dramatic change as a result of facies variability and diagenetic modifications, we have shown our cross-disciplinary approach. We have also shown how crucial it is to comprehend the seismic characteristics and rock physics of shales when predicting seismic reservoirs using AVO analysis.

REFERENCES

[1] P. Avseth, "Explorational rock physics: The link between geological processes and geophysical observables," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_18.

[2] P. Avseth, "Explorational rock physics - The link between geological processes and geophysical observables," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics*, 2010. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-02332-3_18.

[3] J. Dunne, J. Parsons, D. Maia, and S. Rogerio, "Explorational rock physics of post-rift sediments in the Southern Santos Basin, Brazil," 2017. doi: 10.1190/sbgf2017-005.

[4] P. Avseth and I. Lehocki, "From cradle to grave - Modelling the rock-physics 'life story' of a sandstone," in *79th EAGE Conference and Exhibition 2017*, 2017. doi: 10.3997/2214-4609.201701212.

[5] R. Taghizadeh, R. H. Orojloo, and M. A. Aryana, "Determination of Kakan's salt plug resource dimensions and tonnage with geophysics methods (gravimetery)," in *AIP Conference Proceedings*, 2011. doi: 10.1063/1.3663093.

[6] I. Jiménez-Munt *et al.*, "Deep Seated Density Anomalies Across the Iberia-Africa Plate Boundary and Its Topographic Response," *J. Geophys. Res. Solid Earth*, 2019, doi: 10.1029/2019JB018445.

[7] D. J. Morgan, S. Blake, N. M. Rogers, B. De Vivo, G. Rolandi, and J. P. Davidson, "Magma chamber recharge at Vesuvius in the century prior to the eruption of A.D. 79," *Geology*, 2006, doi: 10.1130/G22604.1.

[8] S. Alevizos, T. Poulet, S. D. C. Walsh, T. Mohr Durdez, M. Veveakis, and K. Regenauer-Lieb, "The dynamics of multiscale, multiphysics faults: Part II - Episodic stick-slip can turn the jelly sandwich into a crème brûlée," *Tectonophysics*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.tecto.2017.06.010.

[9] A. Meibom and D. L. Anderson, "The statistical upper mantle assemblage," *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.*, 2004, doi: 10.1016/S0012-821X(03)00573-9.

CHAPTER 19

A DISCUSSION ON 4D SEISMIC

Aditya Gupte, Assistant Professor
ISDI - School of Design & Innovation, ATLAS SkillTech University, Mumbai, India
Email Id- aditya.gupte@atlasuniversity.edu.in

ABSTRACT:

Time-lapse seismic, commonly referred to as 4D seismic, is a cutting-edge geophysical method used to track and assess changes in subsurface reservoirs over time. To study and measure the dynamic behaviour of hydrocarbon reserves, it entails the recurrent collecting of seismic data at various time intervals. An overview of 4D seismic and its uses in reservoir monitoring and management is given in this abstract. It goes through the fundamentals of 4D seismic data collecting and processing, emphasising the crucial processes in data analysis and interpretation. The abstract also discusses how 4D seismic affects reservoir characterisation, production optimisation, and asset development, as well as its advantages and disadvantages.

KEYWORDS:

4d Seismic, Production Energy, Reservoir Management, Seismic Data.

INTRODUCTION

Operators may learn important information about reservoir fluid flow, pressure fluctuations, and the efficacy of production techniques by using 4D seismic. It allows for the identification of hydrocarbons that have been bypassed, the detection of reservoir compartmentalization, and the monitoring of reservoir performance over time. Additionally, 4D seismic improves reservoir simulation models, aids decision-making processes across the life cycle of an oil or gas field, and helps reduce risks related to reservoir uncertainty.

Despite all of its benefits, 4D seismic nevertheless has issues with data collection, processing, and interpretation. Seismic repeatability, controlling data noise and artefacts, and precisely calibrating seismic responses to reservoir parameters are some of these difficulties. Nevertheless, improvements in data processing algorithms, reservoir modelling methods, and acquisition technology continue to enhance the efficiency and dependability of 4D seismic applications. Geophysics and reservoir engineering use the 4D seismic, commonly referred to as time-lapse seismic, technology to track and assess changes in subsurface reservoirs over time. To monitor and comprehend the dynamic behaviour of hydrocarbon reserves, it requires the recurrent collecting of seismic data at various time intervals.

Traditional 3D seismic surveys provide an accurate picture of the subsurface at a particular period and provide important details about the geological features and possible reservoirs. Reservoirs, however, don't remain static; they vary as a result of fluid motion, industrial activity, and reservoir depletion. Tracking and analysing these changes with the use of 4D seismic technology allows for significant insights into reservoir behaviour and the optimisation of reservoir management tactics.

The foundation of 4D seismic is the collection of seismic data at various time points and the comparison of variations in the seismic response across time. Geoscientists and reservoir engineers may deduce changes in reservoir characteristics, such as fluid flow, pressure depletion, and the migration of hydrocarbons, by studying these discrepancies [1], [2].

Repeating the 3D seismic survey over the same region at regular intervals, such as yearly or biannually, is often required to get 4D seismic data. Similar methods to those used in conventional 3D seismic surveys are used to obtain the seismic data, including the placement of energy sources and seismic sensors on the ground or in water. These frequent surveys enable the development of time-lapse datasets that document the reservoir's progression. After the 4D seismic data has been gathered, it is processed and examined to find and measure changes in the reservoir. In addition to time-lapse differencing methods to compare the seismic response at various time intervals, this also involves pre-processing procedures to reduce noise and improve the quality of the data. Seismic inversion and reservoir simulation are two examples of advanced interpretation and modelling methods that are often used to combine 4D seismic data with reservoir engineering data and provide insightful results.

There are several advantages to using 4D seismic in reservoir management. By allowing a better knowledge of fluid flow, reservoir compartmentalization, and sweep efficiency, it aids in reservoir characterisation. The location of wells, reservoir monitoring, and increased oil recovery methods are just a few of the production tactics that may be optimised with the use of 4D seismic data. It offers useful data for making knowledgeable choices about field development strategies, reservoir monitoring, and production optimisation, resulting in higher recovery rates and more efficient operations.

In addition, 4D seismic is a useful tool for monitoring the success of reservoir management plans over time. Reservoir engineers may evaluate the effects of production operations and reservoir management strategies by comparing various time-lapse datasets, and they can then make modifications as necessary to maximise recovery and reduce risks. 4D seismic is an effective method that enables the tracking and examination of changes in hydrocarbon resources throughout time. It offers a dynamic knowledge of reservoir behaviour, allowing enhanced decision-making in the oil and gas sector and optimised reservoir management techniques. 4D seismic is still evolving as a crucial instrument for reservoir characterisation, monitoring, and production optimisation with improvements in technology and data processing capabilities.

DISCUSSION

Calendar time is referred to be the fourth dimension in the phrase 4D seismic. The phrase "repeated seismic" is more accurate since that is exactly what is done: a seismic survey is repeated over an area (such as an oil or gas field) in order to track changes in output. Seismic timelapse is another name for it. We shall use the phrase "4D seismic" because it is the most popular for some reason. It is essential to remember that, under this definition, repeating 2D surveys still qualifies as 4D seismic. Repeated 2D lines obtained across the Troll gas province are recent instances of such surveys [3], [4]. Currently, 4D seismic is used mostly in three fields. To start, to keep an eye on modifications in a producing hydrocarbon reservoir. It is now standard practise to employ this method everywhere. 4D seismic has mostly been employed for clastic reservoirs so far, with carbonate reservoirs being used far less often.

This is due to the stiffer nature of carbonate reservoirs (apart from those in porous chalk) and the much diminished impact of replacing oil with water on seismic characteristics. Second, to track subsurface CO2 storage, 4D seismic is used. Currently, there is a worldwide push to reduce the quantity of CO2 in the atmosphere, and one approach to do this is to inject massive volumes of CO2 into saltwater aquifers. The monitoring of geohazards (landslides, volcanoes, etc.) is a third use for 4D seismic (in combination with other geophysical technologies), however this use is not discussed here.

A field's complexity and the commercial benefit of deploying 4D seismic on that field are strongly connected. Figure 1 depicts a 3D perspective picture of the Gullfaks Field's top reservoir (top Brent) interface. It is not unexpected that oil pockets may continue to exist even after 10-15 years of production since the oil is confined under such an intricate 3D surface. It is simple to see the business worth of such a tool given that 4D seismic may be utilised to locate these pockets.

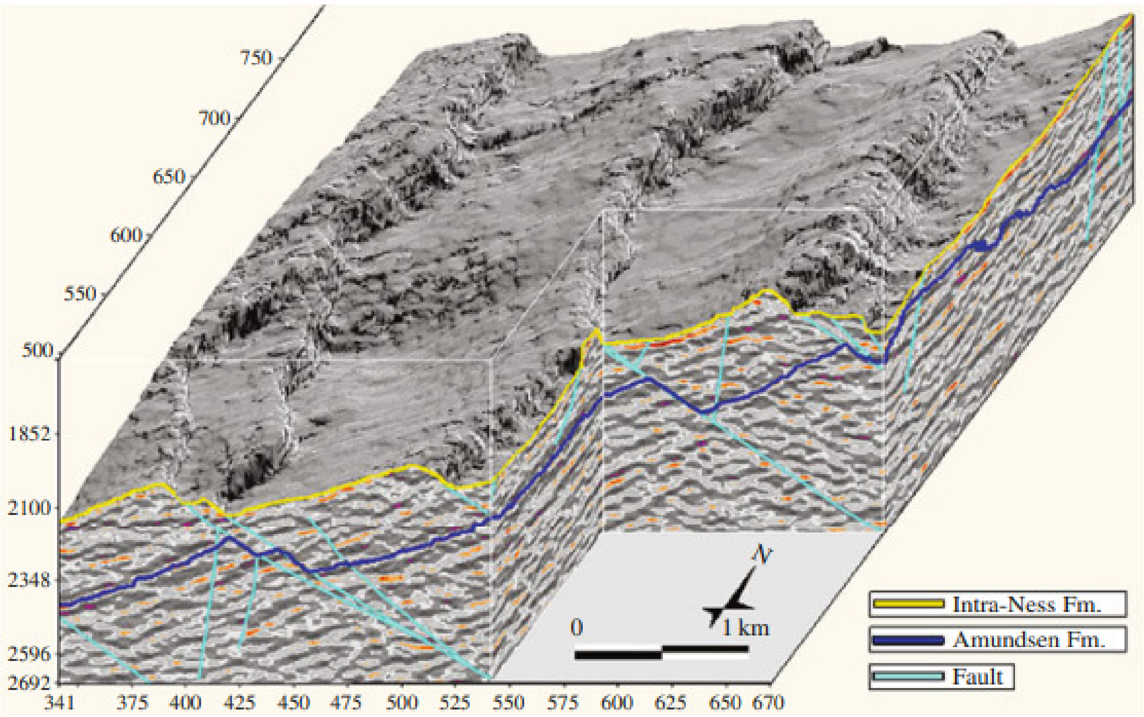


Figure 1: 3D seismic image of the top reservoir interface (top Brent Group) at the Gullfaks Field.

The number of untapped hydrocarbon pockets will be fewer and the commercial advantage will be proportionately lower if the reservoir shape is simpler. In the initial part of the 1980s, possibly in America, the first 4D seismic surveys were collected. It was quickly discovered that heavy oil fields were great 4D seismic prospects. Since heavy oil is very viscous, thermal techniques like combustion or steam injection were utilised to make it more mobile. Combustion refers to the burning process, which is often kept going by the addition of oxygen or air. Baseline and monitor seismic surveys have different amplitudes because the seismic P-wave velocity decreases as the reservoir warms.

By conducting further conventional 3D land seismic surveys, they demonstrated that such thermal recovery techniques may be seen (Figure 2). Because they were carried out on tiny, very shallow onshore fields, these early instances of seismic monitoring of thermal recovery technologies did not immediately result in a boom in the 4D business. The Gullfaks 4D investigation, initiated by Statoil in 1995, was a significant development for commercial 4D seismic surveys in the North Sea.

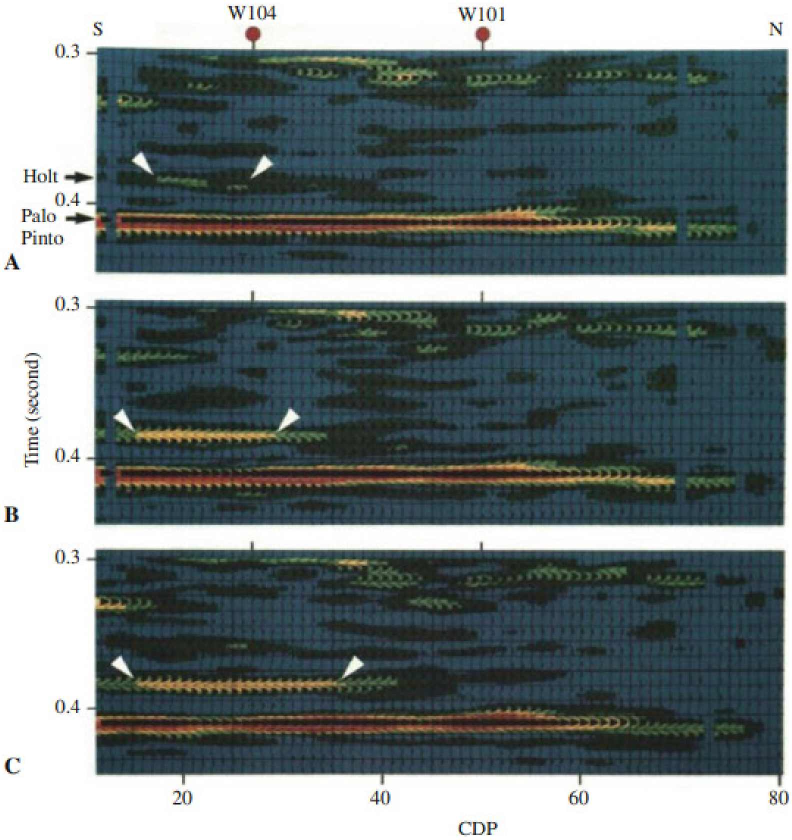


Figure 2: Shows clear 4D W104 W101 amplitude brightening (top Holt horizon) as the reservoir is heated.

A pilot study was conducted throughout the majority of the field's northern region in collaboration with WesternGeco, and the first interpretation carried out soon after this monitor survey showed a good potential.

Rock Physics and 4D Seismic in petroleum geology

Petroleum geology includes two key elements, rock physics and 4D seismic, which are essential to hydrocarbon exploration and reservoir monitoring. Let's examine each of them separately:

Rock Physics: The study of the physical characteristics and behaviour of rocks in relation to their elastic and seismic characteristics is known as rock physics. It seeks to establish quantifiable connections between the qualities of the rocks and the subsurface's seismic reaction.Rock physics in petroleum geology aids in comprehending the relationship between reservoir rocks and their seismic fingerprints. Various rock parameters, including porosity, permeability, mineralogy, fluid saturation, and rock texture, are measured and analysed. Then, these qualities are connected to seismic characteristics including amplitude, velocity, reflectivity, and attenuation.Geoscientists may use seismic data to predict underlying rock qualities by researching rock physics. For reservoir characterisation, modelling, and monitoring during production, this data is essential[5], [6].

4D Seismic: A method called 4D seismic, commonly referred to as time-lapse seismic, involves collecting several seismic surveys across a reservoir at various moments in time. It offers a way to keep track of how the features of the subsurface reservoir change over time, including fluid flow, pressure changes, and impacts associated to production.

Geoscientists can identify and assess reservoir changes by comparing seismic data collected at various time periods. These adjustments may be utilised to improve reservoir management and production methods since they often include fluid motions, such as displacement of water or hydrocarbons. For the management and monitoring of reservoirs, the integration of rock physics with 4D seismic data is crucial. By connecting them to reservoir characteristics, rock physics models aid in the interpretation of the observed variations in seismic features. Geoscientists can predict changes in fluid saturation, pressure, and other reservoir characteristics because to this integration, which offers important insights into how reservoirs behave. Geoscientists can better comprehend reservoirs, plan for field development, improve production techniques, and increase hydrocarbon recovery when they combine rock physics with 4D seismic data.

Some 4D Analysis Techniques

According to Figure 3, there are two primary categories for the analysis of 4D seismic data: one focuses on the identification of amplitude changes, and the other on the detection of travel-time changes. The amplitude approach has been used the most often because practical experience has proved it to be the most reliable.

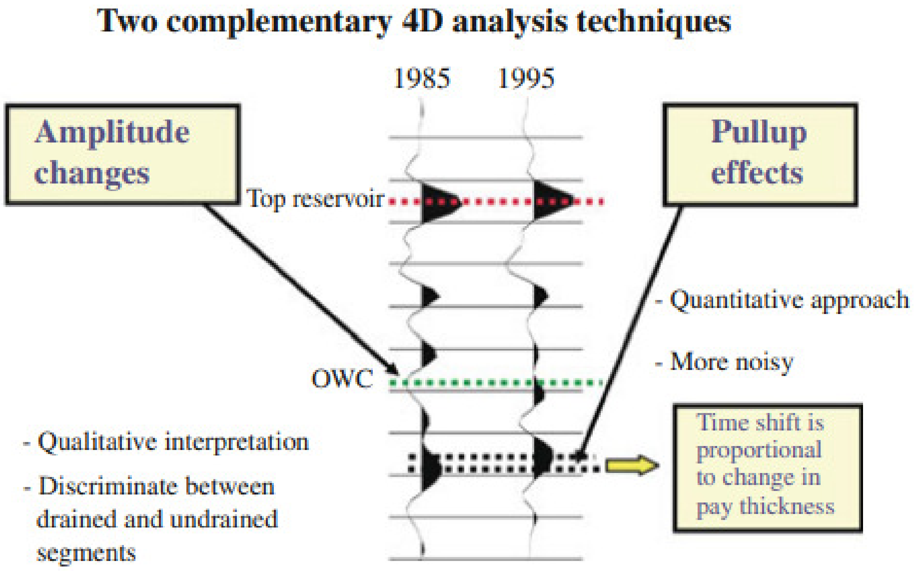


Figure 3: Shows the two 4D analysis techniques.

However, as 4D seismic has become more reliable, accurate measurements of minor timeshifts are becoming the preferred technique. There are various instances when it is possible to pinpoint to within a millisecond the timeshift between two seismic traces. The fact that 4D timeshift measurement is proportionate to the change in pay thickness and that it produces a direct quantitative result makes it particularly appealing. The two methods are complimentary in that the timeshift approach monitors average changes throughout a layer or even a series of layers, while amplitude measurement is a local characteristic (monitoring changes near to an interface) [7].

In addition to the direct approaches outlined above, seismic modelling of multiple production scenarios, often paired with reservoir fluid flow modelling and 1D scenario modelling based on well logs, is helpful for 4D seismic interpretation.

The Gullfaks 4D Seismic Study

Major oil and gas deposits may be found offshore of Norway in the North Sea in the Gullfaks field. The Gullfaks 4D seismic research is a method of monitoring the Gullfaks field using time-lapse or 4D seismic methods. The Gullfaks 4D seismic research aims to track and comprehend the reservoir's dynamic behaviour throughout time. The research attempts to identify and analyse changes in the reservoir, including fluid movements, pressure changes, and production-related impacts by collecting several seismic scans at various times.

Aspects and advantages of the Gullfaks 4D seismic investigation include the following:

Reservoir Monitoring:

The research offers a way to keep track of how the parameters of the subsurface reservoir change over time. Understanding the reservoir's behaviour, particularly fluid flow and pressure variations that may affect the reservoir's efficiency, is helpful.

Production Optimization:

Operators may learn more about the impacts of production operations on the reservoir by analysing the 4D seismic data. With the use of this information, reservoir management and production techniques may be optimised, resulting in greater operational effectiveness and recovery.

Field Development:

Gullfaks 4D seismic research information on reservoir connectivity, compartmentalization, and reservoir heterogeneity aids in field development planning. This facilitates the selection of the best drilling sites, well placements, and enhanced oil recovery (EOR) strategies.

Risk Mitigation:

Identification of possible hazards and uncertainties related to reservoir behaviour is aided by seismic monitoring. It enables proactive decision-making to reduce risks and prevent future production concerns by allowing early identification of reservoir abnormalities or unexpected fluid movements.

Reservoir Modeling and Simulation:

A more realistic depiction of the reservoir's dynamic behaviour is made possible by the integration of 4D seismic data with reservoir modelling and simulation. This leads to better reservoir characterisation, future reservoir performance forecasting, and better field development and production strategy decision-making.

Gullfaks 4D seismic analysis has a substantial impact on field development planning, production optimisation, and reservoir management overall. By giving operators useful knowledge on the behaviour of the Gullfaks field, they can maximise hydrocarbon recovery and make wise choices that will guarantee the field's long-term viability [8], [9].

CONCLUSION

In summary, 4D seismic has become a potent tool in petroleum geology for managing and monitoring reservoirs. Geoscientists and engineers may track and evaluate changes in the underlying reservoir parameters, such as fluid movements, pressure changes, and production-related impacts, by collecting numerous seismic surveys over time. A more precise knowledge of reservoir behaviour and informed decision-making are made possible by the integration of 4D seismic data with rock physics and reservoir modelling. The main advantages of 4D seismic are increased field development planning, risk reduction, improved reservoir characterisation, and optimised production techniques.

An excellent example of the employment of this technique is the Gullfaks 4D seismic research, which was concentrated on the Gullfaks field in the North Sea. The research helps to optimise production, makes educated judgements about field development methods, and gives useful insights into reservoir performance by tracking the reservoir's dynamic behaviour over time. In the end, the use of 4D seismic methods supports the performance of petroleum exploration and production operations by maximising hydrocarbon recovery, assuring the field's long-term viability, and boosting the field's overall sustainability.

REFERENCES

[1] D. S. Oliver, K. Fossum, T. Bhakta, I. Sandø, G. Nævdal, and R. J. Lorentzen, "4D seismic history matching," *Journal of Petroleum Science and Engineering*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.petrol.2021.109119.

[2] M. H. Orlowski, W. E. Soares, K. L. Kerrigan, and M. L. Zerden, "Management of Postabortion Complications for the Emergency Medicine Clinician," *Annals of Emergency Medicine*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.annemergmed.2020.09.008.

[3] C. Sambo, C. C. Iferobia, A. A. Babasafari, S. Rezaei, and O. A. Akanni, "The Role of Time Lapse(4D) Seismic Technology as Reservoir Monitoring and Surveillance Tool: A Comprehensive Review," *Journal of Natural Gas Science and Engineering*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.jngse.2020.103312.

[4] R. Souza, D. Lumley, and J. Shragge, "Estimation of reservoir fluid saturation from 4D seismic data: Effects of noise on seismic amplitude and impedance attributes," *J. Geophys. Eng.*, 2017, doi: 10.1088/1742-2132/14/1/51.

[5] B. T. Ojo, M. T. Olowokere, and M. I. Oladapo, "Correlation and Calibration of 4D Seismic Vintages for Effective Postproduction Intervention," *J. Geogr. Environ. Earth Sci. Int.*, 2021, doi: 10.9734/jgeesi/2021/v25i330275.

[6] Z. Yin, T. Feng, and C. MacBeth, "Fast assimilation of frequently acquired 4D seismic data for reservoir history matching," *Comput. Geosci.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.cageo.2019.04.001.

[7] D. V. Da Nóbrega, F. S. De Moraes, and A. A. Emerick, “Data assimilation of a legacy 4D seismic in a brown field,” *J. Geophys. Eng.*, 2018, doi: 10.1088/1742-2140/aadd68.

[8] N. M. Cruz *et al.*, “Tupi Nodes pilot: A successful 4D seismic case for Brazilian presalt reservoirs,” *Lead. Edge*, 2021, doi: 10.1190/tle40120886.1.

[9] X. X. Zhang, J. F. Ma, and L. Li, “Monitoring of coal-mine goaf based on 4D seismic technology,” *Appl. Geophys.*, 2020, doi: 10.1007/s11770-020-0807-9.

CHAPTER 20

A STUDY ON PRODUCTION GEOLOGY

Harsh Mohanty, Assistant Professor
ISDI - School of Design & Innovation, ATLAS SkillTech University, Mumbai, India
Email Id- harsh.mohanty@atlasuniversity.edu.in

ABSTRACT:

Production geology is a branch of petroleum geology that focuses on researching and comprehending the geological factors and procedures involved in extracting hydrocarbons from reservoirs. To optimise production plans and maximise hydrocarbon recovery, geological, geophysical, and engineering data must be integrated.An overview of the main goals and elements of production geology is given in this abstract. In the context of production optimisation, it emphasises the significance of reservoir characterisation, well location, reservoir management, and field development planning. In order to achieve effective and sustainable hydrocarbon production, the abstract also emphasises the function of production geologists in reservoir surveillance, monitoring, and decision-making processes. Overall, production geology is essential to the efficient running of oil and gas fields, helping to increase production rates, reduce costs, and prolong the useful life of reservoirs. Production geologists assist in the effective extraction of hydrocarbons while managing the inherent geological complexity and uncertainties associated with reservoirs by combining geological knowledge with engineering experience.

KEYWORDS:

Capillary Forces, Fluid Flow, Meteoric Water, Oil Recovery, Relative Permeability.

INTRODUCTION

The study and administration of hydrocarbon reservoirs during the production phase are the main objectives of the petroleum geology subspecialty known as production geology. Understanding the geological features, fluid behaviour, and production efficiency of underground reservoirs is essential to maximising the recovery of oil and gas from such reservoirs [1]–[3]. Output geology's main goal is to maximise output while preserving the field's long-term economic sustainability.

Making educated judgements about reservoir management, well location, production plans, and enhanced oil recovery (EOR) methods entails combining geological, geophysical, and engineering data. Reservoir characterisation, well performance analysis, reservoir monitoring, and reservoir modelling are important facets of production geology. By applying advanced techniques and technologies, production geologists aim to:

Reservoir Characterization:

Production geologists examine the reservoir's rock types, porosity, permeability, fluid saturations, and reservoir borders, among other geological and petrophysical characteristics. Understanding the reservoir's potential, locating sweet spots, and forecasting fluid flow behaviour all depend on this knowledge.

Well Performance Analysis:

Production geologists examine well production data to evaluate the effectiveness of each well as well as the field as a whole. In order to maximise well output and find chances for well interventions, this requires examining production rates, decline curves, pressure data, and fluid compositions.

Reservoir Surveillance:

Production geology must closely monitor reservoir behaviour at all times. Detecting changes in reservoir conditions, identifying fluid flow, and optimising production methods are all made possible with the use of surveillance techniques including pressure monitoring, production recording, and fluid sampling.

Reservoir Modeling:

Reservoir models are created and updated by production geologists using geology, geophysical, and engineering information. These simulations of fluid flow, reservoir performance predictions, and decision-making on well placement, production optimisation, and EOR tactics all fall within the purview of these models. Production geologists seek to maximise hydrocarbon recovery, reduce production costs, and extend the field's productive life by integrating these factors. They collaborate closely with geophysicists, drilling engineers, reservoir engineers, and other experts to combine interdisciplinary knowledge and experience for efficient reservoir management. Production geology is essential for maximising oil and gas reservoir output. In order to improve hydrocarbon recovery, monitor reservoir performance, and make wise choices throughout the production phase, it blends geological knowledge with engineering concepts.

DISCUSSION

Production Geology has grown to be a significant field, with more geologists and geophysicists working on production than exploration in established sedimentary basins. Today, improving the recovery in existing areas adds more to the world's oil reserves than finding new ones. Oil can now be produced considerably more effectively than with vertical wells thanks to the introduction of horizontal drilling. Today, it is feasible to drill wells up to 8–9 km deep along a highly intricate course that drains a number of tiny reservoir compartments. Much more money may be spent in strategies to improve oil and gas recovery when oil prices are high. The distribution of petroleum and the geological qualities that affect flow in the reservoir must be precisely mapped out in order to produce oil and gas.

Therefore, it could be essential to drill a few delineation wells after the discovery of a new field in order to learn more about the size of the reservoir and the distribution of its attributes. To ensure effective recovery, production wells and injection wells must be properly designed. Each new production well will produce a sizable database that must be analysed; this database will include details on the reservoir's pressure barriers. In many instances, 3D seismic surveys will be repeated throughout the reservoir's productive lifespan, adding a fourth dimension (time) to make the survey a 4D survey. The density and velocity contrast, a function of petroleum saturation, may then often be used to track changes in the oil/water contact, gas/oil contact, or gas/water contact. This may make it possible to identify the reservoir's poorly drained areas and determine if it would be financially feasible to construct a new production well to drain that area[4], [5].

Securing the best possible output from oil and gas resources is a significant problem from both an economic and environmental standpoint. The availability of free gas supports the production of oil under excellent pressure. In most cases, the oil must be generated before the gas since the gas will significantly lower reservoir pressure and distort the oil/gas contact, making it more challenging to extract the remaining oil. In the oil and water, there is also gas dissolved (Figure 1).

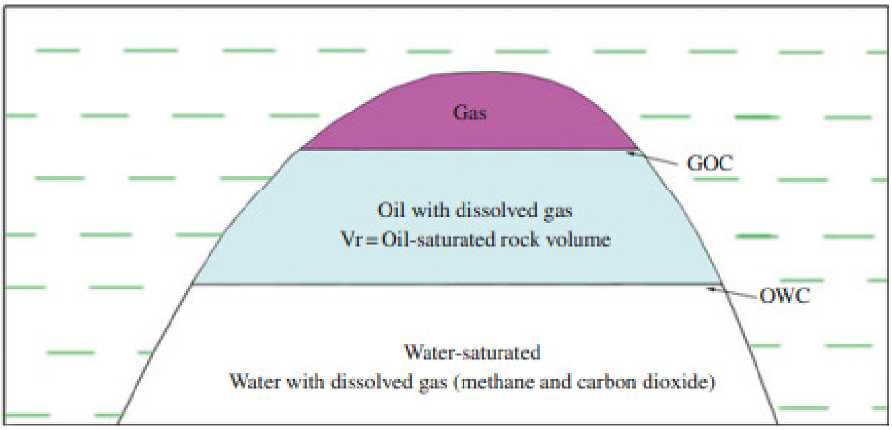


Figure 1: Simple petroleum trap with a gas/oil contact (GOC) and an oil/water contact (OWC)

Capillary forces

Capillary forces, which are sometimes referred to as capillary action or capillarity, describe the phenomena of liquid movement inside small gaps or capillaries as a result of the interaction between cohesive forces within the liquid and adhesive forces between the liquid and the surrounding solid surfaces.

Surface tension, the cohesive force that binds liquid molecules together at the liquid-air interface, has characteristics that give rise to capillary forces. Adhesive forces develop between a liquid and a solid surface when they come into contact. Depending on the characteristics of the liquid and the solid, these adhesive forces may be greater or less than the cohesive forces inside the liquid.

The size of the capillary or pore, the liquid's surface tension, the contact angle produced at the liquid-solid interface, and other variables all affect how strong the capillary forces are. Depending on how cohesive and adhesive forces interact, capillary forces may cause the liquid to rise or descend inside the capillary.

There are primarily two different capillary forces:

Capillary Rise:

Capillary rise happens when the cohesive forces inside the liquid are weaker than the adhesive forces between the liquid and the solid. This indicates that despite the gravity, the liquid will ascend the capillary.

Inversely correlated with the capillary's radius, surface tension, and contact angle all have a direct impact on how high the liquid rises.

Capillary Depression or Capillary Pressure:

The liquid may be dragged down or depressed inside the capillary in certain circumstances, for as when the cohesive forces are stronger than the adhesive forces. Capillary depression or capillary pressure is the medical term for this. When there are hydrophobic (water-repelling) surfaces or when the liquid has a high surface tension, capillary depression may happen.

Capillary forces have important effects on physics, chemistry, engineering, and geology, among other disciplines. In porous media, such as rocks and soils, capillary forces are essential for fluid movement. They impact subsurface reservoir behaviour, hydrocarbon recovery, and water management by changing the flow and distribution of water, oil, and gas there. Understanding capillary forces is crucial for a number of applications, such as oil recovery methods like water flooding and enhanced oil recovery (EOR), as well as for figuring out how groundwater moves through aquifers. Capillary forces also affect how fluids behave in microfluidic devices, how textiles wick moisture, and how liquids rise in plants thanks to their capillary networks.

Cohesive and adhesive forces interact to create capillary forces, which cause liquid to flow inside tiny gaps called capillaries. They affect fluid behaviour and transport in porous media and other systems, with significant ramifications for geology, engineering, and several other scientific disciplines. The oil is dragged downwards because it is preferentially soaking the inside of the pipe if the wetting angle is more than 90 degrees, and with lower wetting angles, the OWC is increased. If the wetting angle is less than 90 degrees, the oil/water contact in the pipe will be above the overall OWC. A reservoir rock's pores often contain some water in addition to oil or gas. A particularly thin pipe, such one made of glass, submerged in oil and water will cause the water to rise over the point of contact. This capillary increase depends on the wetting angle () and the pipe bore radius (R).

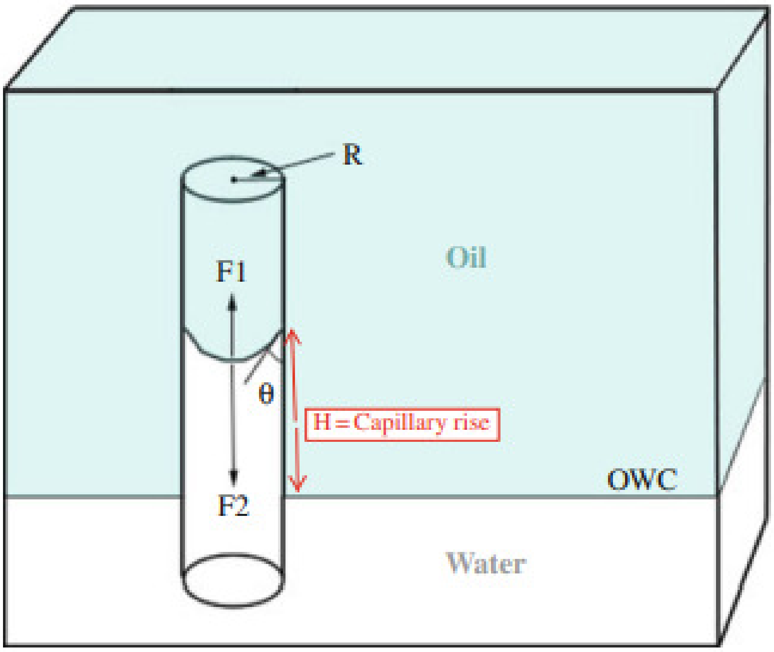


Figure 2: Capillary rise of water in a very thin pipe of waterwet material.

Determination of Petroleum Reserves

In order to calculate the quantity of commercially recoverable oil and gas that a hydrocarbon reservoir holds, it must first undergo a thorough study. Typically, the procedure includes the following significant phases and factors:

Exploration and Discovery:

The exploration phase, which involves collecting seismic data, drilling exploratory wells, and analysing rock samples, is the initial stage in assessing petroleum reserves. In this first stage, a finding and possible hydrocarbon-bearing structure identification are the goals.

Reservoir Characterization:

The characterisation of the reservoir starts when a finding is made. Data regarding the geology and petrophysical characteristics of the reservoir must be gathered and examined throughout this procedure. Studying different rock types, porosity, permeability, fluid saturations, and reservoir boundaries are all part of this process. Geoscientists may get a thorough grasp of the characteristics and prospects of a reservoir via reservoir characterization.

Well Testing and Production Data:

The results of well testing and production data are crucial in estimating reservoir reserves. Production tests are carried out to monitor flow rates and pressure reactions, giving data on the productivity and behaviour of the reservoir. As production data gathers over time, it is analysed to assess the effectiveness of both individual wells and the overall field.

Reservoir Modeling:

The process of reservoir modelling is creating a mathematical model of the reservoir using the data gathered. This entails creating a three-dimensional model using engineering, geological, and geophysical data. The reservoir model helps in reserve estimation by simulating fluid flow and predicting reservoir performance [4], [6], [7].

Reserve Classification:

In general, reserves are divided into many groups according to the degree of assurance. Guidelines for dividing reserves into proven, probable, and potential categories are provided by the Society of Petroleum Engineers (SPE). The degree of confidence for proved reserves is high, compared to probable and potential reserves, which have lesser degrees of certainty.

Economic Viability:

Considering the economic feasibility of retrieving the hydrocarbons is another step in determining reserves. Production costs, oil and gas prices, the availability of infrastructure, and regulatory concerns are just a few of the variables that are taken into account. The viability of the projected reserves for extraction is determined by economic analysis.

Reserve Estimation and Reporting:

Reserve estimate is done when the data and analysis are all finished. This entails estimating the quantity of commercially recoverable hydrocarbons in the reservoir using a variety of techniques, including volumetric analysis, material balance, production decline analysis, and numerical simulation. Following industry standards, such as those established by the SPE, the findings are then reported. It's vital to remember that reserve estimations might change as new information becomes available and as production activities advance.Estimating petroleum reserves requires a thorough examination of the reservoir, which includes reservoir characterisation, well testing, production data analysis, reservoir modelling, and reserve calculation. These procedures are crucial for planning and decision-making in the oil and gas sector because they strive to offer a realistic assessment of the commercially recoverable hydrocarbons in a reservoir.

Reservoir Energy

Overpressurized reservoirs have the potential to flow to the surface. Unreliable well management might result in a blow-out. The pressure in the oil and gas will be greater because of their buoyancy in relation to water and they will flow towards the surface even when reservoirs are at hydrostatic pressure in the water phase. As oil rises up a well, pressure decreases, causing gas to bubble out of solution both in the oil phase and the water phase. This will result in a very high flow rate by lowering the density and boosting the buoyancy effect even more. The process that results in well blow-outs includes the creation of free gas in a significant way.

Relative Permeability

A key idea in petroleum geology is relative permeability, which defines how various fluids typically oil, water, and gas flow inside porous media like rock or soil. It calculates each fluid phase's fractional permeability in proportion to the porous medium's overall permeability. The capacity of a rock to transfer fluids is indicated by its permeability. However, more than one fluid is often present in subterranean reservoirs, and their flow properties are interconnected. This interdependence is taken into account by relative permeability, which also tells us how much each fluid phase can effectively flow through the reservoir.

Relative permeability's salient features are as follows:

Fluid Phase Interactions:

The interactions between various fluid phases in a reservoir lead to relative permeability. Oil, water, and gas are normally the three main fluid phases, however this might change based on the particular reservoir makeup.

Capillary pressure and Saturation:

Fluid saturation, which is the percentage of the pore space filled by a certain fluid phase, has an impact on relative permeability. It depends on capillary pressure, which is the differential in pressure at the fluid-fluid interface in a porous media.

Dependence on Saturation:

The relative permeability is dependent on the saturation of each fluid phase and is not a constant number.

It usually rises when the saturation of a certain fluid phase rises, suggesting a rise in the fluid's flow capacity.

Laboratory Measurement:

Core samples taken from the reservoir are used in laboratory research to evaluate the relative permeability. In these tests, the flow rates of distinct fluid phases are measured under varied saturation circumstances.

Saturation Curves:

Graphical representations of relative permeability often include saturation curves. These graphs show the connection between a fluid phase's relative permeability and saturation. The graphs demonstrate how relative permeability changes when a fluid phase's saturation rises or falls.

Impact on Fluid Flow:

The reservoir's fluid flow is directly impacted by relative permeability. It establishes the preferred routes and varying rates of gas, water, and oil movement within the rock. Understanding relative permeability is essential for developing better oil recovery methods, anticipating fluid behaviour, and optimising production tactics.

Hysteresis:

The connection between saturation and permeability may change throughout the processes of drainage (fluid displacement by a non-wetting phase) and imbibition (fluid displacement by a wetting phase) because relative permeability shows hysteresis. The effects of capillary pressure and the reservoir's history of fluid flow cause hysteresis.

In essence, relative permeability in petroleum geology refers to the way that various fluid phases flow through a porous media. It gives critical insights into fluid behaviour, flow rates, and the optimisation of production techniques while accounting for the interdependent movement of oil, water, and gas inside the reservoir.

Meteoric Water Drive

One of the main mechanisms for sustaining energy in oil reservoirs and fluid displacement is meteoric water drive, sometimes referred to as aquifer drive or water inflow. When water from an outside source, such an underground aquifer or a water zone, enters a reservoir and replaces the oil in it, this happens.

Important details about meteoric water drive include:

Mechanism:

The natural pressure difference between the water-bearing zone and the oil reservoir is what allows meteoric water drive to function. Water applies more pressure since it is denser than oil. The water migrates into the reservoir as a result of this pressure differential, replacing the oil.

Aquifer Characteristics:

To efficiently drive fluid displacement, the underlying aquifer or water zone has to have a certain set of properties. These include connection to the reservoir, permeability, and enough water volume. The water inflow supports oil production by maintaining reservoir pressure and promoting fluid flow to producing wells.

Water-Oil Contact:

The line separating the initially oil-saturated zone from the moving water front is known as the water-oil contact. The displacement of the oil by the water when it reaches the reservoir creates a dynamic balance between the two fluids. The quantity of oil recovery and the behaviour of the meteoric water drive mechanism depend on where the water and oil make contact.

Pressure Support:

The reservoir receives pressure support by meteoric water drive, preventing the pressure drop that occurs naturally when more oil is produced. Water inflow improves oil recovery and sustains production rates by maintaining or raising reservoir pressure.

Capillary Pressure:

An important factor in meteoric water propulsion is capillary pressure. It affects how water moves oil around in the reservoir's pore spaces. The water's entry into the reservoir and the oil's removal from the pore spaces are both aided by the capillary pressure differential in the oil-water system.

Water Production:

The generated fluid from the reservoir may include both water and oil as the water inflow increases. To do this, oil and water must be separated using methods like oil-water separation facilities prior to oil sales or further processing.

One of the main methods of oil recovery in many reservoirs is meteoric water drive. It applies especially to reservoirs with an underlying water supply that continuously influxes water. For oil recovery by meteoric water drive to be optimised, knowledge of the aquifer's properties, monitoring of the water-oil contact, and management of production activities are all necessary [5], [8], [9].

CONCLUSION

In order to maximise the production of hydrocarbon reserves, production geology is crucial. In order to improve hydrocarbon recovery, monitor reservoir performance, and make wise choices throughout the production phase, it blends geological knowledge with engineering concepts. Production geologists analyse the reservoir's geology and petrophysical characteristics to characterise it and aid in reservoir management. This helps them to locate optimal locations, forecast fluid flow behaviour, and enhance manufacturing methods. Production geologists assess the field's overall productivity as well as the productivity of individual wells using well performance analysis. They can maximise well output and find areas for interventions by analysing production rates, decline curves, pressure data, and fluid compositions. The monitoring of reservoirs is yet another essential component of production geology. Utilising methods like pressure monitoring, production logging, and fluid sampling to continuously monitor reservoir behaviour allows for the detection of changes, a knowledge of fluid flow, and the optimisation of production tactics. Production geology includes reservoir modelling, in which geoscientists and engineers create mathematical models of the reservoir. These simulations of fluid flow, reservoir performance predictions, and decision-making for well location, production optimisation, and improved oil recovery techniques all fall within the purview of these models.

REFERENCES

[1] M. Shepherd, “Oil field production geology,” *AAPG Mem.*, 2009, doi: 10.1306/m911316.

[2] K. Bjørlykke, “Production geology,” in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_21.

[3] H. Nie *et al.*, “An overview of the geology and production of the Fuling shale gas field, Sichuan Basin, China,” *Energy Geosci.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.engeos.2020.06.005.

[4] M. B. Revuelta, *Construction Materials Geology, Production and Applications*. 2021.

[5] L. S. de Souza and G. N. C. Sgarbi, “The Santos Basin in Brazil: Geology, exploration and production of oil and natural gas,” *Bol. Geol.*, 2019, doi: 10.18273/revbol.v41n1-2019009.

[6] N. Dushyantha *et al.*, “The story of rare earth elements (REEs): Occurrences, global distribution, genesis, geology, mineralogy and global production,” *Ore Geology Reviews*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.oregeorev.2020.103521.

[7] R. W. Jones and M. D. Simmons, “Biostratigraphy in production and development geology,” *Geol. Soc. Spec. Publ.*, 1999, doi: 10.1016/s0264-8172(00)00002-7.

[8] H. H. Haldorsen and E. Damsieth, “Stochastic modeling,” *SPE Repr. Ser.*, 1998, doi: 10.1201/9781315370309-12.

[9] A. E. Radwan, B. S. Nabawy, A. A. Kassem, and W. S. Hussein, “Implementation of Rock Typing on Waterflooding Process During Secondary Recovery in Oil Reservoirs: A Case Study, El Morgan Oil Field, Gulf of Suez, Egypt,” *Nat. Resour. Res.*, 2021, doi: 10.1007/s11053-020-09806-0.

CHAPTER 21

UNCONVENTIONAL HYDROCARBONS: OIL SHALES, HEAVY OIL, TAR SANDS, SHALE GAS AND GAS HYDRATES

Harsh Mohanty, Assistant Professor
ISDI - School of Design & Innovation, ATLAS SkillTech University, Mumbai, India
Email Id- harsh.mohanty@atlasuniversity.edu.in

ABSTRACT:

In the global energy landscape, unconventional hydrocarbons such as tar sands, heavy oil, oil shales, shale gas, and gas hydrates have grown in significance. The discovery, development, and use of hydrocarbon reserves are presented with specific difficulties and possibilities by these resources. The properties, extraction techniques, and prospective effects on the energy sector are highlighted in this abstract's succinct summary of these unconventional hydrocarbons. Oil shales are sedimentary rocks full of organic material that may be extracted and retorted in place to produce oil. Heavy oil, which has a high viscosity and is located in reservoirs with limited permeability, must be extracted using thermal or chemical techniques. Bitumen, clay, and sand make up tar sands, also known as oil sands, which need specialised extraction methods such open-pit mining or steam-assisted gravity drainage (SAGD). Methane molecules are captured in the crystal lattice of gas hydrates, also known as methane hydrates and ice hydrates. Although these hydrates offer enormous promise as a source of energy in the future, their extraction is technically difficult owing to their stability at high pressures and low temperatures.

KEYWORDS:

Conventional Oil, Gas Hydrates, Heavy Oil, Oil Shales, Shale Gas.

INTRODUCTION

This emphasises the variety of properties and extraction methods connected with unconventional hydrocarbons, highlighting the need of cutting-edge technology and eco-friendly procedures to realise their full potential. It is essential for the sustainable development of these resources and for their incorporation into the world's energy mix that we comprehend their geology, engineering, and environmental elements. Exploration and exploitation of unconventional hydrocarbons will be crucial in supplying the world's energy needs in the future while taking into account the financial, environmental, and social ramifications of their extraction and use. This is because the world is still looking for alternative energy sources.Contrary to traditional oil and gas reservoirs, unconventional hydrocarbons are resources that need for specialised extraction or processing procedures. These resources consist of tar sands, heavy oil, shale gas, and gas hydrates, among others. Due to their huge deposits and ability to contribute to the world's energy supply, they have attracted a lot of interest recently [1].

Oil Shales:

Oil shales are sedimentary rocks that are abundant in kerogen, an organic material that may be pyrolyzed to produce liquid hydrocarbons. Mining the rock and then heating it to liberate the hydrocarbons are the two steps in the process of extracting oil from oil shales. Oil shales are plentiful around the world and contain large amounts of unconventional oil.

Heavy Oil:

Heavy oil is described as being thick and viscous crude oil that is harder to extract and refine than regular light crude oil. It flows more challengingly due to its increased density and viscosity. Heavy oil deposits may need thermal or chemical techniques, such as solvent-assisted procedures or steam injection, to increase extraction and the oil's mobility.

Tar Sands:

Tar sands, commonly referred to as oil sands, are a form of unconventional petroleum deposit made up of a combination of bitumen, clay, water, and sand. Crude oil that is thick and very viscous is known as bitumen. Surface mining or in-situ techniques, such as steam-assisted gravity drainage (SAGD), where steam is pumped into the reservoir to heat and mobilise the bitumen, are used to recover oil from tar sands.

Shale Gas:

Natural gas that has been trapped in fine-grained shale strata is referred to as shale gas. Fracking, also known as hydraulic fracturing, is a method used to recover shale gas. In this procedure, cracks are created in the shale formation by injecting a high-pressure fluid, often water combined with chemicals. In recent years, shale gas has greatly increased the world's supply of natural gas.

Gas Hydrates:

A significant quantity of natural gas is trapped inside a lattice of water molecules in gas hydrates, which are ice-like formations. They mainly occur in deepwater and permafrost locations under certain circumstances of low temperature and high pressure. Even though they are still in the exploratory and development phases, petrol hydrates are thought to be a potentially enormous unconventional energy resource. Compared to conventional oil and gas resources, unconventional hydrocarbons pose particular difficulties, including greater extraction and processing costs, environmental problems, and the need for specialised technology. They do, however, also provide large reserves and the opportunity to diversify energy sources.Environmental effects, technical developments, and economic viability must all be carefully taken into account while developing and using these resources. Their contribution to the world's energy supply relies on ongoing study, inventiveness, and ethical extraction techniques. Substantial unconventional energy resources include unconventional hydrocarbons including shale gas, heavy oil, tar sands, and gas hydrates. Their development has repercussions for the security of the energy supply and the sustainability of the environment, and their extraction and processing need for specialised methods.

DISCUSSION

Conventional oil, which could be produced at a minimal cost, was widely available for many years. There was little motivation to search for other resources due to the cheap price of oil. However, it is already evident that there are a finite number of conventional oil sources that can be exploited at low cost and that we are quickly running out of fresh sedimentary basins to explore [2], [3].

This is the rationale for the increased investment in what are known as unconventional hydrocarbons by several of the major oil firms. These have significant reserves, and the four major categories are tar sands, heavy oil, oil shales, and shale gas. Gas hydrates may possibly evolve into a significant source of hydrocarbons, although the process of producing from such accumulations is still in its infancy. Unconventional hydrocarbon reserves are enormous, perhaps exceeding those of conventional oil. Fossil fuels won't run out for a very long time, but their costs will rise since they are more expensive to produce, especially if severe environmental criteria are to be satisfied.

Heavy Oil and Tar Sands

It has long been recognised that heavy oil seeps out onto the surface, and it was simple to take advantage of this for usage in modest amounts. Even after oil was successfully drilled for (in Pennsylvania in 1857), mining for heavy oil went on over the globe, including in Germany. Because the heavy oil would not flow to the wells, oil was extracted in southern California's Ventura and Los Angeles basins from the early 1860s until the 1890s (Figure 1).

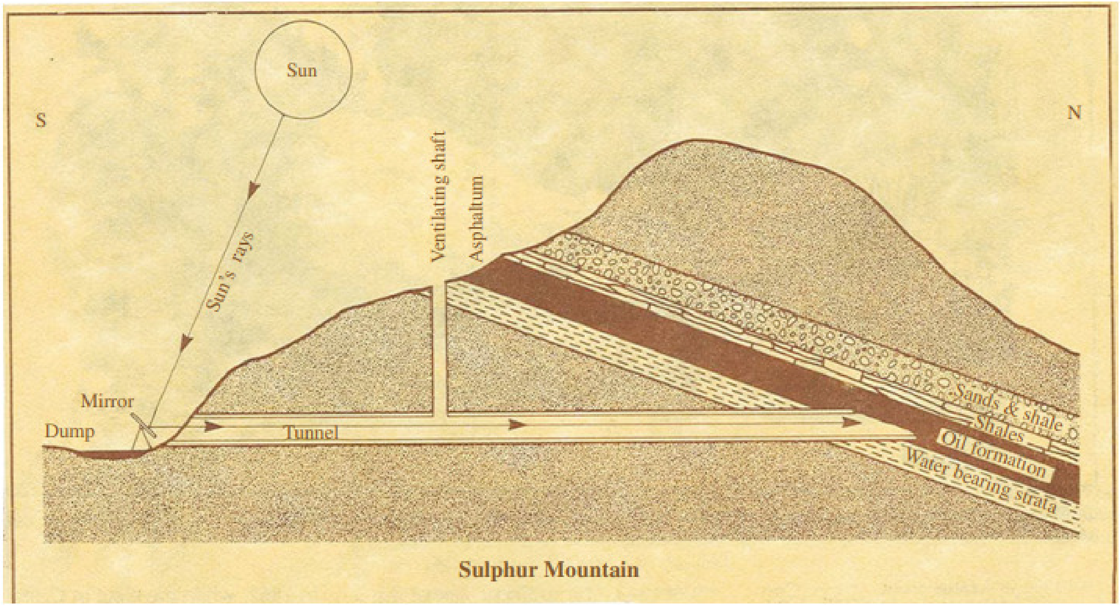


Figure 1: Mining for heavy oil in the Sulfur Mountain near Santa Paula, South California (from 1860 to 1890).

Tar sands are sandstone reservoirs that have been pumped full of oil at a depth of just 2 km (70–80 C), causing the oil to biodegrade. Rocks in reservoirs that have been buried deeper and subsequently removed before oil migration may have been sterilised at higher temperatures, making them less prone to deteriorate biologically. Due to a lack of quartz cement, the sand will stay essentially uncemented as loose sand when the sandstone has not been buried deeper than around 2 km.

Asphaltic oil rich in asphaltenes and resins is present in tar sand. Compared to paraffins, it contains more aromatics and naphthenes, as well as more nitrogen, sulphur, and oxygen (NSO). Because the majority of hydrocarbon molecules contain more than 60 carbon atoms, they have an extremely high boiling point and viscosity. The biodegraded oil has a very low viscosity, thus before it can be generated by drilling wells, the viscosity must be reduced by heating the oil. There are transitions between reservoirs that contain heavy oil and bitumen that is almost solid. It is possible to heat the reservoir by injecting steam into it, which will cause the water in the reservoir to condense and heat up. When steam is injected into the production well and let to soak for a few weeks before production begins when the oil is warmer, this process is known as cyclic steam injection. Another option is to pump the steam into a neighbouring well and direct it towards the producing well. Reduced water intake from nearby rocks is crucial since the reservoir's water is heated with a lot of energy. One strategy is to freeze the ground far from the well in order to stop water from flowing there. In order to heat the oil, it is also conceivable to burn part of the subsurface oil. To decrease the CO2 emissions from burning oil to provide heat, it has also been suggested to heat the oil electrically, maybe using a nuclear reactor. Middle Cretaceous (Aptian, 100 million years old) tar sands may be found in Alberta, Canada (Athabasca).

The McMurray Formation, a sandstone exhibiting fluvial to tidal conditions, serves as the primary reservoir rock. It is crucial to locate extensive sand sequences with minimal clay layers. throughout the Laramide folding of the Rocky Mountains to the west, the oil was produced from earlier source rocks and moved into the Athabasca sands throughout the late Cretaceous and early Tertiary. The majority of the overburden eroded beginning in the Eocene (50 million years ago), and the sand was raised.

Bacteria then biodegraded the oil. The amount of bitumen present in these tar sands, 1.7 trillion barrels (270 109 m3), is similar to the world's entire known reserves of conventional petroleum. Athabasca is already home to large mining activities (Figure 2). Because of the high viscosity of the oil, this tar sand is rather hard (Figure 3) at surface temperatures, which are low in northern Canada. Hot water is required to remove the oil from the sand. It is possible that the oil (tar), which has an API of 10, is denser than water. Only 20% of the total may be cheaply mined since it is near enough to the surface, and the other 80% must be heated in situ.

Figure 2: Athabasca tar sand. The oil-impregnated sand is mined and the heavy oil is separated from the sand with hot water.

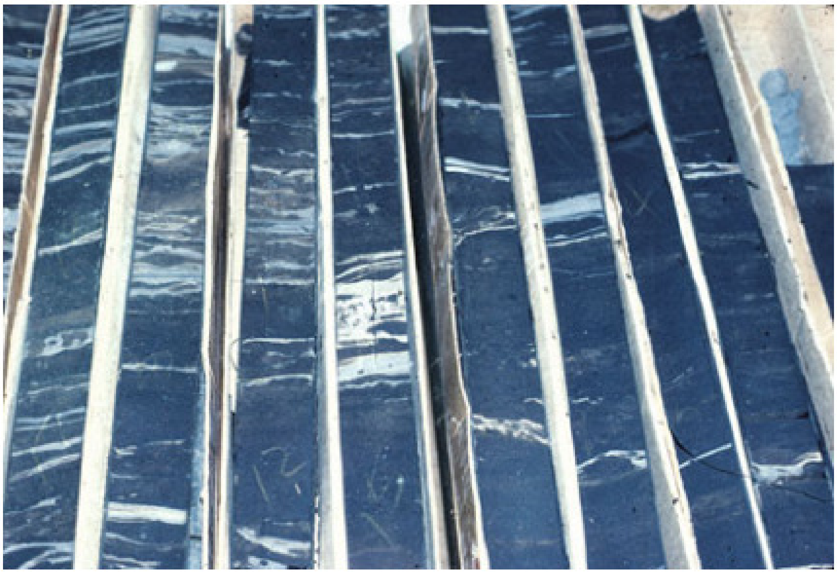


Figure 3: Cores from the Athabasca tar sand. The oil sand is highly viscous, almost solid, but will flow at high temperatures.

Oil Shales

Oil shales are source rocks, often mudstones and shales, with a high organic content (TOC), which have not yet been sufficiently matured by being buried deeply to yield the majority of the hydrocarbons. They must be roasted in an oven (pyrolysis) to 400–500°C notwithstanding the possibility that they contain some hydrocarbons so that the majority of the petroleum may be produced from the leftover kerogen. As a result, oil shale must be extracted from quarries close to the surface, roasted in enormous ovens, and then the petroleum must be distilled off. After further burial, source rocks may be elevated near to the surface; however, how much of the kerogen is changed into oil and gas depends on the temperature history.

Some source rocks may have developed and released the majority of the hydrocarbons after being buried for more than 5–6 kilometres (160–170°C), while some oil and gas, in particular, may still be present. A notable example of a rich source rock that has been buried to at least 200°C (5–7 km) and lost most of its hydrocarbons during the Caledonian folding in the late Silurian and early Devonian is the Upper Cambrian alum shale found in the Oslo area. Since the Upper Cambrian alum shales in Sweden have not been buried as deeply, there is more oil present, which may be extracted by pyrolysis at 400–500°C.

The lowermost Ordovician shales in the Baltic area are considerably less developed, leaving more kerogen behind. In Estonia, this shale is extensively exploited for oil. The reserves in this location total 0.6 109 sm3 of oil equivalents. The 60% of Estonia's stationary energy comes from oil shale, which is utilised to generate electricity. It is also used in the extraction and refinement of oil. The mounds are almost 100 metres high, and the trash contains 70–80 Mt of semi-coke. The waste is very fine-grained, alkaline, and contains high levels of sulphides and heavy metals.

Oil shale reserves are virtually as vast as conventional oil on a global scale. Conservative estimates put the amount of shale oil in 350 Gt at 2.6 109 barrels (410 109 sm3 o.e.). This is about similar to the world's estimated conventional oil and gas reserves (480 sm3 o.e.). The US is home to more over 80% of the known deposits, although there are likely more areas containing oil shales that have not been identified and assessed. The Green River Shale, which is located in Wyoming, Utah, and Colorado, is a vast source of hydrocarbons. The Eocene era saw the deposition of this organic-rich mudstone, the majority of which was freshwater algae.

However, in order to produce petroleum, oil shales must be extracted and cooked in ovens (pyrolysis). The energy for the heating is obtained from the burning of the oil shales. Therefore, a lot of CO2 is released during manufacture as well. Oil shales may only contain 5–10% organic matter, in which case the amount of trash generated would be 10–20 times that of the oil. The waste is highly challenging to store and is made up of coke and smectite created during the heating process. In addition, it is abundant in heavy metals like vanadium and uranium, which are common in black shales.

Water availability may be a limiting concern in arid locations since the production of oil from oil shales needs very huge volumes of water. Therefore, the use of oil shales as a major supply of oil comes with significant environmental issues.

Some source rocks could be permeable enough to function as reservoir rocks as well. A reservoir rock that contains a lot of organic material is the Miocene Monterey Formation in California. In this instance, oil may be produced due to tectonic fracture that has increased permeability. Additionally, thin limestone or sandstone layers may be interbedded with source rocks, in which case just a relatively brief migration is needed [4].

Coal Bed Methane (CBM)

The major sources of gas that will migrate to a reservoir rock or to the surface are coal and type 3 kerogen rock, which has a high proportion of plant matter. However, because of the coal's microporous nature, which creates a very high surface area, relatively substantial amounts of gas (methane) will be retained in the material. The surface of coal has a relatively high surface area, and most of the gas is adsorbed there. In the US, methane generation for commercial purposes is prevalent. Gas from coal may seep out near the surface, but if coal is buried several hundred metres below the surface, most of the gas is still held in the coals and can be extracted by drilling. Due to the very poor permeability of coal, small cracks (cleats) created during uplift are what allow gas to flow to the wells. The term "sweet gas" refers to the gas generated from coal, which is often highly pure methane with little sulphur component. Wyoming's Powder River, Bighorn, Wind River, and Green River basins have significant quantities of coal bed methane. These coals are from the Cretaceous and Tertiary that have undergone deeper burial and subsequent uplift. These coals may generate gas to a depth of 1.5–2 km (5,000 feet). The USA possesses significant CBM deposits (201012 m^2), and Canada has sizable reserves as well. Although it may be claimed that methane is at least partially a renewable resource since it is continuously produced by bacteria at shallow depths, the pace of buildup is sluggish in comparison to human usage. Artificial algae growth has the potential to absorb CO_2 and create some oil and gas[5], [6].

Shale Gas

Despite being buried at depths where the majority of the oil and gas has been produced and released, organic-rich shales may nevertheless retain significant volumes of gas. The gas that is still present in these shales is contained in very tiny pores and may also have been partially absorbed by clay minerals, organic stuff that is still present, or its residue (coke). The elevated shales may contain minor extensional fractures, but in order to improve permeability, they must be hydrofractured by injecting water into the cracks.

Texas's Barnett Shale is a tight shale from the Mississippian era that has at least 2.5 trillion cubic feet of gas in it. A tight gas reservoir is what it is known as. Urban regions like the Dallas-Fort Worth region store a large portion of the gas. The shale matrix typically has relatively low permeability, however there may be small silty layers and cracks that improve the permeability. Additional permeability may be achieved by hydraulic fracturing, and horizontal drilling also aids in the production of additional gas. In Oklahoma, the Woodford Shale (Devonian) may reach about 100 m in thickness.

The Middle Devonian Marcellus Shales in the Appalachians are Devonian tight gas shales. These were formerly buried considerably deeper (5–6 km or more), but are currently predominantly at a depth of 1-2 km. Another significant producer that is a component of the Williston Basin is the Upper Devonian Bakken Shale, which is especially productive in North Dakota. Canada is included in its reach. By 2020, it is predicted that 50% of the gas in North America will be produced by shale gas.

In other regions of the globe, rising interest in shale gas will also be a consequence of higher gas costs. Shale gas is a highly significant source of hydrocarbons, which may be utilised both directly as gas and indirectly as diesel for automobiles and trucks. Additionally, this fuel may be combined with heavy oil and tar sand to create ordinary petrol. For the fracturing process necessary to extract gas from shale, a lot of water is needed, and the resulting water may have negative environmental effects [6], [7].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, unconventional hydrocarbons have become significant energy resources with the potential to complement traditional oil and gas supplies. Examples include oil shales, heavy oil, tar sands, shale gas, and gas hydrates. They provide particular extraction and processing difficulties, but they also provide significant reserves and the chance to diversify energy sources. However, in order to develop them, significant thought must be given to the effects on the environment, technical improvements, and economic feasibility. Unconventional oil is abundantly available from oil shales, but the conversion and extraction procedures are expensive and energy-intensive. Specialised methods are needed to reduce the high viscosity of heavy oil deposits and enhance flow properties. In order to extract bitumen from tar sands, which include a combination of sand, water, clay, and bitumen, mining or in-situ procedures are required. The extraction of shale gas using hydraulic fracturing has revolutionised the worldwide natural gas market, but it also poses environmental issues, such as water use and possible groundwater pollution. Gas hydrates have a lot of promise as a major unconventional energy source, especially in deepwater and permafrost environments, even if they are still in the early phases of exploration and development.

The development of unconventional hydrocarbons must strike a balance between environmental sustainability, economic viability, and energy security. To reduce possible environmental effects, such as land disturbance, water use, greenhouse gas emissions, and waste disposal, strict laws, technology developments, and ethical extraction practises are required.

Additionally, ongoing research and development is essential for enhancing extraction procedures, enhancing processing procedures, and reducing the environmental impact connected to the production of unconventional hydrocarbons. Technology advancements including better drilling and completion techniques, improved oil recovery techniques, and environmentally friendly fracking fluids may help with the prudent and sustainable use of these resources.

REFERENCES

[1] I. Douglas, "The challenge of urban poverty for the use of green infrastructure on floodplains and wetlands to reduce flood impacts in intertropical Africa," *Landsc. Urban Plan.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.landurbplan.2016.09.025.

[2] Y. Z. Ma, "Unconventional Resources from Exploration to Production," in *Unconventional Oil and Gas Resources Handbook: Evaluation and Development*, 2015. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-12-802238-2.00001-8.

[3] C. N. Zou *et al.*, "New advance in unconventional petroleum exploration and research in China," *Bull. Mineral. Petrol. Geochemistry*, 2012.

[4] K. Bjorlykke, "Unconventional hydrocarbons: Oil shales, heavy oil, tar sands, shale gas and gas hydrates," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics*, 2010. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-02332-3_21.

[5] R. Kumar, *Fossil fuels: Sources, environmental concerns and waste management practices*. 2013.

[6] J. F. Rivera Cortes, "Design of an IT tool to select new technologies to stimulate unconventional reservoirs in ecopetrol's wells," in *2nd EAGE/AMGP/AMGE Latin-American Seminar in Unconventional Resources*, 2019. doi: 10.3997/2214-4609.201981006.

[7] L. A. Briceno-Guarupe, "ANH's approach to Colombian unconventional hydrocarbons resources," in *73rd European Association of Geoscientists and Engineers Conference and Exhibition 2011: Unconventional Resources and the Role of Technology. Incorporating SPE EUROPEC 2011*, 2011. doi: 10.3997/2214-4609.20149631.

CHAPTER 22

GEOLOGY OF THE NORWEGIAN CONTINENTAL SHELF

Sukanya Dikshit, Assistant Professor
ISME - School of Management & Entrepreneurship, ATLAS SkillTech University, Mumbai, India
Email Id- sukanya.dikshit@atlasuniversity.edu.in

ABSTRACT:

The huge hydrocarbon reserves found in this area make the geology of the Norwegian Continental Shelf (NCS) a topic of major interest. The geological characteristics and processes that have created the NCS, including its tectonic history, sedimentary basins, and petroleum systems, are summarised in this study. The NCS has a sizable area of over 1.2 million square kilometres and is situated in the northern section of the North Atlantic region. It is distinguished by a complicated geological history that was chiefly impacted by the rifting processes that followed Pangaea's split during the Mesozoic epoch. The Viking Graben, the Central Graben, and the northern Barents Sea are only a few of the sedimentary basins that have developed as a consequence of the NCS's tectonic development. Sandstones, shales, and carbonates are among the many sedimentary rocks found in these basins, which display a variety of depositional conditions and act as reservoirs, seals, and source rocks for hydrocarbons. Exploration and production efforts have been focused on the NCS's petroleum systems. Huge fields like Ekofisk, Troll, and Oseberg are only a few of the region's notable oil and gas finds. These extensive hydrocarbon accumulations have formed as a result of mature source rocks, efficient reservoirs, and advantageous structural traps.

KEYWORDS:

Continental Shelf, Geological History, Mid-Norwegian Shelf, Petroleum Provinces, Sedimentary Basins.

INTRODUCTION

The North Sea and Norwegian Sea include a section known as the Norwegian Continental Shelf (NCS), which is of enormous geological importance. It covers a sizable portion of the subsurface and seabed in the seas off the coast of Norway. The rich and varied geology of the NCS is characterised by the intricate interaction of geological forces that have created the area over millions of years.

Tectonic Setting:

The North Continental Shelf (NCS) is located in the larger setting of the North Atlantic area, which has seen significant tectonic activity. It is impacted by tectonic plate collisions and separations, especially those between the North American and Eurasian plates. Processes including rifting, continental drift, and the creation of sedimentary basins are all part of the tectonic history of the NCS.

Sedimentary Basins:

The Viking Graben, the Utsira High, and the Norwegian Basin are just a few of the sedimentary basins found within the NCS. These basins are covered in massive sedimentary rock strata that date back millions of years. The sediments are made up of a variety of substances, such as sand, clay, silt, and organic debris.

Petroleum System:

The NCS is well known around the world for its abundant petroleum resources. Oil and gas have been abundantly produced in the area, making Norway one of the top producers of petroleum in the world. The hydrocarbon buildup in reservoir rocks often in conjunction with the existence of source rocks, migratory paths, and traps is a key component of the petroleum system on the NCS.

Structural Features:

The geology of the NCS is distinguished by a variety of structural elements brought forth by tectonic processes. These include faults, folds, and anticlines, which affect how hydrocarbons are distributed and preserved. The oil and gas industry uses structural traps, such as fault traps and anticlinal traps, as exploration targets since they are necessary for the buildup of hydrocarbons.

Stratigraphy:

The NCS's stratigraphy is made up of a series of rock strata that document the area's geological history. Various geological eras, including the Triassic, Jurassic, Cretaceous, and Paleogene, are represented in its formations. There are several different kinds of rocks in the stratigraphic column on the NCS, including sandstones, shales, limestones, and conglomerates.

Glacial History:

The effects of previous glacial activity have also influenced the NCS. A large portion of the area was covered by ice sheets during the Pleistocene Ice Ages, which significantly increased erosion and deposition. glacier activities have altered the terrain, affected the sedimentary record, and produced underwater landforms including fjords and glacier valleys. The development and production of hydrocarbons, as well as the management of geological risks and environmental issues, depend on an understanding of the NCS's geology. For geoscientific research and petroleum exploration, the area presents a tough but highly productive environment because to its complicated geological history, structural characteristics, and varied sedimentary basins [1]–[3]. The tectonic context, sedimentary basins, petroleum systems, structural elements, stratigraphy, and glacial history of the Norwegian Continental Shelf all contribute to its geology. Due to the area's complicated geology and substantial hydrocarbon resources, it contributes significantly to Norway's petroleum sector and is a hot topic for geologists and petroleum geoscientists worldwide.

DISCUSSION

Due to space restrictions, the previous chapters only included a limited number of regional examples and case studies. However, some instances will be given in this chapter. Numerous diverse petroleum provinces exist in the North Sea and other regions of the Norwegian continental shelf, and these regions may serve as examples of certain fundamental concepts in petroleum geology and geophysics. Understanding the distribution of source rocks and the timing of petroleum migration requires a foundation in the geological development of these sedimentary basins. The trapping of oil and gas depends heavily on the structural history of rifted basins, passive edges, as well as elevated basins like the Barents Sea. Seismic and borehole data have provided extensive documentation of these basins.

Regional Geological Setting

In petroleum geology, the term "regional geological setting" refers to the local geological features and processes that have an impact on the creation, accumulation, and production of hydrocarbons in a given area. It entails comprehending the region's tectonic context, sedimentary basins, structural characteristics, and geological past. The potential for hydrocarbon exploration and production in a location is greatly influenced by the surrounding geological environment [4]–[6]. Aspects of regional geological context in petroleum geology include the following in particular:

Tectonic Setting:

Knowledge a region's geological development requires a knowledge of its tectonic environment. The movement and interaction of the Earth's lithospheric plates, as well as the ensuing deformation and geological processes, are all studied through the lens of plate tectonics. Divergent plate borders, such as rift zones, convergent plate boundaries, such as subduction zones or collisional zones, and transformative plate barriers are examples of tectonic settings. These tectonic conditions have an impact on the structural elements that may trap hydrocarbons as well as the creation of sedimentary basins.

Sedimentary Basins:

In sedimentary basins, sediments build up throughout time as a result of several geological processes. They are the main areas that are being searched for and produced with hydrocarbons. The creation and features of sedimentary basins, such as their size, shape, depth, and sedimentary fill, are determined by the area geological environment. The reservoir potential and the standard of the hydrocarbon traps within the basin are influenced by the character of the sedimentary rocks, including their composition, particle size, and depositional environment.

Structural Features:

In petroleum geology, structural features like faults, folds, and fractures are significant because they may operate as hydrocarbon traps or migratory routes. The origin and distribution of these structural characteristics are governed by the regional geological environment. For instance, folds and thrust faults in compressional tectonic settings may produce anticlinal traps, while extensional conditions can produce faulted traps or slanted fault blocks. Identifying probable reservoirs and estimating the distribution of hydrocarbons need a thorough understanding of the area structural framework.

Stratigraphy:

The study of rock layers, or strata, and their connections is known as stratigraphy. The stratigraphy of an area is influenced by the surrounding geological environment, which also affects the kinds of sedimentary rocks present, their age, and the order in which they were deposited. The probable source rocks, reservoir rocks, and seal rocks for hydrocarbon systems may all be learned a lot from stratigraphy. It aids in locating the geological formations and units that are promising for the discovery of hydrocarbons.

Geological History:

Sedimentation, erosion, diagenesis, and tectonic events are only a few examples of the geological events and processes that make up a region's geological history. To evaluate current geological characteristics and forecast the distribution of hydrocarbon resources, it is essential to understand the geological past. It entails researching the geological events that have impacted the production and preservation of hydrocarbons, the time of deposition, and the paleoenvironmental circumstances.

Geophysical and Geological Data:

Several geophysical and geological data sources are used to properly comprehend the area geological context. These consist of geological maps, gravity and magnetic surveys, well logs, core samples, seismic data, and well logs. By combining various data sets, one may develop a thorough picture of the underlying geology and pinpoint potential hydrocarbon exploration sites.

The genesis, accumulation, and production of hydrocarbons are all impacted by the regional geological environment, which is significant for petroleum geology. Effective exploration and production techniques in the petroleum business depend on having a thorough understanding of a region's tectonic context, sedimentary basins, structural characteristics, stratigraphy, and geological history.

Stratigraphy/Evolution

Geological stratigraphy is the study of rock layers (also known as strata) and how they are arranged in the Earth's crust. In order to comprehend the geological history and development of a place, it is necessary to look at the order, composition, age, and correlation of these strata. Stratigraphy offers important insights into the ecosystems, climate, biological evolution, and sedimentary rock deposition of the Earth's history. The identification and interpretation of various strata, including sedimentary rocks, volcanic rocks, and metamorphic rocks, as well as their arrangement in chronological order, comprise the development of stratigraphy. According to the geologic time scale, stratigraphic units are categorised according to their relative ages and may be arranged into longer time periods known as aeons, eras, periods, epochs, and ages.

Geologists use the concepts of stratigraphy to determine the relative order of rock layers and the idea of superposition, which holds that the youngest rocks are at the top and the oldest rocks are at the bottom of an undisturbed sequence of strata. Geologists may build stratigraphic columns and correlate rocks from various places because to this approach. Modern dating methods, such as radiometric dating, which allows for the precise measurement of the age of rocks and geological events, have considerably assisted the development of stratigraphy. These dating techniques use the radioactive isotopes' radioactive decay to determine the ages of rocks with great accuracy.

Geologists may pinpoint significant occurrences and changes in Earth's history via stratigraphic study, including mass extinctions, the building of significant mountain ranges, changes in sea level, and the formation of sedimentary basins. Stratigraphic data is useful for locating probable source rocks, reservoir rocks, and seal rocks, which are all important for the exploration and extraction of hydrocarbons. Stratigraphy is a multidisciplinary subject that draws on a variety of methods and information sources. To determine the connections between various rock strata, geologists use field observations, such as looking at outcrops and rock exposures. They also use geophysical techniques to photograph underlying strata and deduce their stratigraphic structure, such as seismic surveys. Stratigraphy is crucial to comprehending the Earth's geological past and present. It offers a framework for understanding how events unfolded, how habitats changed through time, and how rocks were deposited. Geologists may rebuild ancient landscapes, understand the development of living forms, and make significant advances in both geological and paleontological study by analysing the stratigraphic record [7]–[9].

Exploration History and Petroleum Provinces/Systems

Petroleum provinces and systems and exploration histories are linked in petroleum geology. The term "exploration history" describes the sequence of events and discoveries connected to the discovery and exploitation of hydrocarbon resources in particular geographic locations. On the other hand, petroleum provinces/systems are geographical areas that have similar geological traits and have the potential to host substantial petroleum reserves. For effective hydrocarbon exploration and production, it is essential to comprehend both the history of exploration and the petroleum provinces/systems.

A region's exploration history shows the development of initiatives to find, assess, and use hydrocarbon resources. It entails a number of tasks, such as seismic and geological surveys, the drilling of exploratory wells, and the identification and development of oil and gas resources used for commercial purposes. Understanding the past of exploration is useful for comprehending the geological and geophysical information gathered through time, the success rates of drilling operations, and the development of exploration methods. Additionally, it offers insightful information on the expansion and development of the petroleum business in a certain area.

Provinces/Systems of Petroleum:

Petroleum provinces/systems are geographical areas with the potential to accumulate considerable amounts of hydrocarbons and shared geological traits. These areas often include favourable geological features such sedimentary basins, source rocks, reservoir rocks, and traps that help petroleum deposits originate and remain preserved. Several factors, including as geological age, tectonic setting, depositional environment, and hydrocarbon type, may be used to establish provinces/systems. The Middle East, the Permian Basin, the North Sea, and the Gulf of Mexico are a few examples of petroleum provinces or systems.

For the purpose of selecting exploration locations and assessing the potential for hydrocarbon resources, it is essential to comprehend the features and limits of petroleum provinces/systems. Geologists examine a region's geological past, structural makeup, stratigraphy, and tectonic context to pinpoint places that have a greater probability of having hydrocarbons present. They also take into account elements like reservoir quality, source rock richness, and the existence of seals when evaluating a province's or system's overall petroleum prospectivity.

Exploration tactics are often guided by exploration history as well as understanding of petroleum provinces and systems. Within a petroleum province or system, historical information on exploration efforts, including as well logs, seismic surveys, and production data, may be used to pinpoint promising locations. Geologists might then focus on these regions for more research and development.

It is important to keep in mind that the knowledge of petroleum provinces and systems and the history of exploration are dynamic. They change as new technology, geological discoveries, and exploration victories reshape industry knowledge and viewpoints. The limits and potential of petroleum provinces/systems may be changed as exploration methods improve and more data become available. Exploration histories are updated as a result.

Petroleum geology includes factors like as exploration history and petroleum provinces/systems that are interconnected. The historical exploration operations and the development of the petroleum sector in an area may be gleaned from exploration history. Geographically different regions with favourable geological conditions for the development of substantial hydrocarbon reserves are defined as petroleum provinces/systems. Effective hydrocarbon exploration, resource evaluation, and development plans need a grasp of both the exploration past and petroleum provinces/systems.

Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin

The term "Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin" designates a particular area along Norway's western coast that is part of the country's continental shelf and margin. It is a region of high geological interest and is crucial for the discovery and production of hydrocarbons. The larger Norwegian Continental Shelf (NCS), which is well-known for its substantial petroleum reserves, includes the Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin. It has a wide variety of geological features and structures and is located in the northern portion of the North Sea.

The Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin's main features are as follows:

Tectonic Setting:

The tectonic activity brought on by the contact of the North American and Eurasian plates has an impact on the area. The rifting and subsequent separation of these plates, which caused the creation of sedimentary basins and structural characteristics, are only two examples of its complicated tectonic history.

Sedimentary Basins:

There are a number of sedimentary basins on the Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin, including the Trndelag Platform and the Mre Basin. Thick sedimentary sequences that have formed over millions of years cover these basins. These basins' sedimentary rocks are prospective reserves for hydrocarbons.

Structural Features:

Numerous structural characteristics, including as fault systems, folds, and anticlines, are present in the area. For hydrocarbons, these structures may serve as traps, allowing for their collection and preservation. In the Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin, structural traps including faulted blocks and tilting fault blocks are frequent exploration targets.

Stratigraphy:

The Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin's stratigraphic column is made up of distinct sedimentary strata that reflect various geological eras. These strata add to the area's potential for petroleum by including a mixture of sandstones, shales, and carbonates. Understanding the depositional settings and the distribution of possible reservoir rocks is aided by stratigraphic study.

Petroleum Production:

Norway's oil output has benefited greatly from the Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin. With a large number of producing fields and finds, the region has produced significant quantities of oil and gas. Geological knowledge of the area, seismic surveys, and modern drilling methods have all helped to facilitate exploration and production efforts there.

Environmental Considerations:

Due of its biological significance and possible effects from petroleum activities, the Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin is also subject to environmental issues. Environmental impact analyses and mitigation plans are among the steps used to assure ethical exploration and production practices.The petroleum industry has paid close attention to the Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin because of its geological features and the availability of hydrocarbon resources. New finds are continually made as a result of ongoing research and development work, which also helps Norway produce more energy.The Norwegian Continental Shelf's Mid-Norwegian Shelf/Margin is an area renowned for its complicated geology and oil potential. It is a major region for hydrocarbon exploration and production because it has sedimentary basins, structural characteristics, and a variety of stratigraphy. The area's significance in Norway's petroleum sector is a result of its geological features as well as scientific and technological developments [10]–[12].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the exploration and production of hydrocarbons in Norway have greatly benefited from the rich and intricate topic of the geology of the Norwegian Continental Shelf (NCS). Sedimentary basins, structural components, and stratigraphic sequences are only a few of the many geological characteristics that make up the NCS and have helped to create the region's significant petroleum reserves. The present-day structural framework and sedimentary basins are the result of tectonic events, including as rifting and plate interactions, which occurred over the NCS's geological history. Potential oil and gas reserves have been developed as a result of the deposition of different sedimentary strata over millions of years. Understanding the location and nature of reservoir rocks, source rocks, and sealing formations on the NCS has been made possible via stratigraphic studies. The stratigraphy of the area is made up of a variety of sedimentary strata from various geological eras that provide light on previous habitats, depositional processes, and hydrocarbon potential. Hydrocarbons have been trapped by the structural features of the NCS, including as fault systems and folds, allowing for their accumulation and preservation. Exploration and production efforts have been effective when we understand these structural traits and how they relate to reservoirs. Seismic surveys, well drilling, and geological modelling have all been used to conduct substantial research on the geology of the NCS, leading to the discovery and exploitation of multiple oil and gas reserves. The geoscience expertise and superior technology skills of Norway have been very important in maximising exploration efforts and hydrocarbon recovery.

REFERENCES

[1] J. I. Faleide, K. Bjørlykke, and R. H. Gabrielsen, "Geology of the norwegian continental shelf," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics, Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-34132-8_25.

[2] J. I. Faleide, K. Bjorlykke, and R. H. Gabrielsen, "Geology of the norwegian continental shelf," in *Petroleum Geoscience: From Sedimentary Environments to Rock Physics*, 2010. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-02332-3_22.

[3] T. Bugge, R. Knarud, and A. Mork, "Bedrock geology on the mid-Norwegian continental shelf.," *Pet. Geol. north Eur. margin. Proc. NEMS '83, Trondheim, 1983*, 1984, doi: 10.1007/978-94-009-5626-1_19.

[4] K. Bjørlykke, "Early history of petroleum exploration offshore norway and its impact on geoscience teaching and research," *Nor. J. Geol.*, 2019, doi: 10.17850/njg99-3-2.

[5] A. Pearson, "Petroleum And The Continental Shelf Of North-West Europe, Volume 1: Geology," 1974.

[6] T. De Jonge, V. Vinje, G. Poole, S. Hou, and E. Iversen, "De-bubbling Seismic Data using a Generalized Neural Network," *Geophysics*, 2021, doi: 10.1190/geo2021-0053.1.

[7] L. Olsen, H. Sveian, D. Ottesen, and L. Rise, "Quaternary glaciations and their variations in Norway and on the Norwegian continental shelf," *Quat. Geol. Norw.*, 2013.

[8] R. H. Gabrielsen, R. B. Faerseth, L. N. Jensen, J. E. Kalheim, and F. Riis, "Structural Elements of the Norwegian Continental Shelf Part I: The Barents Sea Region," *Nor. Pet. Dir. Bull.*, 1990.

[9] P. Blystad, H. Brekke, R. B. Færseth, B. T. Larsen, J. Skogseid, and B. Tærudbakken, "Structural elements of the Norwegian continental shelf. Part II. The Norwegian Sea Region.," *NPD, Norwegian Petroleum Directorate, Bulletin 8*. 1995.

[10] C. Ó Cofaigh *et al.*, "Sediment reworking on high-latitude continental margins and its implications for palaeoceanographic studies: Insights from the Norwegian-Greenland Sea," *Geol. Soc. Spec. Publ.*, 2002, doi: 10.1144/GSL.SP.2002.203.01.17.

[11] K. Aliyuda, J. Howell, and E. Humphrey, "Impact of geological variables in controlling oil-reservoir performance: An insight from a machine-learning technique," *SPE Reserv. Eval. Eng.*, 2020, doi: 10.2118/201196-PA.

[12] L. Olsen, H. Sveian, D. Ottesen, and L. Rise, "Quaternary glacial, interglacial and interstadial deposits of Norway and adjacent onshore and offshore areas," *Quat. Geol. Norw.*, 2013.